FORD **C-MAX Owner's Manual**



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2015

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3642en 02/2015 20150213081543

Table of Contents

Introduction

About This Manual....7
Symbols Glossary....7
Data Recording....9
Replacement Parts Recommendation....10
Mobile Communications Equipment....10

At a Glance

Front Exterior Overview....11
Rear Exterior Overview....12
Vehicle Interior Overview....13
Instrument Panel Overview - LHD....14
Instrument Panel Overview - RHD....15

Child Safety

Installing Child Seats....17
Child Seat Positioning....20
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Mechanical Child Proof Locks....24
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Remote Child Proof Locks....24

Safety Belts

Fastening the Safety Belts....25
Safety Belt Height Adjustment....25
Safety Belt Minder....26

Supplementary Restraints System

Principle of Operation....27
Driver Airbag....27
Passenger Airbag....27
Side Airbags....28
Side Curtain Airbags....28

Keys and Remote Controls

General Information on Radio Frequencies....29
Remote Control - Vehicles With: Keyless Entry....29
Remote Control - Vehicles With: Remote Flip Key....31
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control....32

MyKey™

Principle of Operation....33
Creating a MyKey....34
Clearing All MyKeys....34
Checking MyKey System Status....36
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems....36
MyKey Troubleshooting....36

Locks

Locking and Unlocking....38
Sliding Door....40
Manual Liftgate - Compact MAV (5-seater)....40
Manual Liftgate - Grand MAV (5+2 seater)....41
Power Liftgate....42
Hands-Free Power Liftgate....44
Keyless Entry....45

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System....48
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery....48
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor....50
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Perimeter Alarm....52

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel....53
Audio Control....53
Voice Control....54
Cruise Control....54
Information Display Control....55

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Heated Steering Wheel....55

Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wipers....56
Autowipers....56
Windshield Washers....58
Rear Window Wiper and Washers....58
Headlamp Washers....59

Lighting

General Information....60
Lighting Control....60
Autolamps....61
Instrument Lighting Dimmer....61
Headlamp Exit Delay....61
Daytime Running Lamps....62
Automatic High Beam Control....62
Front Fog Lamps....63
Rear Fog Lamps....63
Headlamp Leveling....64
Cornering Lamps....65
Direction Indicators....65
Interior Lamps....65
Ambient Lighting....66

Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows....68
Global Opening and Closing....69
Exterior Mirrors....70
Interior Mirror....71
Sun Visors....72
Sun Shades....72

Instrument Cluster

Gauges....74
Warning Lamps and Indicators....75
Audible Warnings and Indicators....78

Information Displays

General Information....80
Trip Computer....83
Information Messages....83

Climate Control

Principle of Operation....92
Air Vents....92
Manual Climate Control....93
Automatic Climate Control....94
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate....96
Heated Windows and Mirrors....99
Heated Windshield....99
Auxiliary Heater....99
Cabin Air Filter....103

Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position....104
Head Restraints....104
Manual Seats....105
Power Seats....106
Rear Seats....107
Heated Seats....115

Auxiliary Power Points

Auxiliary Power Points....116
Cigar Lighter....116

Storage Compartments

Cup Holders....117
Center Console....117
Overhead Console....117

Starting and Stopping the Engine

General Information....118
Ignition Switch....118
Push Button Ignition Switch....118

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Steering Wheel Lock - Vehicles With: Push Button Start....121
Steering Wheel Lock - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start....121
Starting a Gasoline Engine....121
Starting a Diesel Engine....124
Diesel Particulate Filter....124
Switching Off the Engine....125
Engine Block Heater....125

Unique Driving Characteristics

Auto-Start-Stop....127

Fuel and Refueling

Safety Precautions....129
Fuel Quality - Gasoline....130
Fuel Quality - E85....130
Fuel Quality - Diesel....131
Fuel Filler Funnel Location....131
Running Out of Fuel....131
Catalytic Converter....132
Refueling....133
Fuel Consumption....134

Transmission

Manual Transmission....136
Automatic Transmission....136

Brakes

General Information....139
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....139
Parking Brake....140
Hill Start Assist....140

Traction Control

Principle of Operation....142
Using Traction Control....142

Stability Control

Principle of Operation....143
Using Stability Control....143

Parking Aids

Principle of Operation....144
Rear Parking Aid....144
Front Parking Aid....145
Side Sensing System....147
Active Park Assist....149
Rear View Camera....155

Cruise Control

Principle of Operation....158
Using Cruise Control....158
Using Adaptive Cruise Control....159

Driving Aids

Speed Limiter - Vehicles With: Cruise Control....166
Speed Limiter - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control....167
Driver Alert....167
Lane Keeping System....169
Blind Spot Information System....173
Traffic Sign Recognition....177
Active City Stop....178
Eco Mode....179
Collision Warning System....180

Load Carrying

General Information....184
Luggage Anchor Points....184
Rear Under Floor Storage....184
Luggage Covers....185
Roof Racks and Load Carriers....185
Dog Guard....185

Towing

Towing a Trailer....188

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Table of Contents

Trailer Sway Control.....189
Tow Ball.....189
Towing Points.....196
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Manual Transmission.....197
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Automatic Transmission.....198

Driving Hints

Breaking-In.....200
Reduced Engine Performance.....200
Economical Driving.....200
Cold Weather Precautions.....201
Driving Through Water.....201
Floor Mats.....201

Roadside Emergencies

Hazard Warning Flashers.....203
First Aid Kit.....203
Warning Triangle.....203
Fuel Shutoff.....203
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....204
Post-Crash Alert System.....205

Fuses

Fuse Box Locations.....206
Fuse Specification Chart - Vehicles Built Up To: 22-06-2015.....207
Fuse Specification Chart - Vehicles Built From: 23-06-2015.....217
Changing a Fuse.....226

Maintenance

General Information.....228
Opening and Closing the Hood.....228
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....230
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....231
Under Hood Overview - 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT (Sigma)/1.6L Flex Fuel.....232
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel.....233
Under Hood Overview - 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel.....234
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....235
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....236
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....236
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT (Sigma)/1.6L Flex Fuel.....236
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel/1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel.....236
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....237
Engine Oil Check.....237
Engine Coolant Check.....237
Brake Fluid Check.....238
Clutch Fluid Check.....239
Washer Fluid Check.....239
Changing the 12V Battery.....239
Checking the Wiper Blades.....241
Changing the Wiper Blades.....241
Removing a Headlamp.....243
Changing a Bulb.....243
Bulb Specification Chart.....250

Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior.....251
Cleaning the Interior.....251
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....252
Cleaning the Alloy Wheels.....252

Wheels and Tires

Temporary Mobility Kit.....253
Tire Care.....257
Using Winter Tires.....257
Using Snow Chains.....257
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....258

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Changing a Road Wheel....262
Tire Pressures....269
Lug Nuts....274

Capacities and Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions....275
Towbar Dimensions....276
Vehicle Identification Plate....277
Vehicle Identification Number....278
Capacities and Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™....279
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L EcoBoost™....280
Capacities and Specifications - 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT (Sigma)/1.6L Flex Fuel....281
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel....283
Capacities and Specifications - 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel....284
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel....286
Fuel Consumption Figures....287

Audio System

General Information....288
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD....290
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC....292
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC 2....294
Digital Radio....295
Digital Radio - Vehicles With: SYNC 2....296
Audio Input Jack....297
USB Port....298
Media Hub....298
Audio Troubleshooting....299

SYNC™

General Information....300
Using Voice Recognition....301
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone....304
SYNC™ Applications and Services....315
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player....322
SYNC™ Troubleshooting....330

SYNC™ 2

General Information....340
Settings....347
Entertainment....361
Phone....370
Information....378
Climate....382
Navigation....384
SYNC™ Troubleshooting....394

Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility....403
End User License Agreement....404
Type Approvals....426

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about it, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

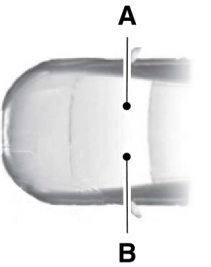
Note: *This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.*

Note: *Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.*

Note: *Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.*

Note: *Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.*

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



E154903

A Right-hand side.
B Left-hand side.

SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.


Safety alert


See Owner's Manual


Air conditioning system



Anti-lock braking system


Avoid smoking, flames or sparks


Battery


Battery acid


Brake fluid - non petroleum based

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing


Brake system


Cabin air filter


Check fuel cap


Child safety door lock or unlock


Child seat lower anchor


Child seat tether anchor


Cruise control


Do not open when hot


Engine air filter


Engine coolant


Engine coolant temperature


Engine oil


Explosive gas


Fan warning


Fasten safety belt


Front airbag


Front fog lamps


Fuel pump reset


Fuse compartment


Hazard warning flashers


Heated rear window



Heated windshield


Interior luggage compartment release


Jack


Keep out of reach of children


Lighting control


Low tire pressure warning



Maintain correct fluid level


Note operating instructions


Panic alarm

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing


Parking aid


Parking brake


Power steering fluid


Power windows front/rear


Power window lockout


Service engine soon


Side airbag


Shield the eyes


Stability control


Windshield wash and wipe

DATA RECORDING

A large number of electronic components of your vehicle contain data storage modules temporarily or permanently storing technical data about the condition of the vehicle, events and errors.

In general, this technical information documents the condition of parts, modules, systems or the environment:

- Operating conditions of system components (e.g. filling levels).
- Status messages of the vehicle and its individual components (e.g. number of wheel revolutions/rotational speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration).
- Malfunction and defects in important system components (e.g. lighting and brake system).
- Vehicle reactions in particular driving situations (e.g. inflation of an airbag, activation of the stability regulation system).
- Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature).

These data are exclusively technical and help identification and correction of errors as well as optimisation of vehicle functions. Motion profiles indicating travelled routes cannot be created with these data.

If services are used (e.g. repair works, service processes, warranty cases, quality assurance), employees of the service network (including manufacturers) are able to read out this technical information from the event and error data storage modules using special diagnostic devices. If required, you will receive further information. After an error has been corrected, these data are deleted from the error storage module or they are constantly overwritten.

When using the vehicle, situations may occur in which these technical data related to other information (accident report, damages on the vehicle, witness statements etc.) may be associated with a specific person - possibly, with the assistance of an expert.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Additional functions contractually agreed upon with the client (e.g. vehicle location in emergency cases) allow the transmission of particular vehicle data from the vehicle.

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

Your vehicle has been built to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. Damage caused to your vehicle as a result of the failure of non-Ford parts may not be covered by the Ford Warranty. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

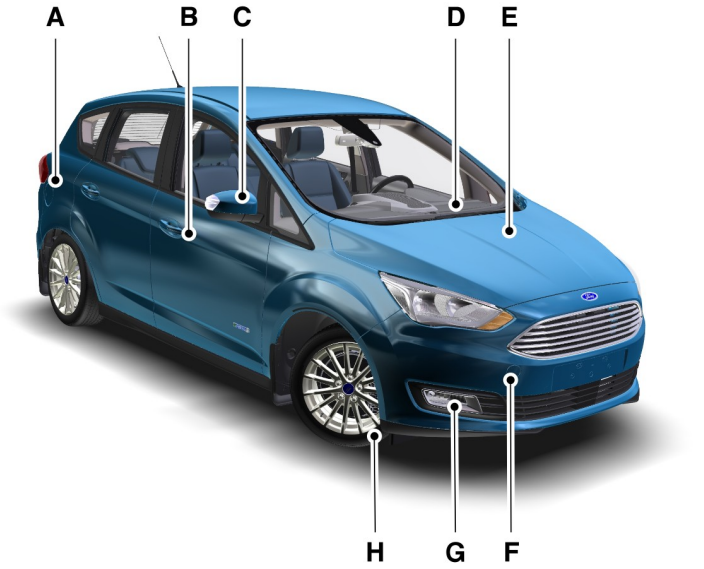
Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

FRONT EXTERIOR OVERVIEW

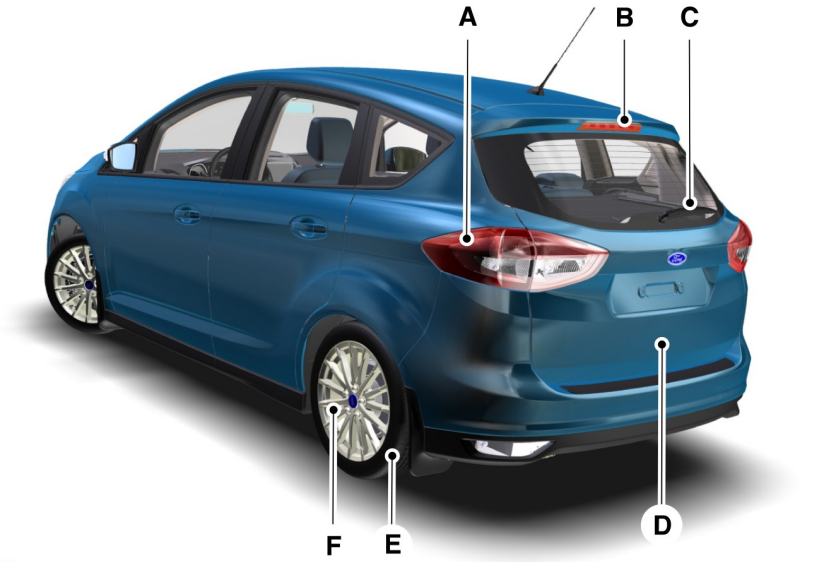


E191853

A Fuel tank. See **Refueling** (page 133).
B Locks. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 38).
C Exterior mirrors. See **Exterior Mirrors** (page 70).
D Wiper blades. See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 241).
E Engine. See **Maintenance** (page 228).
F Front towing point. See **Towing Points** (page 196).
G Front exterior lamps. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 243).
H Wheels and tires. Tire pressures. See **Towing Points** (page 196). See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 262).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

REAR EXTERIOR OVERVIEW

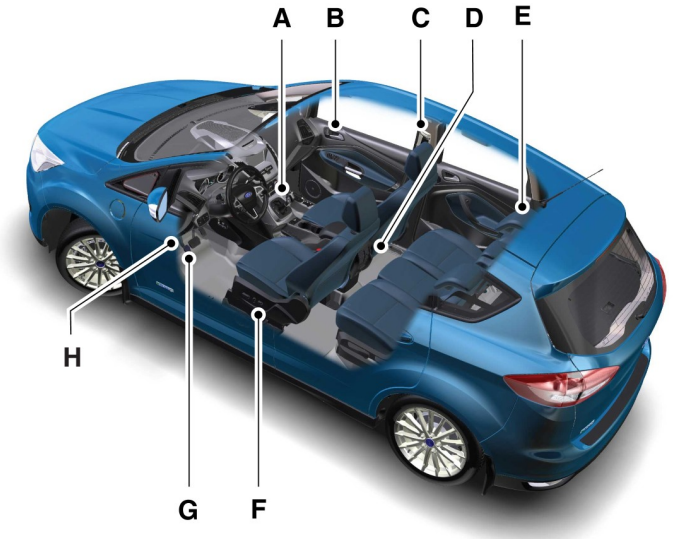


E199917

A Rear exterior lamps. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 243).
B High mounted stop lamp. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 243).
C Rear window wiper. See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 241).
D Liftgate. See **Power Liftgate** (page 42).
E Tire pressures. See **Tire Pressures** (page 269).
F Wheels and tires. See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 262).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

VEHICLE INTERIOR OVERVIEW

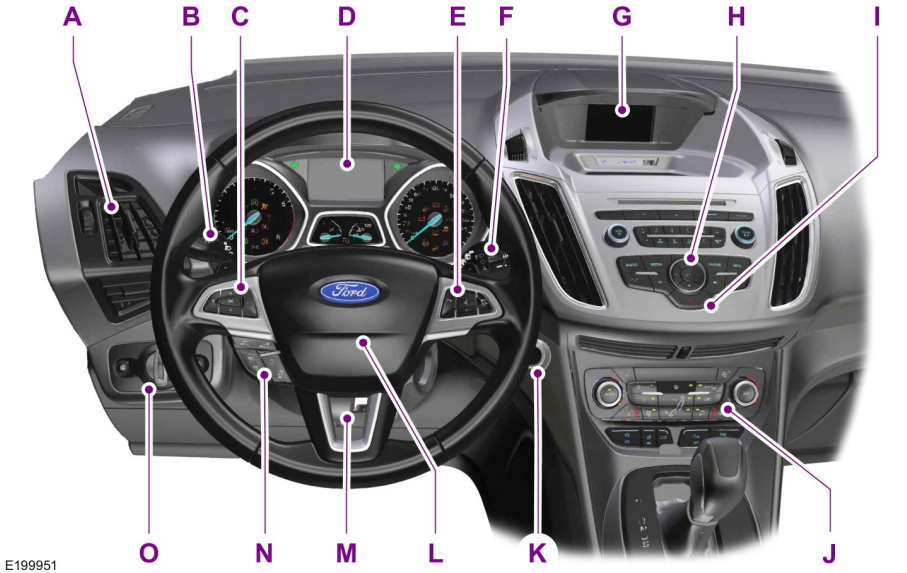


E191855

A Gearshift lever. See **Transmission** (page 136).
B Power window switches. See **Power Windows** (page 68).
C Safety belts. See **Fastening the Safety Belts** (page 25).
D Parking brake. See **Parking Brake** (page 140).
E Head restraints. See **Head Restraints** (page 104).
F Front seats. See **Manual Seats** (page 105).
G Temporary mobility kit. See **Temporary Mobility Kit** (page 253).
H Hood release lever. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 228).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW - LHD

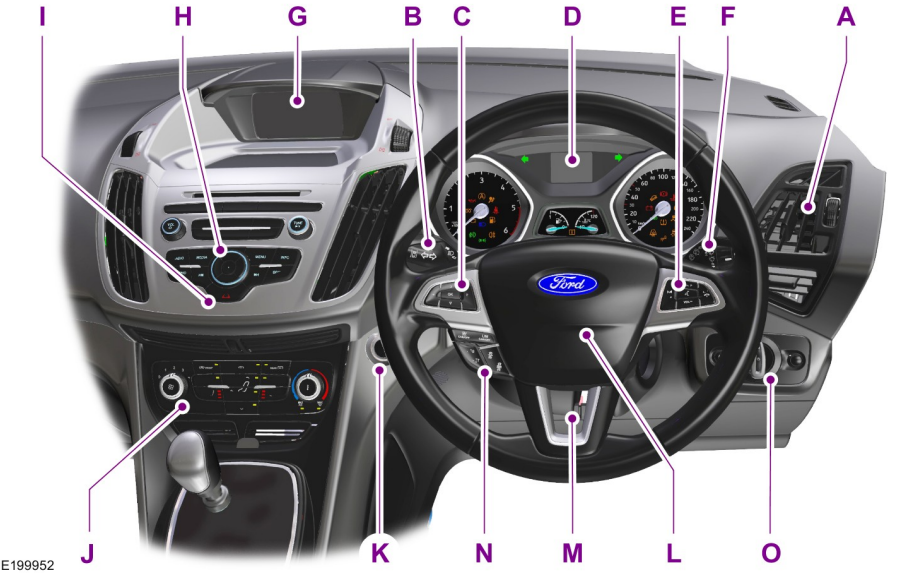


A Air vents. See **Air Vents** (page 92).
B Direction indicator lever. See **Direction Indicators** (page 65).
C Information display control. See **Information Display Control** (page 55).
D Instrument cluster. See **Instrument Cluster** (page 74).
E Audio control. See **Audio Control** (page 53).
F Wiper lever. See **Wipers and Washers** (page 56).
G Information and entertainment display. See **SYNC™ 2** (page 340).
H Audio unit. See **Audio System** (page 288).
I Hazard flasher switch. See **Hazard Warning Flashers** (page 203).
J Climate controls. See **Climate Control** (page 92).
K Keyless start button. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 118).
L Horn.
M Steering wheel adjustment. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 53).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

N Cruise control switches. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 158).
O Lighting control. See **Lighting** (page 60).

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW - RHD



A Air vents. See **Air Vents** (page 92).
B Direction indicator lever. See **Direction Indicators** (page 65).
C Information display control. See **Information Display Control** (page 55).
D Instrument cluster. See **Instrument Cluster** (page 74).
E Audio control. See **Audio Control** (page 53).
F Wiper lever. See **Wipers and Washers** (page 56).
G Information and entertainment display. See **SYNC™ 2** (page 340).
H Audio unit. See **Audio System** (page 288).
I Hazard flasher switch. See **Hazard Warning Flashers** (page 203).
J Climate controls. See **Climate Control** (page 92).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

K Keyless start button. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 118).
L Horn.
M Steering wheel adjustment. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 53).
N Cruise control switches. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 158).
O Lighting control. See **Lighting** (page 60).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

INSTALLING CHILD SEATS



E161855



E68916

WARNINGS

Use an approved child seat to secure children less than 59 in (150 cm) tall on the rear seat.

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child seat.

Do not modify child seats in any way.

Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.

WARNINGS

Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle.

If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child seats checked by an authorized dealer.

Note: *Mandatory use of child seats varies from country to country.*

Only child seats certified to ECE-R129, ECE-R44.03 or later have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle. A choice of child seats are available from authorized dealers.

Child Seats for Different Mass Groups

Use the correct child seat as follows:

Baby Safety Seat (Group 0+)



E68918

Secure children that weigh less than 29 lb (13 kg) in a rearward facing baby safety seat on the rear seat.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Child Safety Seat (Group 1)



E68920

Secure children that weigh between 29 lb (13 kg) and 40 lb (18 kg)in a child safety seat on the rear seat.

Booster Seats

WARNINGS

Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the safety belt.

Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a safety belt that is slack or twisted.

Do not put the safety belt under your child's arm or behind your child's back.

Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height.

Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

Note: *Make sure the child seat rests tightly against the vehicle seat. If necessary, adjust the seat backrest to an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See* ***Head Restraints*** *(page 104).*

Note: *When using a child seat on a rear seat, adjust the front seat in a position to prevent contact with the rear passenger, child feet or child legs.*

Booster Seat (Group 2)



E70710

Secure children that weigh more than 33 lb (15 kg) but are less than 59.06 in (150 cm) tall in a booster seat or a booster cushion.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult safety belt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across your child's hips.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Booster Cushion (Group 3)



E68924

ISOFIX Anchor Points

WARNING

Use an anti-rotation device when using the ISOFIX system. We recommend the use of a top tether or support leg.

Note: *When you are purchasing an ISOFIX seat, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations. See* ***Child Seat Positioning*** *(page 20).*



E174928

Your vehicle has ISOFIX anchor points that accommodate universally approved ISOFIX child seats.

The ISOFIX system has two rigid attachment arms on the child seat. These attach to anchor points on the second row seats, where the cushion and backrest meet. For child seats with a top tether, tether anchor points are on the rear of the second row seats.

Attaching a Child Seat With Top Tethers

WARNINGS

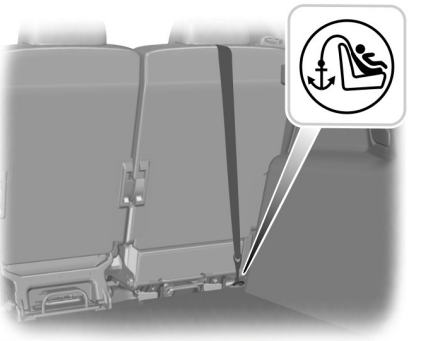
Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.

Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.

Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions for installing a child seat with a top tether.

Top Tether Anchor Points

Compact C-MAX



E132100

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

WARNING

If your vehicle is equipped with the comfort seat system, slide the second row seat forwards to gain access to the anchor points. After installing the ISOFIX seat, do not move the seat to the comfort position as it could interfere with the tether strap routing.

Grand C-MAX



E205436

The top tether anchor points are located on the back of the rear seat.

Attaching a Child Seat With a Support Leg

WARNINGS

Make sure the support leg is long enough to reach the vehicle floor.

Make sure that the child seat manufacturer lists your vehicle as suitable for use with this type of child seat.

Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions for installing a child seat with a support leg.



E185352

CHILD SEAT POSITIONING

WARNINGS

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child seats.

Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

If you use a child seat that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.

If you use a child seat and a safety belt, make sure that the safety belt is not slack or twisted.

Make sure the child seat rests tightly against the vehicle seat. If necessary, adjust the seat backrest to an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See **Head Restraints** (page 104).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

WARNINGS

You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child seat. See **Head Restraints** (page 104).

Note: *When using a child seat on a front seat, always adjust the front passenger seat as far back as possible. If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the safety belt without slack remaining, adjust the seat backrest to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat. See* ***Seats*** *(page 104).*

Seating positions	Mass group categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	Up to 22 lbs (10 kg)	Up to 29 lbs (13 kg)	20 - 40 lbs (9 - 18 kg)	33 - 55 lbs (15 - 25 kg)	46 - 79 lbs (22 - 36 kg)
Front passenger seat with airbag **ON**	X	X	UF[1]	UF[1]	UF[1]
Front passenger seat with airbag **OFF**	U[1]	U[1]	U[1]	U[1]	U[1]
Rear seats	U	U	U	U	U

X Not suitable for children in this mass group.

U Suitable for universal category child seats approved for use in this mass group.

U[1] Suitable for universal category child seats approved for use in this mass group. We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child seat, on a rear seat.

UF[1] Suitable for universal category forward facing child seats approved for use in this mass group. We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child seat, on a rear seat.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

ISOFIX Child Seats

Seating positions		Mass group categories			
		0	0+	1	
		Rearward facing		Forward facing	Rearward facing
		Up to 29 lbs (13 kg)		20 - 40 lbs (9 - 18 kg)	
Front passenger seat	Size class	No ISOFIX			
	Size type				
Rear outboard seat ISOFIX	Size class	C, D, E[1]		A, B, B1[1]	C, D[1]
	Size type	IL[2]		IL[2], IUF[3]	IL[2]
Rear center seat	Size class	No ISOFIX			
	Size type				

IL Suitable for use with particular ISOFIX child restraints systems in the semi-universal category. Refer to the child restraint system manufacturer vehicle recommendation list for additional information.

IUF Suitable for use with forward facing ISOFIX child restraints systems in the universal category.

[1]The capital letters A to G define the ISOFIX size class for both universal and semi-universal child restraints systems. You can see the identification letters on ISOFIX child restraints.

[2]At the time of going to print, the recommended Group 0+ ISOFIX baby safety seat is the Britax Roemer Baby Safe.

[3]At the time of going to print, the recommended Group 1 ISOFIX child seat is the Britax Roemer Duo.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

i-Size Child Seats

	Front passenger seat	Rear outboard seats	Rear center seat
i-Size Child Restraint Systems	X	i-U	X

i-U Suitable for use with forward and rearward facing i-Size child restraint systems.

X Not suitable for use with i-Size child restraint systems.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS - VEHICLES WITH: MECHANICAL CHILD PROOF LOCKS

When these locks are set, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.



E112197

The childproof locks are located on the rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door.

Left-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock and clockwise to unlock.

Right-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock and counterclockwise to unlock.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS - VEHICLES WITH: REMOTE CHILD PROOF LOCKS



E203032

Press the switch to turn them on.

Note: *You cannot use the rear power window switches with the child safety locks on.*

Press the switch again to turn them off.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

FASTENING THE SAFETY BELTS

WARNINGS

You have not fastened the safety belt correctly if you do not hear a distinct click. Failure to fasten the safety belt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

Make sure that your safety belt is securely stored away and is not outside your vehicle when closing the door. Failure of an occupant to be able to use a trapped safety belt increases the risk of serious personal injury or death.



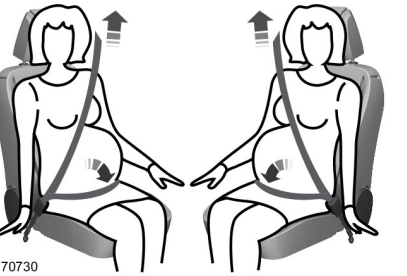
E74124

Pull the safety belt out steadily. It may lock if you pull it sharply or if your vehicle is on a slope.

Insert the tongue into the buckle until you hear a distinct click.

To release the safety belt press the red button on the buckle. Hold the tongue and let the safety belt retract to its stowed position.

Using Safety Belts During Pregnancy



E170730

WARNING

Position the safety belt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap. Failure to adjust the safety belt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

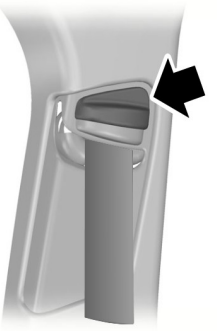
Pregnant women should always wear their safety belt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

SAFETY BELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

WARNING

Position the safety belt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt correctly could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



E87511

To adjust the shoulder belt height, squeeze the button and slide the height adjuster up or down. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

SAFETY BELT MINDER

WARNING

The system will only provide protection when you use the safety belt correctly.

The warning lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound when the following conditions have been met:

- The front safety belts have not been fastened.
- Your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

It will also illuminate and sound if a front safety belt is unfastened when your vehicle is moving.

If you do not fasten your safety belt the warning switches off automatically after approximately five minutes.

Turning the Safety Belt Minder Off

Contact an authorized dealer.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Wear a safety belt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the safety belt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 104). Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and safety belts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. In the event of a crash, hard objects could cause serious personal injury or death.

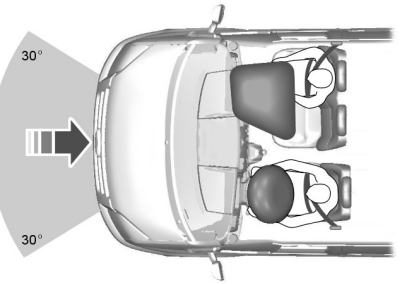
Do not puncture the seat with sharp objects. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Note: *You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

Note: *Only wipe airbag covers with a damp cloth.*

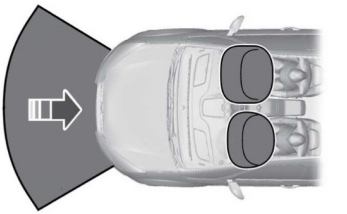
DRIVER AIRBAG



E68581

The airbag will deploy during significant frontal collisions or collisions that are up to 30 degrees from the left or the right. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupant, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the airbag will not deploy.

PASSENGER AIRBAG



E151127

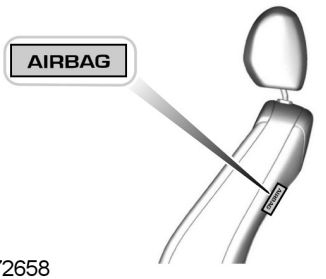
C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

The passenger airbag will deploy during significant frontal or near-frontal collisions. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupant, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the front passenger airbag will not deploy.

SIDE AIRBAGS

WARNING

Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by an authorized dealer.

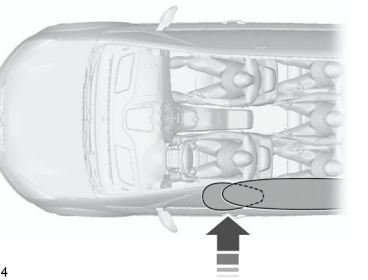


E72658

The airbags are located inside the seatback of the front seats. There is a label attached to the side of the seatback to indicate this.

The airbag will deploy during significant lateral collisions. It might also deploy during significant frontal collisions. The airbag will not deploy in minor lateral and frontal collisions, rear collisions, or overturns.

SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS



E75004

The airbags are located over the front and rear side windows.

The airbag will deploy during significant lateral collisions. It will also deploy during significant frontal angled collisions. The curtain airbag will not deploy in minor lateral and frontal collisions, rear collisions, or overturns.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

Note: *Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 33 ft (10 m).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around your vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other radio transmitters, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, wireless remote controls, cell phones, battery chargers and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: *Make sure your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.*

Note: *If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.*

Note: *The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.*

REMOTE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: KEYLESS ENTRY

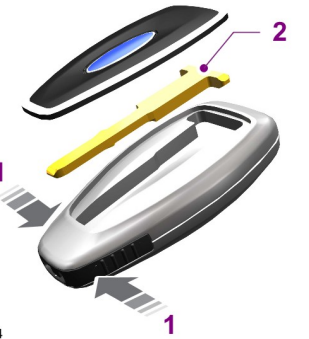
Intelligent Access Key



E162192

Key Blade

The intelligent access key also contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.



E87964

To release the key blade:

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade.

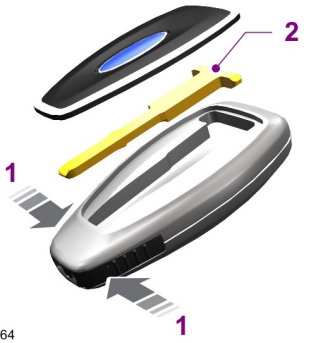
C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Programming a New Remote Control

To program an additional remote control See **Security** (page 48).

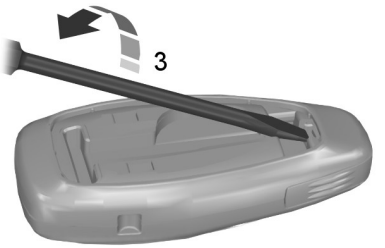
Changing the Remote Control Battery

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority regarding recycling.



E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade.



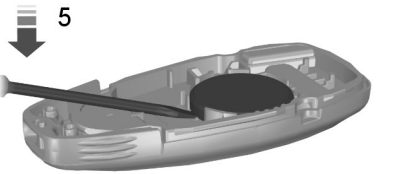
E105362

3. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully seperate the two halves of the remote control.



E119190

4. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to separate the two halves of the remote control.



E125860

Note: *Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.*

5. Carefully prise out the battery with the screwdriver.
6. Install a new battery (3V CR 2032) with the + facing downwards.
7. Assemble the two halves of the remote control.
8. Reinstall the key blade.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Note: *Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.*

Note: *Replacing the battery does not delete the transmitter from the vehicle. The transmitter should operate normally.*

Locating Your Vehicle

Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The horn may sound and the direction indicators flash.

The horn may sound twice and the direction indicators do not flash if:

- Locking was not successful.
- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open on vehicles with an anti-theft alarm or remote start.

REMOTE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: REMOTE FLIP KEY

Programming a New Remote Control

Contact an authorized dealer.

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

Note: *When you press the unlock button, either all the doors are unlocked or only the driver door is unlocked. Pressing the unlock button again unlocks all the doors.*

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators flash twice to confirm the change.

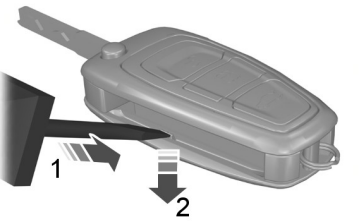
To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

Changing the Remote Control Battery

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

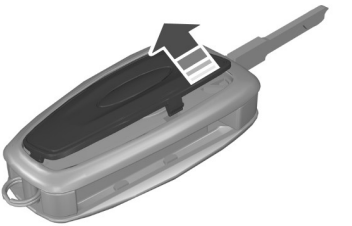


Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.



E128809

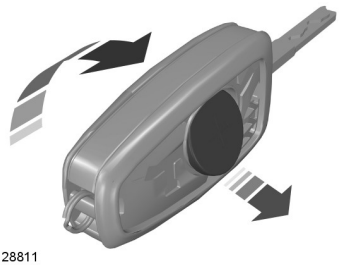
1. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and gently push the clip.
2. Press the clip down to release the battery cover.



E128810

3. Carefully remove the battery cover.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



E128811

Note: *Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.*

4. Turn the remote control over to remove the battery.
5. Install a new battery with the + facing upward.
6. Reinstall the battery cover.

Note: *Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.*

Note: *You do not need to reprogram the remote control after you have replaced its battery, it should operate normally.*

Locating Your Vehicle

Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The direction indicators flash.

The direction indicators do not flash if:

- Locking was not successful.
- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open on vehicles with an anti-theft alarm.

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control** (page 32).

To re-program the passive anti-theft system see an authorized dealer.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The system allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits. You can use all but one of the keys programmed to your vehicle with these restricted modes.

Any keys that have not been programmed are referred to as an administrator key or admin key. These can be used to:

- Create a MyKey.
- Program configurable MyKey settings.
- Clear all MyKey features.

When you have programmed a MyKey, you can access the following information using the information display:

- How many admin keys and MyKeys are programmed to your vehicle.
- The total distance your vehicle has traveled using a MyKey.

Note: *All MyKeys are programmed to the same settings. You cannot program them individually.*

Note: *For vehicles with push-button start, when both a MyKey and an admin remote transmitter are present, the admin remote transmitter will be recognized by the vehicle while switching the ignition on to start the vehicle.*

Non-Configurable Settings

The following settings cannot be changed:

- Safety belt minder. You cannot disable this feature. The audio system will mute when this feature is activated.
- Low fuel level warning. When the fuel level is low, warnings will be shown in the display followed by an audible tone.
- Driver assist features, for example traction control, navigation and parking aids. These systems turn on automatically whenever you switch the ignition on.

Configurable Settings

You can configure MyKey settings when you first create a MyKey. You can also change the settings afterward with an admin key.

The following settings can be configured using an admin key:

- Various vehicle speed limits can be set. Warnings will be shown in the display followed by an audible tone when your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed by fully depressing the accelerator pedal.

WARNING

Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

- Various vehicle speed reminders can be set. Warnings will be shown in the display followed by an audible tone when the set vehicle speed is exceeded.
- Audio system maximum volume of 45%. A message will be shown in the display when you attempt to exceed the limited volume. Automatic volume control will be disabled.
- Always on setting. When this is selected you will not be able to disable emergency assistance or the do not disturb feature.

Note: *If a MyKey and an admin key are present, your vehicle will recognize the admin key only.*

CREATING A MYKEY

Vehicles without Keyless Starting

1. Insert the key you want to program into the ignition.
2. Switch the ignition on.
3. Access the main menu using the information display. Select **MyKey** and press **OK** or the right arrow button.
4. Select **Create MyKey** and press **OK**.
5. When prompted, press and hold **OK** until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The key will be restricted the next time you use it.

Note: *Make sure you label the MyKey so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.*

Vehicles with Keyless Starting

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Access the main menu using the information display. Select **MyKey** and press **OK** or the right arrow button.
3. Place the key into the backup position. The location of your backup position is in another chapter. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 118).
4. Select **Create MyKey** and press **OK**.
5. When prompted, press and hold **OK** until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The key will be restricted the next time you use it.

Note: *Make sure you label the MyKey so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.*

CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

You can clear or change your MyKey settings using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 80).

Switch the ignition on using an admin key or fob.

To clear all MyKeys of all MyKey settings, press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button.
MyKey	Press the **OK** button.
Clear MyKey	Press and hold the **OK** button until the following message displays.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Message	Action and Description
All MyKeys Cleared	

Note: *When you clear your MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information about your programmed MyKeys by using the information display.

MyKey Distance

Tracks the distance when drivers use a MyKey. The only way to delete the accumulated distance is by using an admin key to clear all MyKeys. If the distance does not accumulate as expected, then the intended user is not using the MyKey, or an admin key user recently cleared and then recreated a MyKey.

Number of MyKeys

Indicates the number of MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to detect how many MyKeys you have for your vehicle and determine when all MyKeys have been deleted.

Number of Admin Keys

Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to determine how many admin keys you have for your vehicle, and detect if an additional MyKey has been programmed.

USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

MyKey is not compatible with non Ford-approved, aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system, see an authorized dealer for a Ford-approved remote start system.

MYKEY TROUBLESHOOTING

Condition	Potential Causes
I cannot create a MyKey.	The key used to start the vehicle is not an admin key. The key used to start the vehicle is the only key. There always has to be at least one admin key. Vehicles with keyless start: The keyless start transmitter is not placed in the backup position. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 118). The passive anti-theft system is disabled.
I cannot program the configurable settings.	The key used to start the vehicle is not an admin key. There are no MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 34).
I cannot clear the MyKeys.	The key used to start the vehicle is not an admin key. There are no MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 34).
I lost the only admin key.	Purchase a new key from an authorized dealer.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

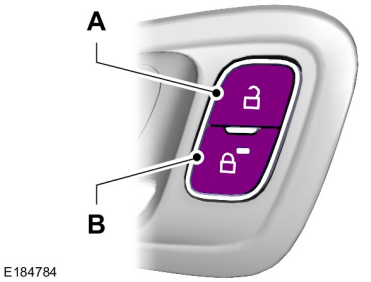
Condition	Potential Causes
I lost a key.	Program a spare key. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 48).
The MyKey distance does not accumulate.	The MyKey is not being used by the intended user. The MyKeys have been cleared. See **Clearing All MyKeys** (page 34).
No MyKey functions with the keyless entry transmitter.	An admin transmitter is present at vehicle start. No MyKeys are created. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 34).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

Power Door Locks

The power door lock control is on the driver door.



A Unlock.
B Lock.

Remote Control

You can use the remote control at any time while your vehicle is switched off.

Unlocking the Doors

Press the button to unlock all doors. The direction indicators will flash.

Note: *You can unlock the driver's door with the key. Use the key when the remote control is not functioning.*

Note: *When you lock your vehicle for several weeks, the remote control will be switched off. Your vehicle must be unlocked and started. Unlocking and starting your vehicle once will enable the remote control.*

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

You can reprogram the unlocking function so that only the driver door is unlocked. See **Remote Control** (page 29).

Locking the Doors

Press the button to lock all the doors. The direction indicators will flash.

Note: *If any door or the luggage compartment is not closed, or if the hood is not closed on vehicles that have an anti-theft alarm or remote start, the direction indicators will not flash.*

Double Locking the Doors

WARNING

Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. You will not be able to unlock the doors from the inside if you have double locked them.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside. You can only double lock the doors if they are all closed.

Press the button twice within three seconds.

Automatic Relocking

The doors will automatically relock if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm will return to their previous state.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors from Inside

Use the lock and unlock buttons located on the driver door.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key

Locking with the Key

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Double Locking with the Key

Turn the key to the lock position twice within three seconds.

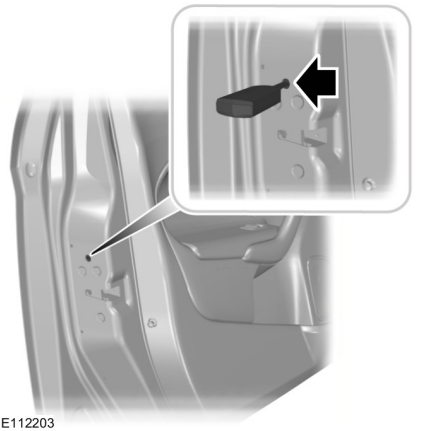
Unlocking with the Key

Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle.

Note: *If the child safety locks are on and you pull the interior handle, you will only turn off the emergency locking, not the child safety lock. You can only open the doors using the external door handle.*

Locking and Unlocking the Doors Individually with the Key

Locking



E112203

If the central locking function fails to operate, lock the doors individually using the key in the position shown.

Left-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock.

Right-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

Unlocking

If the central locking function fails to operate, unlock the driver door and then unlock all other doors individually by pulling the interior door handles.

Note: *If the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be locked individually until the central locking function has been repaired.*

Opening the Liftgate

With the Remote Control



Press the button twice within three seconds.

From Outside Your Vehicle



E144402

Press the release button above the license plate to unlatch the liftgate. Your vehicle must be unlocked or have an intelligent access transmitter within 3 ft (1 m) of the liftgate.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

SLIDING DOOR



E145826

When the rear doors are fully open, make sure that you do not step on the cable or mechanism at the base of the door aperture.

MANUAL LIFTGATE - COMPACT MAV (5-SEATER)

WARNINGS

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a safety belt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

WARNINGS

Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

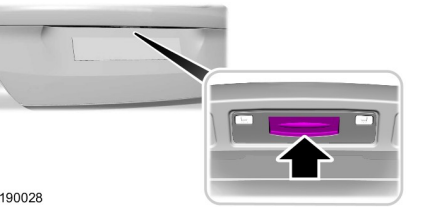
Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Opening the Liftgate

Manually



E190028

Press the release button above the license plate to unlatch the liftgate.

With the Remote Control



Press the button twice within three seconds.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Closing the Liftgate


E155976

A handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

MANUAL LIFTGATE - GRAND MAV (5+2 SEATER)

WARNINGS

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

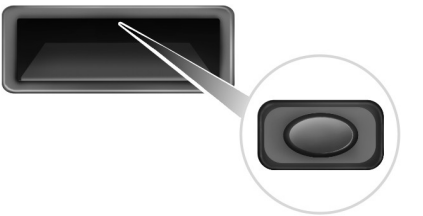
Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Opening the Liftgate

Manually


E138632

Press the button located in the top of the liftgate pull cup handle to unlatch the liftgate, and then pull on the outside handle.

With the Remote Control



Press the button twice within three seconds.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Closing the Liftgate



A handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

POWER LIFTGATE

WARNINGS

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a safety belt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Keep keys out of reach of children. Do not allow children to operate or play near an open or moving power liftgate. You should supervise the operation of the power liftgate at all times.

Note: *Make sure that you close the liftgate before operating or moving the vehicle, especially in an enclosure, like a garage or a parking structure. You could damage the liftgate or its components.*

Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the spoiler, glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

The liftgate only operates with the transmission in park (P).

One warning tone sounds as the liftgate begins to power close. Three short chimes indicate a problem with the open or close request, caused by:

- The ignition is on and the transmission is not in park (P).
- The battery voltage is below the minimum operating voltage.
- The vehicle speed is at or above 3 mph (5 km/h).

If the liftgate starts to close after it has fully opened, this indicates there may be excessive weight on the liftgate or a possible gas strut failure. A repetitive chime sounds and the liftgate closes under control. Remove any excessive weight from the liftgate. If the liftgate continues to close after opening, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Opening and Closing the Liftgate

WARNING

Make sure all persons are clear of the power liftgate area before using the power liftgate control.

Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

Note: *Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

From the Instrument Panel

Press the button on the instrument panel.

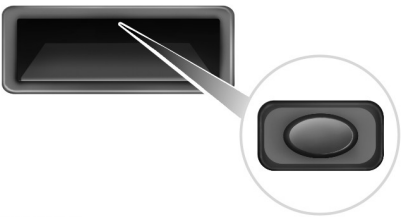
With the Remote Control

Press the button twice within three seconds.

With the Outside Control Button

Opening the Liftgate

1. Unlock the liftgate with the remote control or power door unlock control. If an intelligent access key is within 3 ft (1 m) of the liftgate, the liftgate unlocks when you press the liftgate release button.



E138632

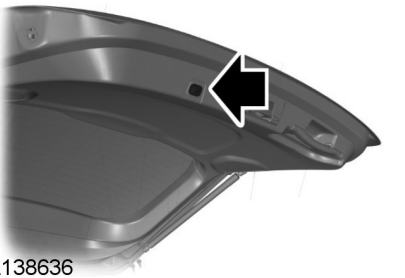
2. Press the control button located in the top of the liftgate pull-cup handle.

Note: *Allow the power system to open the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the system's obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation or reverse its direction. Manually interfering with the liftgate motion may also replicate a gas strut failure.*

Closing the Liftgate

WARNING

Keep clear of the liftgate when activating the rear switch.



E138636

Press and release the button.

Stopping the Liftgate Movement

You can stop the liftgate movement by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the liftgate control button.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the remote control twice.
- Pressing the liftgate button on the instrument panel.
- Pressing the exterior liftgate release button.
- Activating the obstacle detection feature.
- Moving your foot under and away from the center rear bumper in a single-kick motion.*

*This method only works for vehicles with the hands-free liftgate feature.

Setting the Liftgate Open Height

1. Open the liftgate.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

2. Stop the liftgate movement by pressing the control button on the liftgate when it reaches the desired height.

Note: *Once the liftgate has stopped moving, you can also manually move it to the desired height.*

3. Press and hold the liftgate control button on the liftgate until you hear a chime, indicating programming is complete.

Note: *You can only use the liftgate control button to program the height.*

Note: *You cannot program the height if the liftgate position is too low.*

The new open liftgate height is recalled when the power liftgate is opened. To change the programmed height, repeat the above procedure. Once you open the power liftgate, you can manually move it to a different height.

Note: *The system recalls the new programmed height until you reprogram it, even if you disconnect the battery.*

When operating the power liftgate after you have programmed a lower height than full-open, you can fully open the liftgate by manually pushing it upward to the maximum open position.

Obstacle Detection

When Closing

The system stops when it detects an obstacle. Two short tones sound and the system reverses to open. Once you remove the obstacle, you can power close the liftgate.

Note: *Entering your vehicle while the liftgate is closing can cause your vehicle to bounce and activate obstacle detection. To prevent this, let the power liftgate close completely before you enter your vehicle. Before driving off, check the instrument cluster for a liftgate or door ajar message or warning indicator. Failure to do this could result in unintentionally leaving the liftgate open while driving.*

When Opening

The system stops when it detects an obstacle and two short tones sound. Once you remove the obstacle, you can continue to operate the liftgate.

HANDS-FREE POWER LIFTGATE

WARNINGS

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a safety belt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Keep keys out of reach of children. Do not allow children to play near an open or moving power liftgate.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

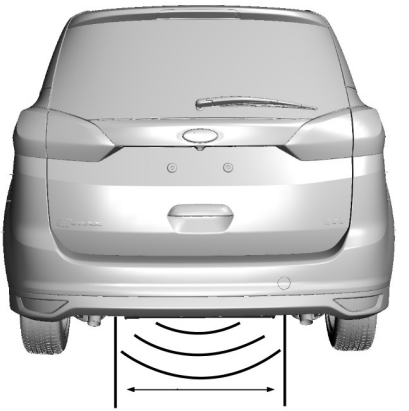
Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

Note: *Stand clear of the liftgate area once the power liftgate begins to open or close.*

Opening and Closing the Liftgate

The intelligent access key must be within 3 ft (1 m) of your vehicle.



E174120

1. Move your foot under and away from the rear bumper detection area in a single-kick motion. Do not move your foot sideways or the sensors may not detect the motion.
2. The liftgate opens or closes automatically.

Note: *Allow the power system to open or close the liftgate. Manually pushing or pulling the liftgate may activate the obstacle detection feature and stop the power operation.*

Note: *Splashing water may cause the hands-free liftgate to open. Keep the intelligent access key away from the rear bumper detection area while washing your vehicle.*

Note: *Switching the ignition on or off while the liftgate is closing may cause the liftgate to reverse to the fully open position.*

Note: *You can also open or close the power liftgate using the remote control or power liftgate control buttons. See* ***Power Liftgate*** *(page 42).*

Setting the Liftgate Open Height

See **Power Liftgate** (page 42).

KEYLESS ENTRY

General Information

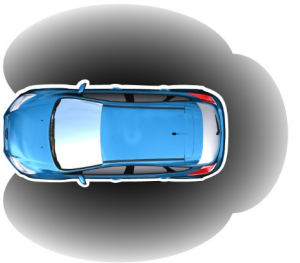
The system will not function if:

- Your vehicle battery has no charge.
- The passive key battery has no charge.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.

Note: *If the system does not function, you will need to use the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.*

The system allows you to operate your vehicle without the use of a key or remote control.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



E78276

Passive locking and unlocking requires a valid passive key to be located within one of the three external detection ranges. These are located approximately five feet (1.5 meters) from the front door handles and the liftgate.

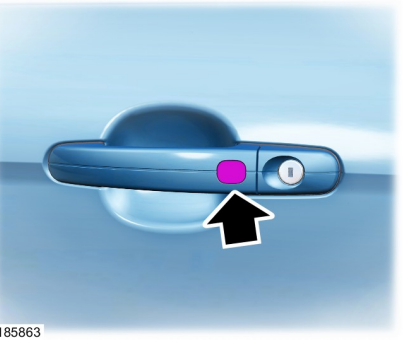
Note: *The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.*

Passive Key

Your vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the passive key. You can also use the passive key as a remote control to lock and unlock your vehicle. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 38).

Locking Your Vehicle

Note: *Your vehicle does not automatically lock. If you do not touch a locking sensor your vehicle will remain unlocked.*



E185863

Locking buttons are located on each of the front doors.

For central locking and to arm the alarm, press a locking button once.

For double locking and to arm the alarm, press a locking button twice within three seconds.

Note: *When locking your vehicle, do not grip the door handle.*

Note: *Keep the door handle surface clean to make sure the system operates correctly.*

Note: *Your vehicle will remain locked for approximately one second. When the delay period is over, you can open the doors again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.*

Two short flashes of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and the liftgate have been locked and that the alarm has been armed.

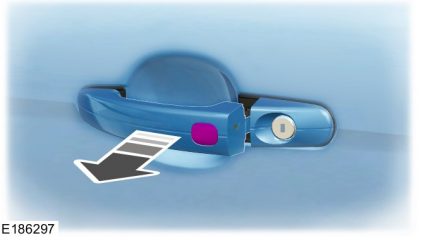
Liftgate

The liftgate cannot be closed and will reopen if the passive key is located inside the luggage compartment with the doors locked.

Note: *If a second valid passive key is located within the liftgate detection range, the liftgate can be closed.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Unlocking Your Vehicle



E186297

Pull an exterior door handle to unlock and open the door. Do not touch the lock sensor on the front of the handle.

One long flash of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and the liftgate have been unlocked and that the alarm has been disarmed.

Note: *A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door.*

Unlocking Only the Driver's Door

You can program the system so that only the driver door is unlocked. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 38).

If the unlocking function is reprogrammed so that only the driver door is unlocked the following will occur:

- If the driver's door is the first door which is opened, the other doors will remain locked. All the other doors can be unlocked from inside your vehicle by pressing the unlock button located on the driver's and front passenger's door. Doors can be unlocked individually by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
- If the front passenger's door is the first door which is opened, all the doors and the liftgate will be unlocked.

Disabled Keys

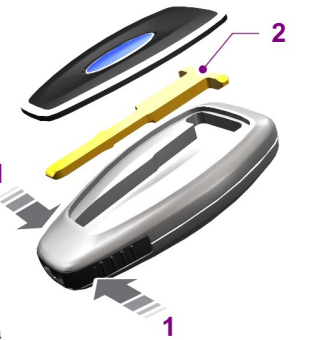
Any keys left inside your vehicle interior when it is locked will be disabled.

You cannot use a disabled key to switch the ignition on or start the engine.

You must enable all passive keys again in order to use them. To enable all your passive keys, unlock your vehicle using a passive key that has not been disabled or the remote control unlocking function. All passive keys will then be enabled if you switch the ignition on or you start your vehicle with a valid key.

Note: *You can still start your vehicle when the passive key is in the back-up position. See* ***Push Button Ignition Switch*** *(page 118).*

Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade



E87964

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade and insert it into the lock.

Note: *Only the driver's door handle has a lock cylinder.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

Principle of Operation

The system prevents someone from starting the engine with an incorrectly coded key.

Note: *Do not leave correctly coded keys in the vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.*

Coded Keys

If you lose a key, you can obtain a replacement from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original keys. You can also obtain extra keys from an authorized dealer.

Note: *Have all of your remaining keys erased and recoded if you lose a key. Have replacement keys coded together with recoding your remaining keys. See an authorized dealer for further information.*

Note: *Do not shield your keys with metal objects. This may prevent the receiver from recognizing a coded key.*

Arming the Engine Immobilizer

When you switch the ignition off the engine immobilizer will arm automatically after a short time.

Disarming the Engine Immobilizer

When you switch the ignition on the engine immobilizer will disarm automatically if a correctly coded key is used.

If you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: INTEGRAL BATTERY

Alarm System

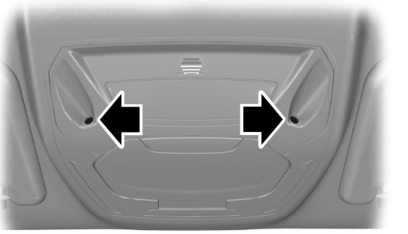
WARNING

Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.

Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood.

Interior Sensors



E131656

Note: *Do not cover up the interior lamp unit sensors.*

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorized access by sensing any movement within your vehicle.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Battery Back-up Sounder

The battery back-up sounder is an additional alarm system, which sounds a siren if your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder is disconnected. When you lock your vehicle the system is armed. The sounder has its own battery and will sound an alarm siren even if someone disconnects your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

Triggering the Alarm

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If someone removes the audio or navigation system.
- If you switch your vehicle on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within your vehicle.
- On vehicles with a battery back-up sounder, if someone disconnects your vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher will flash for five minutes.

Any further attempts to perform one of the above sounds the alarm again.

Full and Reduced Guard

Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 80).

Ask on Exit (If Equipped)

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set.

Using the information display controls, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button.
Vehicle settings	Press the **OK** button.
Alarm	Press the **OK** button.
Ask on exit	Press the **OK** button.
Reduced	Appears in the information display each time you switch your vehicle off. If you wish to arm the alarm with reduced guard, press the **OK** button when this message appears.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Message	Action and Description
	If you wish to arm the alarm with full guard, leave your vehicle without pressing the **OK** button.

Note: *Selecting reduced guard does not set the alarm permanently to reduced guard. It sets it to reduced guard only for the current locking cycle.*

Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Locks** (page 38).

Disarming the Alarm

Vehicles Without Keyless Entry

Perimeter Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching your vehicle on with a correctly coded key or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Category One Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching your vehicle on with a correctly coded key within 12 seconds or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Vehicles with Keyless Entry

Note: *A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See **Keyless Entry** (page 45).*

Perimeter Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Category One Alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on within 12 seconds or unlocking the doors or the liftgate with the remote control.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: INTERIOR SENSOR

Alarm System

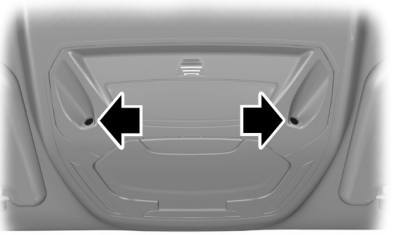
WARNING

Do not arm the alarm with full guard if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.

Perimeter Alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood. It also protects the audio unit.

Interior Sensors



E131656

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Note: *Do not cover up the interior lamp unit sensors.*

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorized intrusion by sensing any movement inside your vehicle.

Triggering the Alarm

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If someone removes the audio unit or navigation system.
- If you switch your vehicle on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within your vehicle.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher will flash for five minutes. Any further attempts to perform one of the above will trigger the alarm again.

Full and Reduced Guard

Full Guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Reduced Guard

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

Selecting Full or Reduced Guard

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 80).

Ask on Exit (If Equipped)

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set.

Using the information display controls, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button.
Vehicle settings	Press the **OK** button.
Alarm	Press the **OK** button.
Ask on exit	Press the **OK** button.
Reduced guard	Appears in the information display each time you switch your vehicle off. If you wish to arm the alarm with reduced guard, press the **OK** button when this message appears. If you wish to arm the alarm with full guard, leave your vehicle without pressing the **OK** button.

Note: *Selecting reduced guard does not set the alarm permanently to reduced guard. It sets it to reduced guard only for the current locking cycle.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Locks** (page 38).

Disarming the Alarm

Vehicles Without Keyless Entry

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching your vehicle on with a correctly coded key or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Vehicles with Keyless Entry

Note: *A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See **Keyless Entry** (page 45).*

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM - VEHICLES WITH: PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood. It also protects the audio unit.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound and the hazard warning flasher will flash.

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

Arming the Alarm

To arm the alarm, lock your vehicle. See **Locks** (page 38).

Disarming the Alarm

Vehicles Without Keyless Entry

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching your vehicle on with a correctly coded key or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

Vehicles With Keyless Entry

Note: *A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See **Keyless Entry** (page 45).*

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching your vehicle on or unlocking the doors with the remote control.

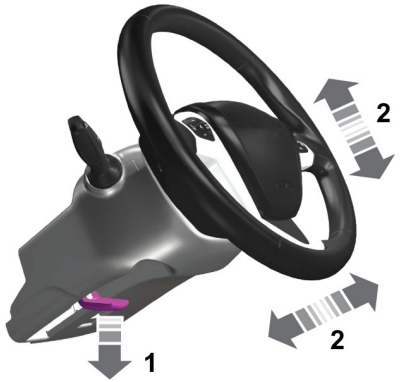
C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

WARNING

Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See* ***Sitting in the Correct Position*** *(page 104).*



E95178

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



E95179

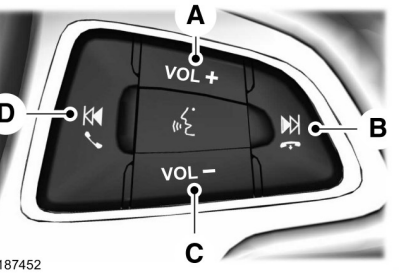
3. Lock the steering column.

AUDIO CONTROL

Select the required source on the audio unit.

You can operate the following functions with the control:

Type One

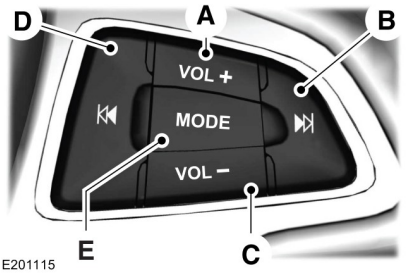


E187452

A	Volume up.
B	Seek up or next.
C	Volume down.
D	Seek down or previous.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Type Two



A	Volume up.
B	Seek up or next.
C	Volume down.
D	Seek down or previous.
E	Press to select source.

Seek, Next or Previous

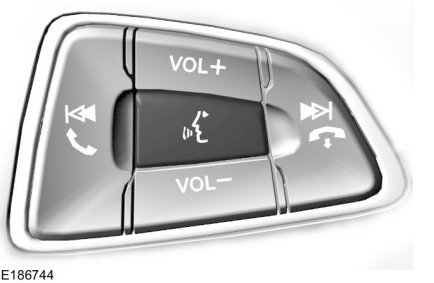
Press the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset.
- Play the next or the previous track.

Press and hold the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band.
- Seek through a track.

VOICE CONTROL



Press the button to select or deselect voice control. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 301).

CRUISE CONTROL

Type 1



C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Type 2



E200802

See **Cruise Control** (page 158).

INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL



E188902

See **General Information** (page 80).

HEATED STEERING WHEEL



E189138

Press the button to switch the system on. The LED on the switch illuminates when the system is on.

Note: *The system only operates when the engine is running.*

Press the button to switch the system off.

The system automatically controls the temperature to avoid overheating.

Under high interior temperature conditions, there may be no perceived warming. This is normal and is not a sign of a system fault.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

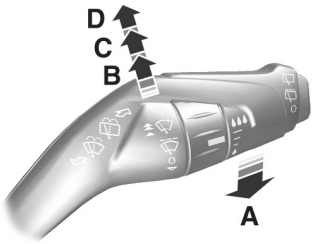
WINDSHIELD WIPERS

Note: *Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.*

Note: *Make sure you switch the windshield wipers and vehicle power off before using an automatic car wash.*

Note: *If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See* ***Checking the Wiper Blades*** *(page 241). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See* ***Changing the Wiper Blades*** *(page 241).*

Note: *Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.*

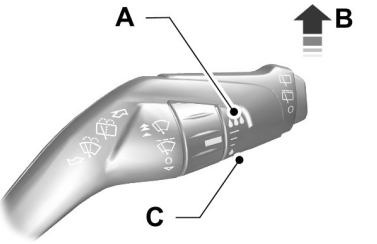


E197525

A Single wipe.
B Intermittent wipe.
C Normal wipe.
D High-speed wipe.

Note: *Move to position* ***O*** *marked on the wiper lever to switch off.*

Intermittent Wipe



E197526

A Short-wipe interval.
B Intermittent wipe.
C Long-wipe interval.

Push the wiper lever up to switch the wipers on, and then use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

Speed Dependent Wipers (If Equipped)

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes decreases.

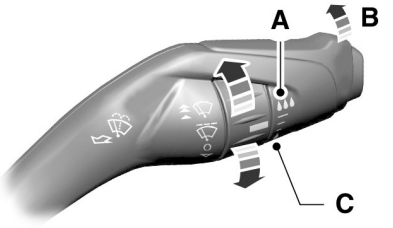
AUTOWIPERS

Note: *Fully defrost the windshield before switching on the windshield wipers.*

Note: *Check your wipers before you enter a car wash to make sure you switched them off.*

The autowipers feature uses a rain sensor. You can find it in the area around the interior mirror. The rain sensor monitors the amount of moisture on the windshield and automatically turns on the wipers. It adjusts the wiper speed by the amount of moisture that the sensor detects on the windshield.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



E197429

A Highest sensitivity.

B On.

C Lowest sensitivity.

Switch the autowipers on by moving the wiper lever up to the first position.

Switch the autowipers off by moving the wiper lever down.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor:

- Rotate the control down to low sensitivity, and the wipers turn on when the rain sensor detects a large amount of moisture on the windshield.
  - When you move the wiper lever up to the first position and the autowiper system is on, the autowiper sensitivity setting adjusts the wiper speed according to the moisture on the windshield only.
  - When you lower the sensitivity, the wipers remain in their ready position only. They do not wipe the windshield automatically unless the sensor detects moisture.
  - Move the wiper lever position up to the second position to wipe the windshield on-demand.
- Rotate the control up to high sensitivity, and the wipers turn on when the rain sensor detects a small amount of moisture on the windshield.
  - When you set the wiper control to a higher sensitivity, the wipers wipe the windshield once.
  - Remember to move the wiper lever position up to the second position to wipe the windshield on-demand.

The autowipers feature is active and ready when the wiper lever is in the first position and selected in the information display. You can change the autowipers feature to intermittent wipers through the information display. See **General Information** (page 80).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Note: *Check your wiper function in the information display. See* ***General Information*** *(page 80). The autowipers feature functions only when you select the menu choice in the information display and you move the wiper lever up to the first position. The autowipers feature then remains on in the information display menu until you change it to intermittent wipe.*

Note: *If you switch autolamps on in conjunction with autowipers, your low beam headlamps turn on automatically when the rain sensor activates the windshield wipers continuously. See* ***Autolamps*** *(page 61).*

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive. If the area around the mirror is dirty, then the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

Wet or winter driving conditions with ice, snow or salty road mist can cause inconsistent and unexpected wiping or smearing. In these conditions, you can do the following to help keep your windshield clear:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing.
- Switch to normal or high-speed wipe by moving the wiper lever up.
- Switch the autowipers off and switch intermittent mode on through the information display. See **General Information** (page 80).
- Switch the autowipers off by moving the wiper lever down.

Note: *Clean the windshield and wiper blades if they begin to leave streaks or smears. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See* ***Changing the Wiper Blades*** *(page 241).*

WINDSHIELD WASHERS

Note: *Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.*



E197528

To operate the washers and spray the windshield, pull the lever toward you. When you release the lever, the wipers will operate for a short time.

REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS

Rear Window Wiper

Note: *Make sure you switch the rear window wiper and ignition off before using an automatic car wash.*



E197647

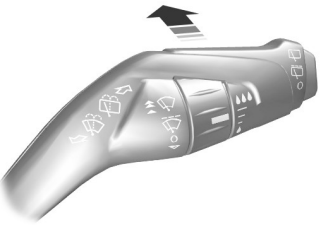
A	Intermittent wipe.
B	Low speed wipe.
C	Off.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Press the top of the button to switch intermittent wipe on. Press the top of the button again to switch low speed wipe on. Press the bottom of the button to switch the rear window wiper off.

When you switch on the front wipers and move the gearshift lever to reverse (R), rear intermittent wipe automatically turns on.

Rear Window Washer



E197529

Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer. When you release the lever, wiping continues for a short period of time.

HEADLAMP WASHERS

When the headlamps are on, the headlamp washers will operate with the windshield washers.

Note: *The headlamp washers will not operate every time you use the windshield washers. This is to prevent the washer fluid reservoir from emptying quickly.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Condensation in Lamp Assemblies

Exterior lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

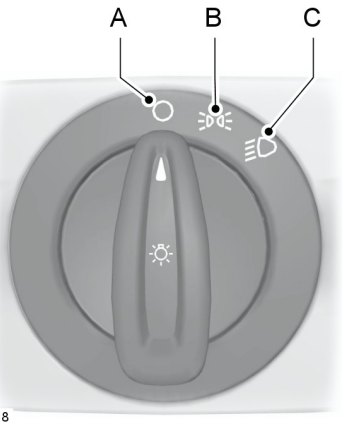
- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

LIGHTING CONTROL



E70718

A Off

B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps

C Headlamps

High Beams



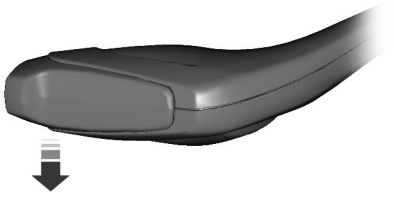
E162679

Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Headlamp Flasher



E162680

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

AUTOLAMPS



E70719

The headlamps will switch on and off automatically in low light situations or during poor weather.

Note: *It may be necessary to switch your headlamps on manually in severe weather conditions.*

Note: *If you have autolamps on, you can only switch the high beam on once autolamps has switched the headlamps on.*

Note: *If you switch autolamps on in conjunction with autowipers, low beam headlamps will illuminate automatically when the rain sensor activates the windshield wipers continuously.*

INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER



E148739

HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator toward you again or switching the ignition on.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

WARNING

Always remember to switch your headlamps on in low light situations or during inclement weather. The system does not activate the tail lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to activate your headlamps under these conditions may result in a collision.

To switch the system on:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Switch the lighting control to the off or autolamp position.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

WARNINGS

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. A manual override may be necessary if the system fails to switch the high beam on or off.

A manual override may be required when approaching other road users such as cyclists.

Do not use the system in fog.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. A manual override may be necessary in these cases.

The system may not deactivate the high beam if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles (for example guard rails).

WARNINGS

Check and replace wiper blades regularly to ensure the camera sensor has a clear view through the windscreen. Replacement wiper blades must be the correct length.

Note: *Keep the windscreen free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.*

Note: *Reflective road signs may be detected as oncoming traffic and the headlamps will be switched to low beam.*

Note: *Always fit Ford Original Parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.*

The system will automatically switch on high beams if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead the system will switch off high beam before it can distract other road users. Low beam will remain on.

A camera sensor is centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle. This monitors conditions continuously to decide when to switch the high beams on and off.

Once the system is active the high beam will switch on if:

- It is dark enough to require the use of high beams and
- there is no traffic or street lighting ahead and
- vehicle speed is greater than 25 mph (40 km/h).

The high beam will switch off if:

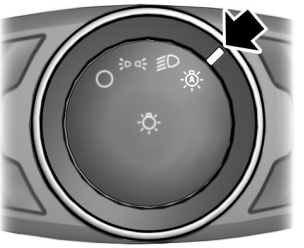
- The rear fog lamps are switched on.
- The ambient light is high enough that high beam is not required.
- An approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps are detected.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

- Street lighting is detected.
- Vehicle speed falls below 19 mph (30 km/h).
- The camera sensor is too hot or becomes blocked.

Activating the System

Switch the system on using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 80). Turn the switch to the autolamps position. See **Autolamps** (page 61).



E142451

The indicator will illuminate to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

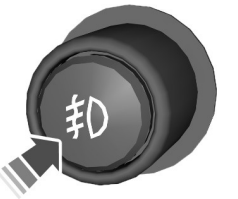
Manually Overriding the System



E169254

Push or pull the lever to switch between high and low beam.

FRONT FOG LAMPS



E70721

Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the fog lamps on when the lighting control is in any position except off.

REAR FOG LAMPS



E70720

WARNINGS

Only use the rear fog lamps when visibility is restricted to less than 164 feet (50 meters).

Do not use the rear fog lamps when it is raining or snowing and visibility is more than 164 feet (50 meters).

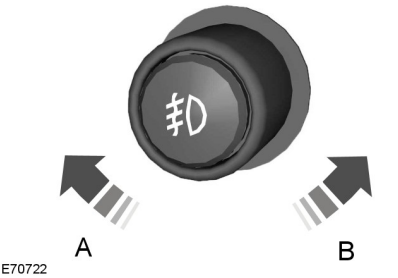
Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the fog lamps on when either the front fog lamps or low beam headlamps are on.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

HEADLAMP LEVELING

Note: *Vehicles with Xenon headlamps have automatic headlamp leveling.*



A Raised headlamp beams
B Lowered headlamp beams

Adjust the level of the headlamps according to the load you are carrying in your vehicle.

Recommended Headlamp Leveling Switch Positions

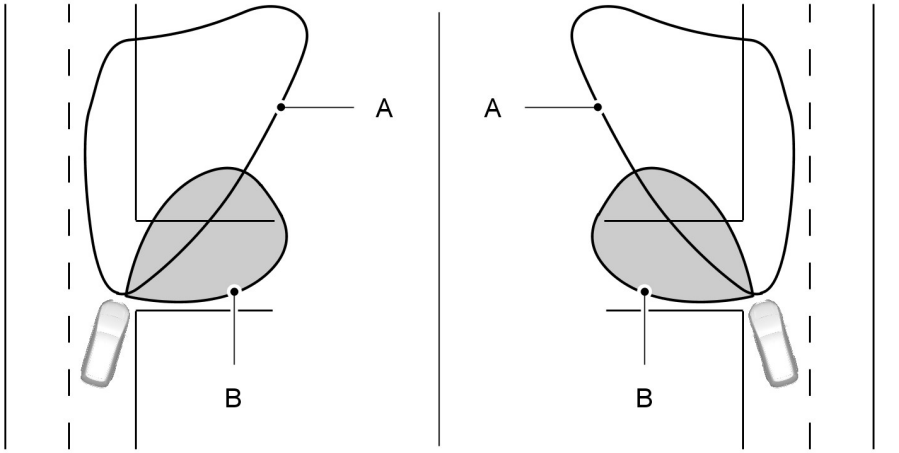
Load		Load in luggage compartment*	Switch position
Front seats	Second row seats		
1-2	-	-	0
1-2	-	-	0 (0.5) **
1-2	3	-	1 (0.5) **
1-2	3	Max *	3 (0.5) **
1	-	Max *	4 (1.5) **

* See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 277).

** Vehicles with active suspension.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

CORNERING LAMPS



E72898

A Headlamp beam
B Cornering lamp beam

The cornering lamps illuminate the inside of a corner when you are turning.

DIRECTION INDICATORS



E162681

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

Note: *Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.*

INTERIOR LAMPS

The lamps turn on when:

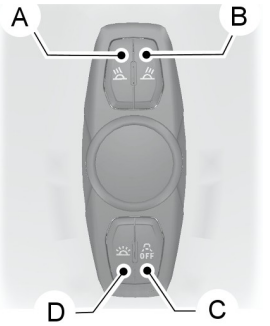
- You open any door.
- You press a remote control button.
- You press the buttons on the map lamps.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Front Interior Lamps (If Equipped)

Note: *Press the door function switch to switch off interior lights when you open any door. The indicator lamp illuminates amber when the door function is off. When the door function is off and you open a door, the courtesy and door lamps stay off. Press the switch again to switch the door function back on. The indicator lamp illuminates white when the door function is on. When the door function is on and you open a door, the courtesy and door lamps switch on.*

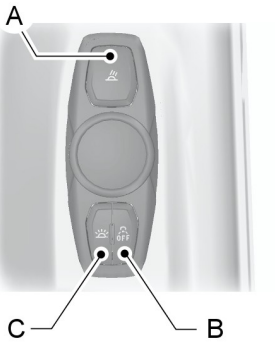
Center Mounted Lamp



E139420

A Left-hand side map lamp.
B Right-hand side map lamp.
C Door function switch.
D All lamps on switch.

Side Mounted Lamp

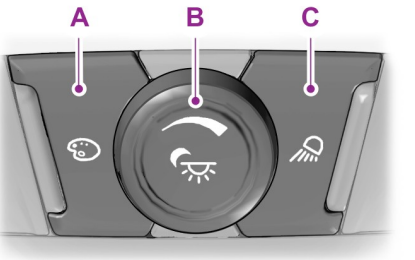


E139419

A Map lamp.
B Door function switch.
C All lamps on switch.

AMBIENT LIGHTING

The ambient lighting system illuminates the interior with a choice of several colors. The ambient lighting control is located in the overhead console.



E142456

A Color palette
B Control knob
C Search mode

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Rotate B past the first detent to switch on and adjust to the desired brightness.

Press A to cycle through the color choices.

Press C to switch on all interior lamps and the ambient lighting. Press C again to switch off the interior lamps and return the ambient lighting to the previously selected color.

The ambient lighting will switch on when the following conditions have been met:

- you switch the ignition on
- you switch the headlamps on

The ambient lighting will remain on until you switch the ignition off and one of the following conditions have been met:

- you lock your vehicle
- the accessory delay timer expires.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

POWER WINDOWS

WARNINGS

Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.

When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



E203031

Press the control to open the window.

Lift the control to close the window.

Note: *You may hear a pulsing noise when just one of the windows is open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.*

One-Touch Down (If Equipped)

Press the control fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Up (If Equipped)

Lift the control fully and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

Window Lock



E203032

Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It lights when the rear window controls lock.

Bounce-Back (If Equipped)

The window stops automatically while closing. It reverses some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature

WARNING

When you override the bounce-back feature the window will not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Proceed as follows to override this protection feature when there is a resistance, for example in winter:

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Close the window a third time to the point of resistance. You disabled the bounce-back feature and you can now close the window manually. The window travels past the point of resistance and you can close it fully.

Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible if the window does not close after the third attempt.

Resetting the Bounce-Back Feature

WARNING

The bounce-back feature remains turned off until you reset the memory.

If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

1. Lift and hold the control until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the control.
3. Lift and hold the control again for a few seconds.
4. Release the control.
5. Lift and hold the control again for a few seconds.
6. Release the control.
7. Press and hold the control until the window is fully open.
8. Lift and hold the control until the window is fully closed.
9. Release the control.
10. Open the window and then try to close it automatically.
11. Repeat the procedure if the window does not close automatically.

Accessory Delay (If Equipped)

You can use the window controls for several minutes after switching off the ignition or until opening either front door.

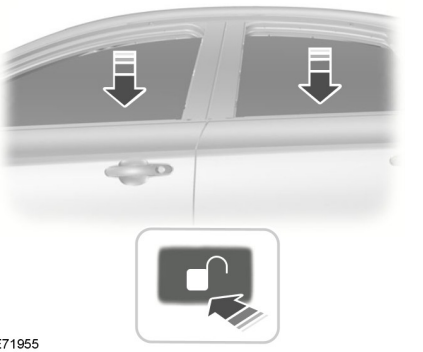
GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can also operate the power windows with the ignition off using the global opening and global closing function.

Note: *Global opening will only operate for a short period of time after you have unlocked your vehicle using the remote control.*

Note: *Global closing will only operate if you have set the memory correctly for each window. See* ***Power Windows*** *(page 68).*

Global Opening (If Equipped)



E71955

To open all the windows:

1. Press and release the remote control unlock button.
2. Press and hold the remote control unlock button for at least three seconds.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

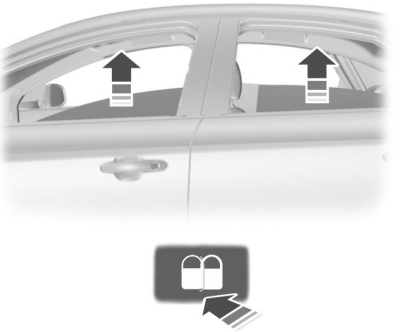
Press the lock or unlock button to stop the opening function.

Global Closing (If Equipped)

Vehicles Without Keyless Entry

WARNING

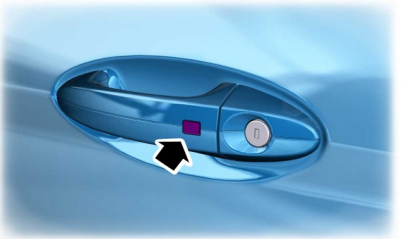
Take care when using global closing. In an emergency, press the lock or unlock button immediately to stop.



E71956

To close all the windows, press and hold the remote control lock button for at least three seconds. Press the lock or unlock button to stop the closing function. The bounce-back function is also on during global closing.

Vehicles With Keyless Entry



E87384

WARNING

Take care when using global closing. In an emergency, touch a door handle lock sensor to stop.

Note: *Global closing can be switched on using the driver's door handle. Global opening and closing can also be switched on using the buttons on the passive key.*

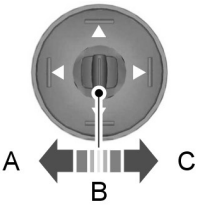
To close all the windows, press and hold the driver's door handle for at least three seconds. The bounce-back function is also on during global closing.

EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Power Exterior Mirrors

WARNING

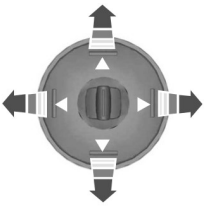
Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving.



E70846

A Left-hand mirror
B Off
C Right-hand mirror

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



E70847

Press the arrows to adjust the mirror.

Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

Power-Folding Mirrors



E72623

When you switch the ignition on, you can use the power-folding feature. Press the control to fold or unfold the mirrors.

Note: *You can operate the mirrors (mirror tilting and folding) for several minutes after switching off the ignition. When you open a door, the power-folding feature automatically turns off.*

Press the button again to stop and reverse the direction of movement.

Note: *Continuous folding and unfolding of the mirrors will cause them to overheat and shut down for a short time. This is to avoid permanent damage.*

Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)

See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 99).

Blind Spot Monitor (If Equipped)

See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 173).

INTERIOR MIRROR

WARNING

Do not adjust the mirror when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.*

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

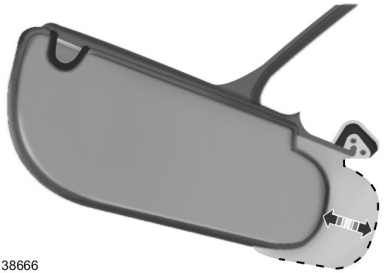
Auto-Dimming Mirror (If Equipped)

Note: *Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

The mirror will dim automatically to reduce glare when bright lights are detected from behind your vehicle. It will automatically return to normal reflection when you select reverse gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

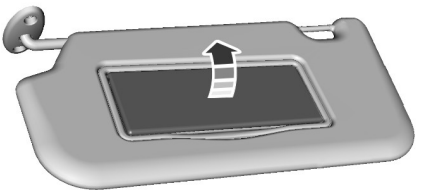
SUN VISORS



E138666

Rotate the sun visor toward the side window and extend it rearward for extra shade.

Illuminated Vanity Mirror (If Equipped)



E162197

Lift the cover to switch the lamp on.

SUN SHADES

WARNINGS

Do not let children play with the sun shade or leave them unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.

When closing the sun shade, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the sunshade.

The control is located in the overhead console.

The sun shade has a one-touch open and close feature. To stop motion during one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

Opening and Closing the Sun Shade



E138668

Fully press and release the front of the control to open the sun shade.

Fully press and release the rear of the control to close the sun shade.

Bounce-Back

The sun shade will stop automatically while closing. It will reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Sun Shade Relearning

WARNING

The bounce-back function is not active during this procedure. Make sure that there are no obstacles in the way of the moving sun shade.

Note: *You must start the relearning process within 30 seconds of switching the ignition on.*

In case the sun shade no longer opens or closes properly, follow this relearning procedure:

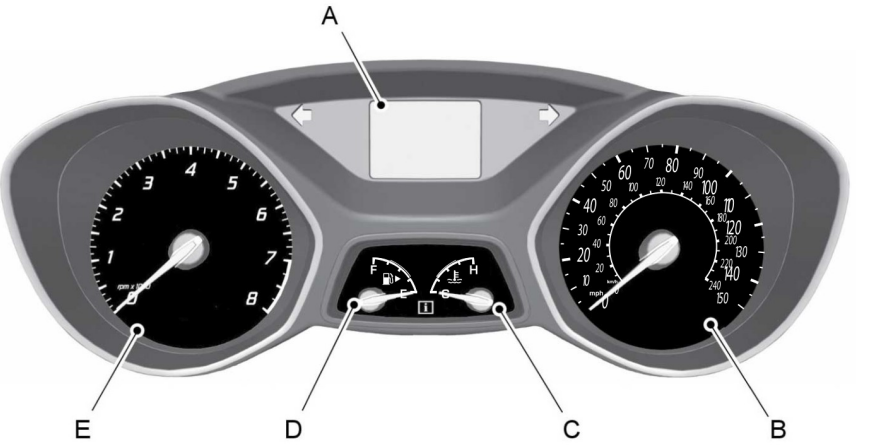
1. Press the front of the control to the first action point twice and release it within two seconds.
2. Press the rear of the control to the first action point twice and release it within two seconds.
3. Press and hold the front of the control to the first action point, until the sun shade fully opens.
4. Press and hold the rear of the control to the first action point, until the sun shade fully closes.

If you do not complete Step 2 within 15 seconds of Step 1, the relearning function end. Switch the ignition off, wait for another 30 seconds and then switch the ignition back on again. Start the procedure again from the beginning.

Confirm that relearning was successful by opening and closing the sun shade.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

GAUGES



E145825

A Information display.
B Speedometer.
C Engine coolant temperature gauge.
D Fuel gauge.
E Tachometer.

Information Display

Odometer

Records the total distance traveled by your vehicle.

Outside Air Temperature

Shows the outside air temperature.

Trip Computer

See **Trip Computer** (page 83).

Vehicle Settings and Personalization

See **General Information** (page 80).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

WARNING

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

At normal operating temperature the indicator will remain in the center section.

Note: *Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been determined and resolved.*

If the needle enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the engine, switch the ignition off and determine the cause once the engine has cooled down. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 237).

Fuel Gauge

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

Note: *Some warning indicators appear in the information display and operate the same as a warning lamp but do not illuminate when you start your vehicle.*

Anti-Lock Braking System Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You will continue to have the normal braking system (without anti-lock braking system) unless the brake system warning lamp is also illuminated. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Automatic High Beam Lamp (If Equipped)



It will illuminate when this feature is on. See **Automatic High Beam Control** (page 62).

Battery Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when driving, this indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

Blind Spot Monitor Indicator (If Equipped)



It will illuminate when you switch this feature off or in conjunction with a message. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 173). See **Information Messages** (page 83).

Brake System Warning Lamp



It will illuminate when you engage the parking brake with the ignition on.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

If it illuminates when you are driving, check that the parking brake is not engaged. If the parking brake is not engaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

WARNING

Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

Cruise Control Indicator (If Equipped)



It will illuminate when you switch this feature on. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 158).

Direction Indicator



Illuminates when the left or right direction indicator or the hazard warning flasher is turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burnt out bulb. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 243).

Door Ajar



Displays when the vehicle is on and any door is not completely closed.

Engine Oil Warning Lamp

WARNING

If it illuminates when you are driving do not continue your journey, even if the oil level is correct. Have your vehicle checked.



If it illuminates with the engine running or when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 237).

Engine Warning Lamps



Malfunction Indicator Lamp

All Vehicles

If it illuminates when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. The engine will continue to run but it may have limited power. If it flashes when you are driving, reduce the speed of your vehicle immediately. If it continues to flash, avoid heavy acceleration or deceleration. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

WARNING

Have this checked immediately.

Fasten Safety Belt Warning Lamp



It will illuminate and a chime will sound to remind you to fasten your safety belt. See **Safety Belt Minder** (page 26).

Front Airbag Warning Lamp



If the warning lamp does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the system may be disabled.

Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Front Fog Lamps Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the front fog lamps on.

Frost Warning Lamp

WARNING

Even if the temperature rises to above 39ºF (4ºC) there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.



It will illuminate when the outside air temperature is 39ºF (4ºC) or below.

Glow Plug Indicator



See **Starting a Diesel Engine** (page 124).

High Beam Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the high beam headlamps on. It will flash when you use the headlamp flasher.

Information Indicator



It will illuminate when a new message is stored in the information display. It will be red or amber in color depending on the severity of the message and will remain on until the cause of the message has been rectified. See **Information Messages** (page 83).

Liftgate Ajar



Lights when the liftgate is not completely closed.

Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

Low Washer Fluid



Lights when the windshield washer fluid is low.

Headlamp and Parking Lamp Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the headlamps or parking lamps on.

Rear Fog Lamps Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

Shift Indicator





It will illuminate to inform you that shifting to a higher or lower gear as indicated may give better fuel economy and lower CO2 emissions. It will not illuminate during periods of high acceleration, braking or when the clutch pedal is pressed.

Stability Control Off Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the system off. It will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Stability Control Warning Lamp



It will flash when the system is active. If it remains illuminated or does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a malfunction. During a malfunction the system will switch off. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

Start-Stop Active Indicator



It will illuminate when the automatic engine stop occurs. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 127). See **Information Messages** (page 83).

Start-Stop Unavailable Indicator



It will illuminate when automatic engine stop is not available. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 127). See **Information Messages** (page 83).

AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

Automatic Transmission

Sounds when you open the driver's door and do not move the transmission selector lever to position **P**.

Key Outside Car

Vehicles With Keyless System

Sounds when you close the door, the engine is running and the system does not detect a passive key inside your vehicle.

Headlamps On

Sounds when you remove the key from the ignition and open the driver's door and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

Fuel Gauge

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a gradient. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

Low Fuel Reminder

Vehicles with Trip Computer

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 75 mi (120 km) for MyKey and 50 mi (80 km) for all other keys.

Note: *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

Vehicles without Trip Computer

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the fuel gauge needle is at 1/16th.

Safety Belt Minder

WARNINGS

The safety belt minder remains in stand-by mode when the front safety belts have been fastened. It will sound if either safety belt is unfastened.

Do not sit on top of a fastened safety belt to prevent the safety belt minder from coming on. The occupant protection system will only provide optimum protection when you use the safety belt properly.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Sounds when your vehicle speed exceeds the pre-determined limit and the front safety belts are unfastened. The chime will stop after a period of time.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

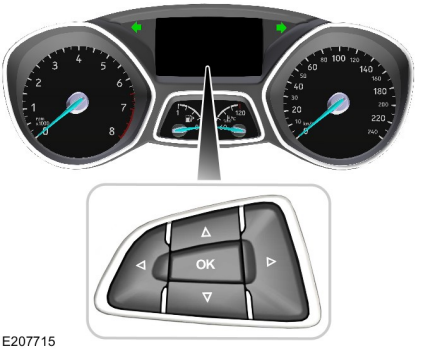
WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the information display controls on the steering wheel.

The information display shows the corresponding information.

Information Display Controls



E207715

- Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a submenu.
- Press the left arrow button to exit a submenu.
- Press the **OK** button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

Menu Structure - Information Display

You can access the menu using the information display control.

Note: *It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.*

Trip computer 1 and 2[1]	
Option to display all the values on screen.	
Speed	
Trip odometer	
Average fuel	Ford EcoMode
	Gear shifting

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Trip computer 1 and 2[1]	
	Anticipation
	Speed
	Ford EcoMode
Instant fuel	
Dist to empty	
Trip timer	
Average speed	
Option to select for navigation display.	

[1] See **Trip Computer** (page 83).

Information
Driver alert
Traffic signs
MyKey
MyKey
System check

Settings		
Driver assist	Traction ctrl	
	BLIS	
	City Stop	
	Forward alert	
	Cross traffic alrt	
	Cruise control	Adaptive
		Normal
	Driver alert	

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Settings		
	Hill start assist	
	Tyre monitor	
	Traffic signs	
	Lane keeping	
Vehicle settings	Aux heater	
	Park heater	Heater clock
		Time 1
		Time 2
		Once
		Heat now
	Alarm	Full guard
		Reduced
		Ask on exit
	Chimes	Park slot found
		Information
		Warning
	Lighting	Traffic (R/L)
		Auto highbeam
		Rain light
		Hdlamp delay
	Wipers	Rain sensing
MyKey	Create MyKey	Hold OK to create.
	Traction ctrl	Always on or user selectable.
	ESC	Always on or user selectable.
	Max speed	User selectable or off.
	Speed warning	User selectable or off.
	Volume limit	

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Settings		
	Do not disturb	Always on or user selectable.
	Clear all	Hold OK to clear all MyKeys.
Display	Language	Choose your applicable setting.
	Vehicle graphic	
	Measure unit	Choose your applicable setting.
	Temp unit	Choose your applicable setting.

System Check

All active warnings will display first if applicable. The system check menu may appear different based upon equipment options and current vehicle status. Use the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through the list. See **Information Messages** (page 83).

TRIP COMPUTER

Resetting the Trip Computer

Press and hold **OK** on the current screen to reset the respective trip, distance, time and average fuel consumption information.

All Values

Indicates all the respective trip, distance, time and average fuel consumption information.

Average Fuel Consumption

Indicates the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.

Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle will travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.

Outside Air Temperature

Shows the outside air temperature.

Trip Odometer

Registers the distance traveled of individual journeys.

Trip Timer

Registers the elapsed time of individual journeys or the total time since the function was last reset.

INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all of the messages will display or be available.*

Note: *The information display may abbreviate or shorten certain messages.*



E184814

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Press the OK button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display.

The information display will automatically remove other messages after a short period of time.

You need to confirm certain messages before you can access the menus.

Message Indicator (If Equipped)



The message indicator illuminates to supplement some messages.

The indicator will be red or amber depending on the severity of the condition and it remains on until the condition is resolved.

A system-specific symbol with a message indicator may supplement some messages.

Active City Stop

Message	Action
Active City Stop Auto braking	See **Active City Stop** (page 178).
Active City Stop Sensor blocked Clean screen	See **Active City Stop** (page 178).
Active City Stop not available	See **Active City Stop** (page 178).

Airbag

Message	Action
Airbag fault Service now	Displays when the system requires service due to a malfunction. Contact an authorized dealer.

Alarm

Message	Action
Alarm activated Check Vehicle	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry. See **Anti-Theft Alarm** (page 52).
Alarm fault Service required	Displays when the system requires service due to a malfunction. Contact an authorized dealer.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Battery and Charging System

Message	Action
Electrical system overvoltage Stop safely	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Contact an authorized dealer.
Battery low See manual	Displays to warn of a low battery condition. Turn off all unneeded electrical accessories. Contact an authorized dealer.

Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert System

Message	Action
BLIS Low visibility See manual	Displayed when the blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 173).
BLIS: right sensor fault Service required	Displayed when a fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
BLIS: left sensor fault Service required	Displayed when a fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
BLIS not available Trailer attached	Displayed when the system is not available due to trailer use. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 173).
Cross traffic Vehicle coming from right	Displayed when the system detects a vehicle. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 173).
Cross traffic Vehicle coming from left	Displayed when the system detects a vehicle. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 173).
Cross traffic Sensor blocked See manual	Displayed when the blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 173).
Cross traffic malfunction Service required	Displays when the system requires service due to a malfunction. Contact an authorized dealer.
Cross traffic disabled Trailer attached	Displayed when the system is not available due to trailer use. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 173).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Child Safety Locks

Message	Action
Child lock fault Service required	Retry to activate or deactivate the system. If the issue persists contact an authorized dealer.

Engine

Message	Action
Engine fault Service now	Engine service is required. Contact an authorized dealer.
High engine temperature Stop safely	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop the vehicle in a safe place and allow the engine to cool. If the problem persists, contact an authorized dealer. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 237).
Power reduced to lower engine temperature	Displays when the engine has reduced power in order to help reduce high coolant temperature.

Hill Start Assist

Message	Action
Hill start assist not available	Displays when hill start assist is not available. Contact an authorized dealer. See **Hill Start Assist** (page 140).

Keyless Vehicle

Message	Action
Ford KeyFree Key inside vehicle	Displays to remind you that the key is in the trunk. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 118).
Ford KeyFree No key detected	Displayed if the key is not detected by the system. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 118).
Ford KeyFree Switch ignition off Press POWER	Displayed as a reminder to turn off the vehicle. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 118).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Message	Action
Press brake to start	Displayed as a reminder to press the brake while starting the vehicle.
Ford KeyFree Key not inside car	Displayed when a valid key is not detected within the vehicle. See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 118).
Key Battery low Replace soon	Displays when the key battery is low. Change the battery as soon as possible. See **Remote Control** (page 31).

Lane Keeping Aid

Message	Action
Lane keeping sys malfunction Service required	Displays when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Lighting

Message	Action
Brake lamp Bulb fault	Displays when the brake lamp bulb has burned out. Contact an authorized dealer.
Rear fog lamp Bulb fault	Displays when the rear fog lamp bulb has burned out. Contact an authorized dealer.
Low beam Bulb fault	Displays when the low beam headlamp bulb has burned out. Contact an authorized dealer.
Headlamp fault Service required	Displays when an electrical system problem occurs with the headlamp system. Contact an authorized dealer.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Maintenance

Message	Action
Oil change required	Displays when the engine oil life is depleted and requires a change. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 237).
Brake fluid level low Service now	Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 238).

MyKey

Message	Action
MyKey active Drive Safely	Displays when MyKey is active.
MyKey Vehicle near top speed	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and the vehicle speed is approaching 80 mph (130 km/h).
MyKey Vehicle at top speed	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is reached.
MyKey Check speed Drive safely	Displays when MyKey is active.
MyKey Buckle up to unmute audio	Displays when a MyKey is in use and Belt-Minder is activated.
MyKey Park aid cannot be deactivated	Displays when a MyKey is in use and park aid is activated.
MyKey Key is already MyKey	Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.
MyKey ESC cannot be deactivated	Displays when programming a MyKey.

Occupant Protection

Message	Action
Service Beltminder	Displays when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Park Aid

Message	Action
Parking aid malfunction Service required	Displays when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer. See **Principle of Operation** (page 144).

Park Brake

Message	Action
Park brake applied	Displays when the parking brake is set, the engine is running and the vehicle is driven more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after the parking brake is released, contact an authorized dealer.

Power Steering

Message	Action
Steering loss Stop safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Steering assist malfunction Service required	The power steering system is not working. Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Steering malfunction Service now	The power steering system has detected a condition within the power steering system or passive entry or passive start system requires service. Contact an authorized dealer.

Starting System

Message	Action
Press brake to start	Displays when starting the vehicle as a reminder to apply the brake.
Cranking time exceeded	Displays when the vehicle fails to start.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Start-Stop

Message	Action
Auto StartStop Switch ignition off	Switch the ignition off before leaving your vehicle if the system has shut down the engine. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 127).
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The engine needs to be restarted, press the clutch pedal to start. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 127).
Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine	Select neutral for the system to restart the engine. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 127).
Auto StartStop Manual restart required	The system is not functioning. A manual restart is required. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 127).
Auto StartStop Shift to P, then Restart Engine	The engine needs to be restarted manually, but the transmission is not in P. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 127).
Auto StartStop Press Brake to Start Engine	The engine needs to be restarted, press the brake pedal to start. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 127).

Transmission

Message	Action
Transmission malfunction Service now	See an authorized dealer.
Transmission overheating Stop safely	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop in a safe place as soon as it's possible.
Transmission overheating Stop safely	Transmission is getting hot. Stop to let it cool or speed up.
Transmission not in Park Select P	Displays as a reminder to shift into park.
Press brake to unlock selector lever	Displays to request the operator to apply the brake as needed by the transmission.
Selector lever unlocked	Displays when the transmission shift lever is unlocked and free to select gears.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Action
Check tyre pressures	Displays when one or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 258).
Tyre monitor malfunction Service required	Displays when the tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 258).
Tyre sensors not detected Check handbook	Displayed when a tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. More information on how the system operates under these conditions is available. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 258). If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Outside Air

Keep the air intakes in front of the windshield free from obstruction (such as snow or leaves) to allow the climate control system to function effectively.

Recirculated Air

WARNING

Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to mist up. If the windows mist up, follow the settings for demisting the windshield.

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. Outside air does not enter your vehicle.

Heating

Heating performance depends on the temperature of the engine coolant.

General Information on Controlling the Interior Climate

Fully close all the windows.

Warming the Interior

Direct the air toward your feet. In cold or humid weather conditions, direct some of the air toward the windshield and the door windows.

Cooling the Interior

Direct the air toward your face.

Air Conditioning

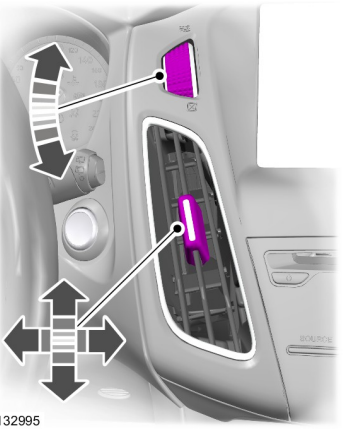
The system directs air through the evaporator for cooling. The evaporator extracts humidity from the air to help keep the windows free of mist. The system directs the resulting condensation to the outside of your vehicle, which may cause a small pool to form under your vehicle. This is normal.

Note: *The air conditioning operates only when the temperature is above 39°F (4°C).*

Note: *When you use air conditioning, your vehicle uses more fuel.*

AIR VENTS

Center Air Vents

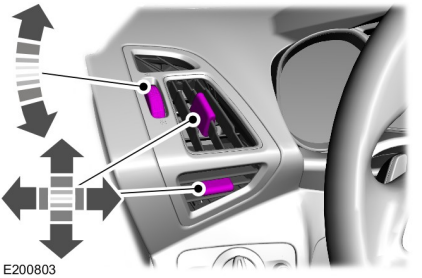


E132995

To close the air vent, turn the thumbwheel above the vent fully downward.

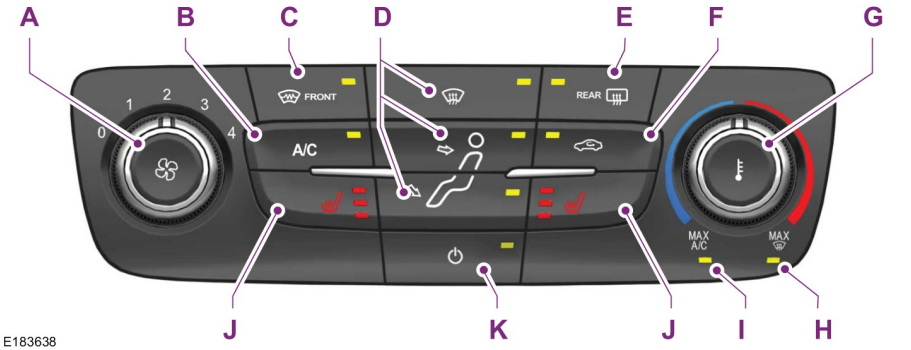
C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Side Air Vents


E200803

To close the air vent, turn the thumbwheel to the left of the vent fully downward.

MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL



E183638

A **Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

B **A/C:** Press the button to turn the air conditioning on or off. Use air conditioning with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

C **Heated windshield (if equipped):** Press the button to clear the heated windshield of thin ice and fog. See **Heated Windshield** (page 99).

D **Air distribution control:** Adjust the control to turn airflow from the windshield, instrument panel, or footwell vents on or off. You can distribute air through any combination of these vents.

E **Heated rear window:** Press the button to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 99).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

F **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

G **Temperature control:** Control the temperature of the air circulated in your vehicle.

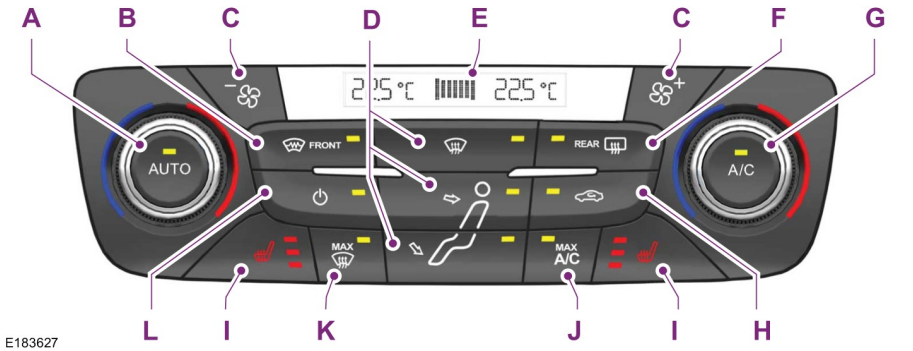
H **MAX Defrost:** Adjust the control to switch on defrost. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

I **MAX A/C:** Adjust the control for maximum cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

J **Heated seats (if equipped):** Press the button to switch the heated seats on and off. See **Heated Seats** (page 115).

K **Power:** Press the button to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL



C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

A **AUTO:** Press the button to turn on automatic operation. Select the desired temperature using the temperature control. The system adjusts fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and selects outside air or recirculated air to heat or cool the vehicle in order to maintain the desired temperature. You can also use the **AUTO** button to turn off dual zone operation by pressing and holding the button for more than two seconds.

B **Heated windshield (if equipped):** Press the button to clear the heated windshield of thin ice and fog. See **Heated Windshield** (page 99).

C **Fan speed control:** Adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

D **Air distribution control:** Adjust the control to turn airflow from the windshield, instrument panel, or footwell vents on or off. You can distribute air through any combination of these vents.

E **Climate control display:** The display shows the set temperatures and the fan speed.

F **Heated rear window:** Press the button to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 99).

G **A/C:** Press the button to turn air conditioning compressor on or off. Use air conditioning with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

Note: In certain conditions (for example, maximum defrost), the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though the air conditioning is switched off.

H **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. When you select recirculated air, the air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior (when used with **A/C**) and may reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

Note: Recirculated air may turn off automatically (or be prevented from turning on) in all airflow modes except **MAX A/C** to reduce risk of fogging. Recirculated air may also turn on and off automatically in **Panel** or **Panel and Floor** airflow modes during hot weather in order to improve cooling efficiency.

I **Heated seats (if equipped):** Press the button to switch the heated seats on and off. See **Heated Seats** (page 115).

J **MAX A/C:** Press the button to maximize cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

K **MAX Defrost:** Press the button to switch on defrost. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

L **Power:** Press the button to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.

Note: *If you press a fan speed or airflow direction button, it will turn off the automatic operation function. Press the* ***AUTO*** *button to return to auto mode.*

Note: *Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up. If the system detects high humidity inside your vehicle, recirculated air will automatically turn off. The system will not automatically turn recirculated air back on.*

Temperature Control



E183686

You can set the temperature between 60°F (15.5°C) and 85°F (29.5°C). In position LO, the system switches to permanent cooling. In position HI, the system switches to permanent heating.

Note: *If you select either position LO or HI, the system does not regulate a stable temperature.*

Mono Mode

In this mode, the temperature settings for both the driver side and passenger side are linked. If you adjust the setting using the rotary control on the driver side, the system adjusts the temperature to the same setting on the passenger side.

Switching Mono Mode Off

Select a temperature for the passenger side using the rotary control on the passenger side. Mono mode automatically switches off. The temperature on the driver side remains unchanged. You can now adjust the driver side and passenger side temperatures independently. The temperature settings for each side are shown in the display.

Note: *The maximum temperature difference between driver and passenger side is 39.2°F (4°C).*

Switching Mono Mode Back On

Press and hold the **AUTO** button. The passenger side temperature is adjusted to the driver side temperature setting.

HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

General Hints

Note: *Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.*

Note: *To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.*

Note: *Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.*

Note: *Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Note: *To improve air conditioning when starting your vehicle, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the vents.*

Manual Climate Control

Note: *To reduce fogging of the windshield during humid weather, adjust the air distribution control to the windshield air vents position.*

Automatic Climate Control

Note: *Do not adjust the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold. The system automatically adjusts to the previously stored settings. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.*

Note: *At low ambient temperatures with **AUTO** selected, the air stream is directed toward the windshield and side windows for as long as the engine remains cold.*

Note: *When the system is in **AUTO** mode, and the interior and exterior temperatures are high, the system automatically selects recirculated air to maximize cooling of the interior. When the selected air temperature is reached, the system automatically selects outside air.*

Heating the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the highest speed setting.	Press the **AUTO** button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the footwell air vents position.	

Recommended Settings for Heating

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the second speed setting.	Press the **AUTO** button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the footwell air vents position.	

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Cooling the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the temperature control to the **MAX A/C** position.	Press the **MAX A/C** button.
2	Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting.	
3	Drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the vents.	

Recommended Settings for Cooling

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the second speed setting.	Press the **AUTO** button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel air vents position.	

Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Select the windshield air vents using the air distribution buttons.	Press the windshield defrosting and defogging button.
2	Press the **A/C** button.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
3	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.	
4	Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting.	

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS

Heated Rear Window



Press the button to clear the window of thin ice and fog. It will switch off automatically after a short period of time. Make sure the engine is running before operating the heated windows.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean the inside of the rear window or to remove decals from the inside of the rear window. This may cause damage to the heated grid lines and will not be covered by your warranty.*

Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)



They will switch on automatically when you switch the heated rear window on.

Note: *Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or attempt to readjust the mirror glass if it is frozen in place. These actions could cause damage to the glass and mirrors.*

Note: *Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.*

HEATED WINDSHIELD



Press the button to clear the heated windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield will automatically turn off after a short period of time. Start the engine before you switch the heated windshield on.

AUXILIARY HEATER

Fuel Operated Parking Heater

WARNING

Do not use the fuel operated parking heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. This could result in serious personal injury or death.

The system warms the engine and the vehicle interior, it uses fuel from the vehicle fuel tank.

Used correctly the system will:

- Warm the engine and the vehicle interior.
- Keep the windows clear of ice in the event of frost and prevent condensation.
- Avoid cold starts to assist the engine to reach operating temperature sooner.

Following a heating cycle, if you do not start the engine the system will not turn on the next programmed heating cycle.

Following a heating cycle, we recommend that you drive your vehicle for at least the same period of time as the heating cycle. This prevents the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

The system will only operate if there is a minimum of 1.6 gal (7.5 L) of fuel in the vehicle fuel tank and the outside air temperature is below 59ºF (15ºC). The system will not operate if the battery charge level is low.

Note: *When the system is operating, exhaust fumes will come from under your vehicle. This is normal.*

Note: *On vehicles with manual climate control, heating the vehicle interior will depend on the heater control settings. See* ***Climate Control*** *(page 92).*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Programming the Fuel Operated Parking Heater

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 80).

Note: *The time and date on your vehicle's clock must be set correctly. See* ***General Information*** *(page 80).*

Note: *You must program the time at least 70 minutes before the time you wish to set.*

Note: *The programmed time is when you want your vehicle to be warm and ready to drive, not when the heater turns on.*

To program the fuel operated parking heater, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button.
Vehicle settings	Press the **OK** button.
Park heater	Press the **OK** button.
Select one of the following:	
Time 1	Allows you to program a heating cycle for each day of the week. These times will remain stored and the system will warm up your vehicle at the programmed times.
Time 2	Allows you to program a second heating cycle for each day of the week. These times will remain stored and the system will warm up your vehicle at the programmed times. Select to set a second heating cycle, for example different times on different days or twice on the same day.
Once	Allows you to program one heating cycle for a specific day.
Heat now	Switches the system on immediately.

Programming the Time Functions

Set the time you want your vehicle to be warm and ready to drive. Use the information display controls on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 80).

1. Select the desired days you want the system to warm up your vehicle. Highlight each desired day and press the **OK** button.
2. Highlight the time at the top of the menu and press the **OK** button. The hours will flash.
3. Set the hours using the up and down arrow buttons.
4. Press the right arrow button. The minutes will flash. Set the minutes using the up and down arrow buttons. Press the **OK** button.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Programming the Once Function

Selecting this function allows you to program one heating cycle for one specific day.

Set the time you want your vehicle to be warm and ready to drive. Use the information display controls on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 80).

1. Highlight the time at the top of the menu and press the **OK** button. The hours start to flash.
2. Set the hours using the up and down arrow buttons.
3. Press the right arrow button. Set the minutes using the up and down arrow buttons. Press the **OK** button.

Switching Programmed Functions Off

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 80).

To switch the programmed functions off, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button.
Vehicle settings	Press the **OK** button.
Park heater	Press the **OK** button.
Select one of the following:	
Time 1	Uncheck the active programmed heating cycles as required.
Time 2	Uncheck the active programmed heating cycles as required.
Once	Uncheck the active programmed heating cycles as required.

Switching the Heat Now Function On

WARNING

Do not use the fuel operated parking heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. This could result in serious personal injury or death.

Selecting this function allows you to switch the system on immediately.

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 80).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

To switch the heat now function on, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button.
Vehicle settings	Press the **OK** button.
Park heater	Press the **OK** button.
Heat now	Press the **OK** button. An X appears in the box when you switch the heater on. To switch the heater off, uncheck the option.

Switching the Heat Now Function On and Off Using the Remote Control

Selecting this function allows you to switch the system on immediately using the remote control.

Note: *The vehicle does not need to be unlocked.*

1. Press the **ON** button on the remote control to switch the system on.
2. Press the **OFF** button on the remote control to switch the system off.

Fuel Operated Heater

WARNING

Do not use the fuel operated parking heater at fuel filling stations or near sources of combustible vapors, dust or in enclosed spaces. This could result in serious personal injury or death.

The heater operates by warming the engine cooling system. It uses fuel from the vehicle fuel tank.

The system will only operate if there is a minimum of 1.6 gal (7.5 L) of fuel in the vehicle fuel tank. The system will not operate if the battery charge level is low.

The system automatically turns on and off depending on the engine coolant temperature when the outside air temperature is below 37ºF (3ºC), unless you have switched it off.

Note: *The default setting is on.*

Note: *When the system is operating, exhaust fumes will come from under your vehicle. This is normal.*

Note: *On vehicles with manual climate control, heating the vehicle interior will depend on the heater control settings.* *See **Climate Control** (page 92).*

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 80).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

To switch the auxiliary heater on and off, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button.
Vehicle settings	Press the **OK** button.
Aux heater	Press the **OK** button. An X appears in the box when the system is switched on.

CABIN AIR FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a cabin air filter, which gives you and your passengers the following benefits:

- It improves your driving comfort by reducing particle concentration.
- It improves the interior compartment cleanliness.
- It protects the climate control components from particle deposits.

You can locate the cabin air filter behind the glove box.

Note: *Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times. This prevents foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.*

Replace the filter at regular intervals.

For additional cabin air filter information, or to replace the filter, see an authorized dealer.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

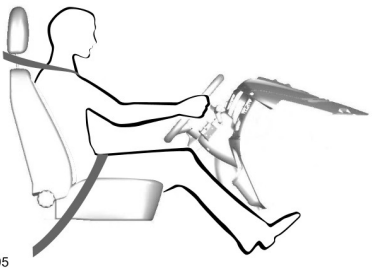
SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

WARNINGS

Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the safety belt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a crash.

Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seat backrest reclined too far, can result in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat backrest, with your feet on the floor.

Do not place objects higher than the seat backrest to reduce the risk of serious injury in the event of a crash or during heavy braking.



E68595

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, safety belt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest more than 30 degrees.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 inches (25 centimeters) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the safety belt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

HEAD RESTRAINTS

WARNINGS

Raise the rear head restraint when the rear seat is occupied by a passenger.

Do not remove the front head restraints when the front seats are in use.

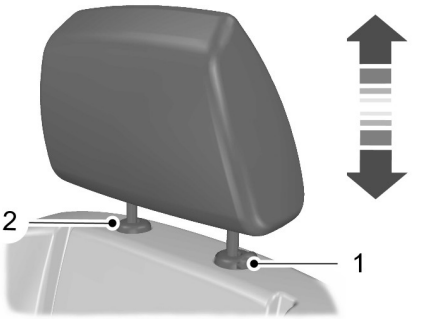
Adjusting the Head Restraints

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Removing the Head Restraints

Front head restraints



E140447

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Using a suitable implement, release the retaining clip.

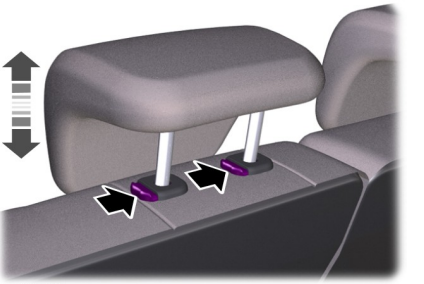
Rear outer head restraints



E135437

Press the locking button and remove the head restraint.

Rear Center Head Restraint



E135401

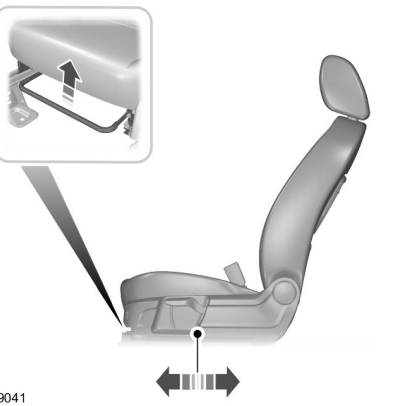
Press the locking buttons and remove the head restraint.

MANUAL SEATS

Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

WARNING

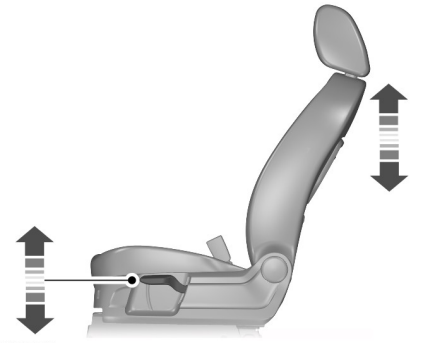
Rock the seat backward and forward after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged.



E189041

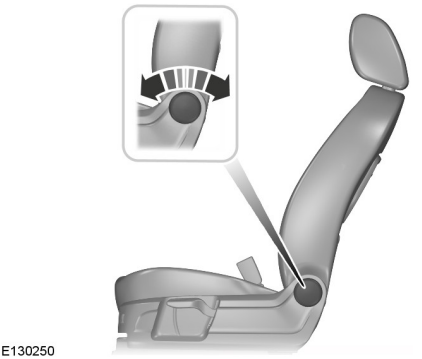
C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Adjusting the Height of the Driver Seat



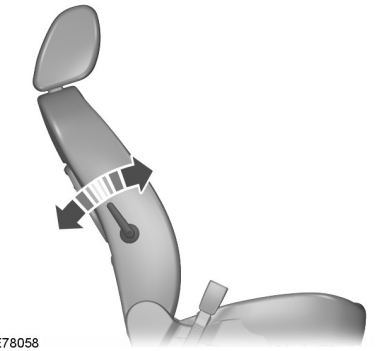
E189042

Adjusting the Angle of the Seatback



E130250

Adjusting the Lumbar Support (If Equipped)



E78058

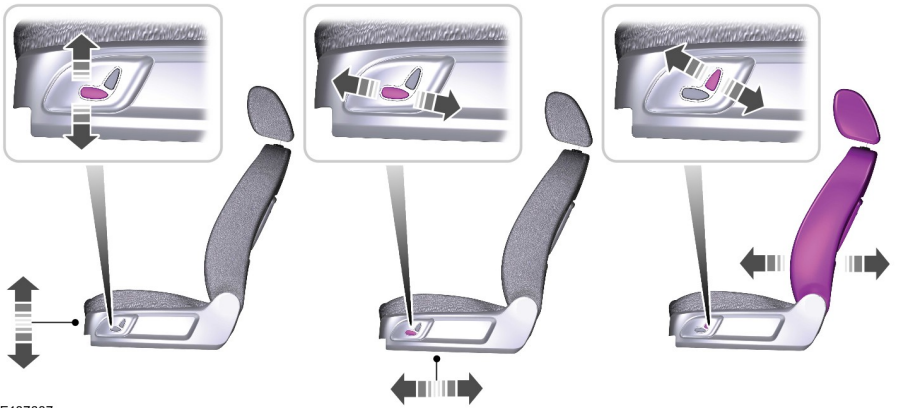
POWER SEATS

WARNINGS

Do not adjust the driver seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving. Adjusting your seatback while your vehicle is in motion may cause loss of control of your vehicle.

Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a crash.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



E187687

REAR SEATS

Second row seats - C-MAX

WARNING

Do not slide the outboard seats rearward if the center seat is folded forward. There is a risk of injury in the event of an accident or if the center seat falls back down.

Note: *Do not fold the seatback forward when the seat is fully to the rear. Slide the seat fully forward.*

Fold the center seat up and move the outboard seats rearward and slightly inboard to provide more leg and shoulder room for the rear passengers.

1. Remove the luggage cover. See **Luggage Covers** (page 185).



E78062

2. Pull the release lever on the underside of the seat.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



E78063

Note: *The complete seat moves rearward as the seat cushion is folded up.*

3. Fold the seatback until it engages.



E78064

Note: *As the seats slide rearward, they also move slightly inboard.*

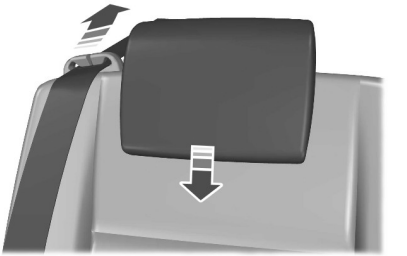
4. Pull the lever on the outer front edge of the outboard seats and push the seats rearward.

To return the seats to the forward position, pull the lever and slide the seats forward.

To return the center seat to its original position, pull the lever on the underside of the seat. Fold the center seat forward and push it back down fully until it engages.

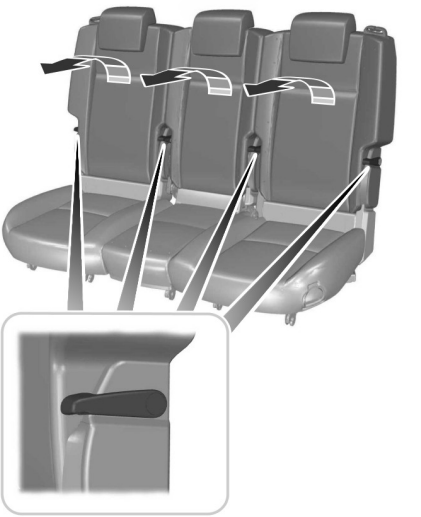
Install the luggage cover. See **Luggage Covers** (page 185).

Folding the seatbacks down



E78066

Remove the seat belts from the belt guides on the outboard seatbacks.



E135599

Pull the lever on the side of the seatback and fold the seatback forward. Push it down until it engages.

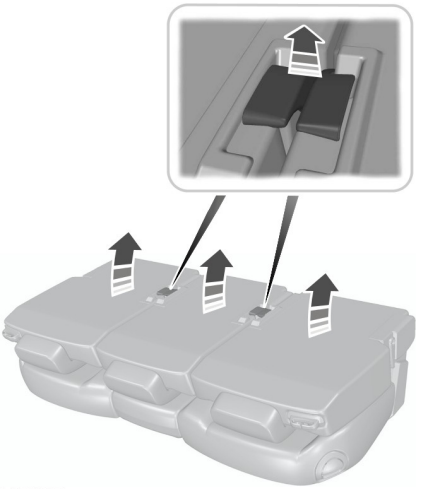
C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Folding the seatbacks up

WARNING

Make sure the seatback is fully engaged in its latch.

Note: *When in use, place the rear seat belts in the belt guides on the outboard seatbacks. See* ***Luggage Covers*** *(page 185).*



E135808

Pull the lever on the seatback and lift the seatback up.

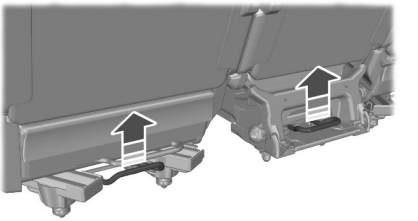
Folding the seats forward

Note: *To increase the space in the luggage compartment, fold the rear seats forward.*

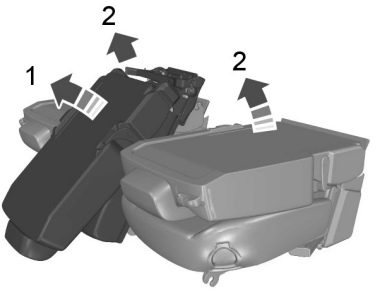
Note: *If one or both outboard seats is folded forward together with the center seat, fold the center seat forward first.*

Note: *If only the outboard seats are to be folded forward, the center seatback must be left in the upright position.*

Fold the seatback down. See **Folding the seatbacks down**.



E135956



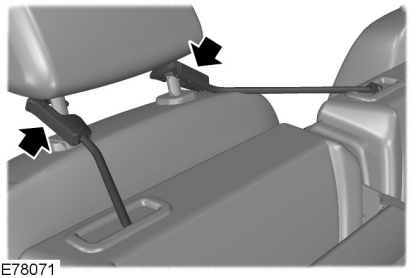
E135957

Pull the lower bar on the rear of the seats to release them from the floor and fold the seats forward.

WARNING

Always attach the retaining strap to the front head restraint when a rear seat is folded forward.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing


E78071

Pull out and attach the retaining straps to the front head restraints to hold the folded seats in the upright position.

Returning the seats to the seating position

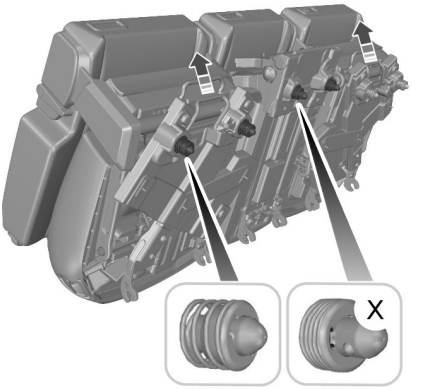
WARNINGS

To avoid injury, take care when folding the seats down.

Make sure that the locking hole on the floor is clear of sand, rock or any objects which may prevent the seat from locking.

When the retaining strap is detached from the head restraint, it will recoil back into the seat.

Note: *If one or both outboard seats are folded forward together with the center seat, fold the outboard seats back down first.*



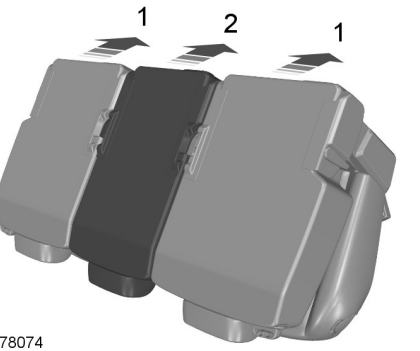
E78073

Before folding the seats back down, pull the lower bar on the rear of each seat and check that the latches are in the extended position.

Detach the retaining straps.

WARNING

Make sure the seat is securely locked by pushing forward and rearward on the top of the seatback or by trying to pull up the edge of the cushion.



E78074

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Fold the seats back down until they engage.

Raise the seatbacks. See **Folding the seatbacks up**.

Install the rear seatbelts in the belt guides on the outboard seatbacks.

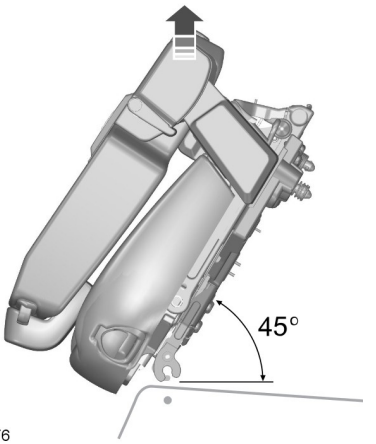
Removing the seats

WARNING

The rear seats are heavy. To avoid injury, take care when lifting the seats.

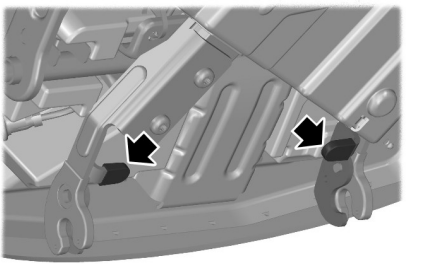
Note: *To increase the space in the luggage compartment, the rear seats can be removed completely.*

1. Fold the seat forward. See **Folding the seats forward**.



E78076

2. Fold the seat up to an angle to the floor.



E78075

3. Push down both red levers to open the locking mechanism.
4. Remove the seat.

Installing the seats

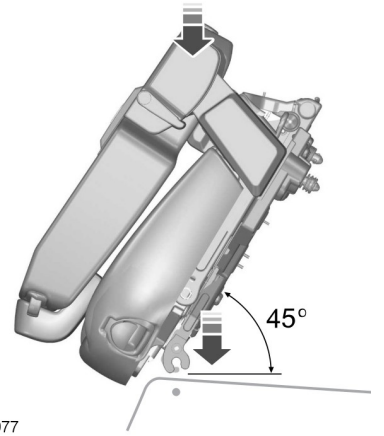
WARNINGS

To avoid injury, take care when folding the seats down.

Make sure that the locking hole on the floor is clear of sand, rock or any objects which may prevent the seat from locking.

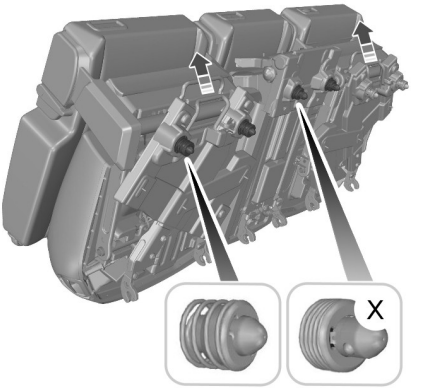
Note: *Make sure the locking mechanism is fully open.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



E78077

Holding the seat at an angle to the floor, lower the seat onto the retaining bar.



E78073

Before folding the seats back down, pull the lower bar on the rear of each seat and check that the latches are in the extended position.

Push the seat back down until it engages.

Second row seats - Grand C-MAX

Folding the seatback forward or backward



E135422

Lift the lever and push the seatback.

Stowing the center seat

WARNING

Make sure the center seatback is in the upright position when the vehicle is moving.



E129302

1. Pull the lever on the back of the center seat and push the seatback down until it locks.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



E129298

2. Pull the strap and lift the right-hand seat cushion.



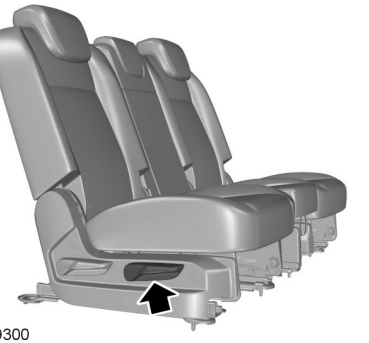
E135801

3. Pull the strap to fold the center seat over into the right-hand seat base.
4. Fold the right-hand seat cushion down.

Note: *You can use the space between the outboard seats to access the third row seats when the center seat has been stowed.*

Moving the seats backward and forward

Note: *If the center seat is not stowed, it will move with the right-hand seat.*



E129300

Folding the seats forward

WARNING

Do not use the third row seats when the second row seats have been folded forward.

Note: *The center seat must be stowed into the right-hand seat base before the right-hand seat is folded.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



E129298

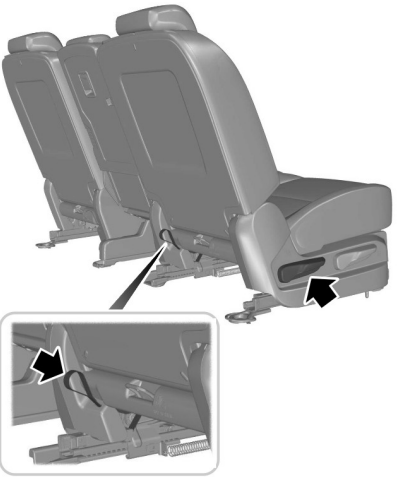
1. Pull the strap and lift the cushion.
2. Lift the lever and push the seatback down until it locks.

Easy entry position

WARNING

Do not use the seat when it is in the easy entry position.

Note: *You can move the outboard seats forwards to allow access to the third row seats.*



E129296

1. Either pull the lever on the side of the seat cushion or pull the strap at the rear of the seat. The seat will move forward.
2. Fold the seatback forward.

Third row seats - Grand C-MAX

Note: *Remove the luggage cover. See* ***Luggage Covers*** *(page 185).*

Note: *When not in use, place the seat belts in the clips on the outboard trim. See* ***Luggage Covers*** *(page 185).*

Folding the seats flat

Note: *When transporting a load with the seats folded flat, fold the carpet forward to cover the folded seatback.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



E129301

Pull the strap at the top of the seatback and fold the seatback forward.

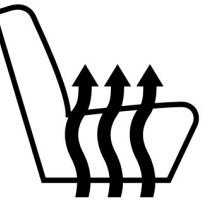
HEATED SEATS

WARNING

People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the heated seat. The heated seat may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the heated seat to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This may damage the heating element which may cause the heated seat to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.
- Operate the heated seats unless the engine is running. Doing so can cause the battery to lose charge.



E146941

Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. Warmer settings are indicated by more indicator lights.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

12 Volt DC Power Point

WARNING

Do not plug electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the lighter can cause damage not covered by your warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Note: *When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 20 amps. After you switch the ignition off, the power supply works only for a maximum of 30 minutes.*

Note: *Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This damages the outlet and can blow the fuse.*

Note: *Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug.*

Note: *Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watt or a fuse may blow.*

Note: *Do not use the power point for operating a cigar lighter element.*

Note: *Incorrect use of the power point can cause damage not covered by your warranty.*

Note: *Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.*

Run the engine for full capacity use of the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

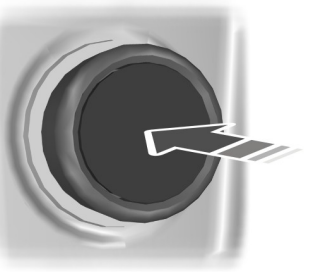
- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when your engine is not running.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when your vehicle is in park (P) for extended periods.

Location

Power points may be found:

- On the center console.
- In the center console.
- In the cargo area (Wagons only).

CIGAR LIGHTER



E103382

Press the element in to use the cigar lighter. It will pop out automatically.

Note: *Do not hold the cigar lighter element pressed in.*

Note: *If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off, switch the ignition on.*

Note: *If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may lose charge.*

Note: *When you switch the ignition on, you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

CUP HOLDERS

WARNINGS

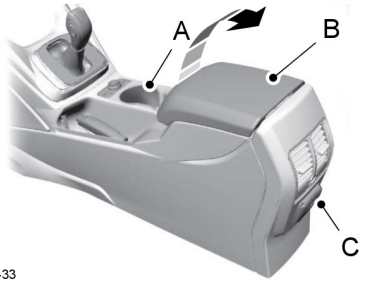
Do not place hot drinks in the cup holders when your vehicle is moving.

Make sure that cups placed in the holders do not obstruct your vision while driving.

CENTER CONSOLE

Stow items in the cup holder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes, including hot drinks which may spill.

Available console features include:



E142433

A Cup holder.

B Storage compartment with auxiliary power point, auxiliary input jack, USB port and media hub.

C Auxiliary power point.

OVERHEAD CONSOLE



E131605

Press near the rear edge of the door to open it.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS

Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.

If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 miles (8 kilometers) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

IGNITION SWITCH



E72128

Note: *Make sure the key is clean before inserting it into any lock cylinder.*

0(off) - The ignition is off.

Note: *When you switch the ignition off and leave your vehicle, do not leave your key in the ignition. This could cause your vehicle battery to lose charge.*

I (accessory) - Allows the electrical accessories such as the radio to operate while the engine is not running.

Note: *Do not leave the ignition key in this position for too long to avoid your vehicle battery losing charge.*

II (on) - All electrical circuits operational. Warning lamps and indicators are illuminated.

III (start) - cranks the engine. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.

PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH

WARNING

Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Note: *The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.*

Note: *The ignition will automatically turn off if your vehicle is left unattended. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge.*

Note: *A valid passive key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.*

Switching the Ignition On to Accessory Mode



E142555

Press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal. It is on the instrument panel near the steering wheel. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Press the push button ignition switch again without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal to switch the ignition off.

Starting Your Vehicle

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Briefly press the push button ignition switch.

Note: *Releasing the clutch pedal during engine starting stops the engine from cranking.*

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Fully depress the brake pedal.
3. Briefly press the push button ignition switch.

Note: *Releasing the brake pedal during engine starting stops the engine from cranking.*

Vehicles with a Diesel Engine

Note: *Engine cranking will not start until the engine glow plug warning lamp turns off. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.*

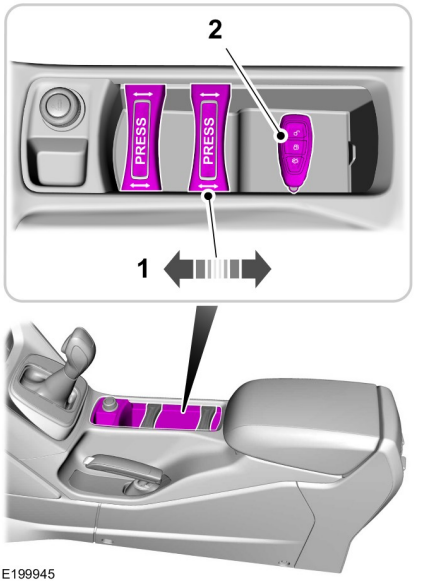
Failure to Start

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start your vehicle, do the following:

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



E199945

1. Press and slide the centre console divider to access the back-up slot.
2. Place the passive key flat on the symbol at the bottom of the floor console storage compartment.
3. With the passive key in this position, you can use the push button ignition switch to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

If the engine does not crank when the clutch pedal has been fully depressed and the push button ignition switch is pressed, do the following:

1. Fully depress both the clutch and brake pedals.
2. Press the push button ignition switch until the engine starts.

Note: *Releasing the clutch pedal during engine starting stops the engine from cranking. A message may appear in the information display.*

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

Briefly press the push button ignition switch.

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: *The ignition, all electrical circuits and all warning lamps and indicators will be turned off.*

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

WARNING

Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not lock, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off, some electrical circuits, including air bags, warning lamps and indicators may also be off. If the ignition was turned off accidentally, you can shift into neutral (N) and re-start the engine.

1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. When your vehicle has stopped, shift into park (P) and switch the ignition off.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart your vehicle within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 10 seconds of switching your vehicle off, press the brake pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start your vehicle if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Once your vehicle starts, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door while your vehicle is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

You cannot start your vehicle if the system does not detect a valid passive key within 10 seconds.

STEERING WHEEL LOCK - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Your vehicle has an electronically controlled steering wheel lock that operates automatically.

The system will lock the steering wheel after a short period of time once you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside your vehicle, or when you lock your vehicle.

Note: *The system will not lock the steering wheel when the ignition is on or while your vehicle is moving.*

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

Switch the ignition on to unlock the steering wheel.

Note: *You may have to rotate the steering wheel slightly to assist unlocking.*

STEERING WHEEL LOCK - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

WARNING

Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

To lock the steering wheel:

1. Remove the key from the ignition switch.
2. Rotate the steering wheel slightly to engage the lock.

To unlock the steering wheel:

1. Insert the key in the ignition switch.
2. Turn the key to position **I**.

Note: *You may need to rotate the steering wheel slightly to assist unlocking if there is a steering wheel load applied.*

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Note: *You can crank the engine for a total of 60 seconds without the engine starting before the starting system temporarily disables. The 60 seconds does not have to be all at once. For example, if you crank the engine three times for 20 seconds each time, without the engine starting, you reached the 60-second time limit. A message appears in the information display alerting you that you exceeded the cranking time. You cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes. After 15 minutes, you are limited to a 15-second engine cranking time. You need to wait 60 minutes before you can crank the engine for 60 seconds again.*

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure all occupants have fastened their safety belts.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P) or neutral.
- Switch the ignition key to position **II**. If your vehicle is equipped with a keyless ignition, see the following instructions.

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

1. Fully press the brake pedal. If your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, fully press the clutch pedal.
2. Turn the key to position **III** to start the engine.

Note: *The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.*

Note: *If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, wait for a short period and try again.*

Vehicles with Keyless Start

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 118).

Failure to Start

If you cannot start the engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow this procedure:

1. If your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission, fully press the brake pedal. If your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, fully press the clutch pedal and apply the handbrake.
2. Move the transmission selector lever to position P or N.
3. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
4. Start the engine.

Automatic Shutdown

This feature automatically shuts down your vehicle if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power. Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down in order to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.

Automatic Shutdown Override

Note: *You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown feature. When you switch it off temporarily, it turns on at the next ignition cycle.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

You can stop the shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- You can reset the timer by interacting with your vehicle (such as pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal).
- You can temporarily switch off the shutdown feature any time the ignition is on (for the current ignition cycle only). Use the information display to do so. See **Information Displays** (page 80).
- During the countdown before shutdown, you are prompted to press OK or RESET (depending on your type of information display) to temporarily switch the feature off (for the current ignition cycle only).

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. For vehicles with automatic transmission, shift into park (P). For vehicles with manual transmission, shift into neutral.
2. Turn the key to position **0**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Vehicles with Keyless Start

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 118).

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

WARNING

Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not lock, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off, some electrical circuits, including air bags, warning lamps and indicators may also be off. If the ignition was turned off accidentally, you can shift into neutral (N) and re-start the engine.

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. When your vehicle has stopped, shift into park (P) or neutral and switch the ignition off.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Vehicles with Keyless Start

See **Push Button Ignition Switch** (page 118).

Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes

WARNING

If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes. Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 1 in (3 cm).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE

Cold or Hot Engine



1. Switch the ignition on and wait until the glow plug indicator goes off.
2. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
3. Start the engine.

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

Note: *Releasing the clutch pedal while the engine is starting will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.*

Note: *When the temperature is below 5ºF (-15ºC), you may need to crank the engine for up to 10 seconds.*

Note: *You can only operate the starter for a limited period of time.*

Note: *After a limited number of attempts to start your engine, the system will not allow you to try again until a period of time has elapsed, for example 30 minutes.*

Failure to Start

If the engine does not crank when the clutch pedal has been fully depressed and the ignition key is turned to position **III**.

1. Fully depress the clutch and brake pedals.
2. Turn the key to position **III** until the engine has started.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

The filter forms part of the emissions reduction system on your vehicle. It filters harmful diesel particulates (soot) from the exhaust gas.

Regeneration

WARNING

Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

Note: *Avoid running out of fuel.*

Note: *During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to the high temperatures reached during regeneration and is normal.*

Note: *Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.*

Note: *After you have switched your engine off the fans may continue to run for a short period of time.*

The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain its correct function. Your vehicle will carry out this process automatically.

If your journeys meet one of the following conditions:

- You drive only short distances.
- You frequently switch the ignition on and off.
- Your journeys contain a high level of acceleration and deceleration.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

You must carry out occasional trips with the following conditions to assist the regeneration process:

- Drive your vehicle in more favorable conditions, which you will find at higher vehicle speeds in normal driving, on a main road or freeway for a minimum of 20 minutes. This drive may include short stops that will not affect the regeneration process.
- Avoid prolonged idling and always observe speed limits and road conditions.
- Do not switch the ignition off.
- Select a suitable gear to ideally maintain engine speed between 1500 and 3000 RPM.

SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

Vehicles With a Turbocharger

WARNING

Do not switch the engine off when it is running at high speed. If you do, the turbocharger will continue running after the engine oil pressure has dropped to zero. This will lead to premature turbocharger bearing wear.

Release the accelerator pedal. Wait until the engine has reached idle speed and then switch it off.

ENGINE BLOCK HEATER

WARNINGS

Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.

Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

Note: *The heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0ºF (-18ºC).*

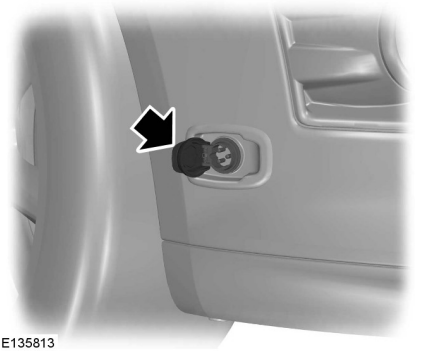
The heater acts as a starting aid by warming the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to respond quickly. The equipment includes a heater element (installed in the engine block) and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 220-240 volt AC electrical source.

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use an extension cord suitable for use outdoors and in cold temperatures. It should be clearly marked that it is suitable for use with outdoor appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire.
- Make sure your vehicle is parked in a clean area, clear of combustibles.
- Make sure the heater, heater cord and extension cord are firmly connected.
- Check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.
- Make sure the system is unplugged and properly stowed before starting and driving your vehicle.
- Make sure the heater system is checked for proper operation before winter.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Using the Engine Block Heater



E135813

The engine block heater plug is located in the front bumper. Open the hinged, circular door and make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

AUTO-START-STOP

The system reduces fuel consumption and CO2 emissions by shutting down the engine when your vehicle is idling, for example at traffic lights.

WARNINGS

If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, move the transmission selector lever to position P before leaving your vehicle.

The engine may restart automatically if required by the system.

Switch the ignition off before opening the hood or carrying out any maintenance.

Always switch the ignition off before leaving your vehicle, as the system may have shut down the engine but the ignition will still be live.

Note: *The auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green when the engine shuts down. See* ***Warning Lamps and Indicators*** *(page 75). It flashes amber with a message when the driver needs to shift to neutral or press a pedal. See* ***Information Messages*** *(page 83). If it illuminates grey the system is not available.*



Using Auto-Start-Stop Manual Transmission

To Stop the Engine

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch and accelerator pedal.

To Re-Start the Engine

Press the clutch pedal.

Note: *To obtain maximum benefit from the system, move the transmission lever to neutral and release the clutch pedal during any stop of longer than three seconds.*

Note: *Start-stop also comes with stall recovery. If you fully depress the clutch pedal after stalling the engine, the engine automatically restarts.*

Using Auto-Start-Stop Automatic Transmission

To Stop the Engine

1. Stop your vehicle in drive (D).
2. Release the accelerator pedal.
3. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.

Note: *The engine will also shut down if the gearshift lever is in park (P) or neutral (N) regardless of brake pedal position.*

To Re-Start the Engine

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

Limitations of Use

The system may not shut down the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- Low engine operating temperature.
- To maintain the interior climate.
- The battery charge level is low.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- Opening the driver door when in motion.
- When the driver safety belt is unfastened.
- The heated windshield is on.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

- During regeneration of the diesel particulate filter.
- Transmission is in Sport or Manual modes (automatic transmission only).

The system may automatically restart the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- To maintain the interior climate, for example air conditioning.
- The battery charge level is low.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The heated windshield is turned on.
- When the driver safety belt is unfastened (automatic transmission only).
- The driver door is opened (automatic transmission only).
- Transmission is shifted to Sport or Manual modes (automatic transmission only).

Switching the System On and Off



When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on.

To switch the system off, press the switch and the word OFF illuminates. Press again to switch the system back on. The system only switches off for the current ignition cycle.

Note: *If the system detects a malfunction, it turns off. The OFF lamp on the switch illuminates continuously. If this remains on after an ignition cycle, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.*

Note: *The system may not function if you leave electrical equipment connected with the ignition off.*

Note: *For vehicles with auto-start-stop, the battery requirement is different. Replace it with one of exactly the same specification as the original.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

WARNINGS

Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door (Easy Fuel capless fuel system), do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Fuel ethanol and gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking “Antabuse” or other forms of disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors, or skin contact could cause an adverse reaction. In sensitive individuals, serious personal injury or sickness may result. If fuel is splashed on the skin, promptly wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience an adverse reaction.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

FUEL QUALITY - GASOLINE

WARNINGS

Do not mix gasoline with oil, diesel or other liquids. This could cause a chemical reaction.

Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds (e.g. manganese-based). They could damage the emission system.

Note: *We recommend that you use only high quality fuel.*

Note: *We do not recommend the use of additional additives or other engine treatments for normal vehicle use.*

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.

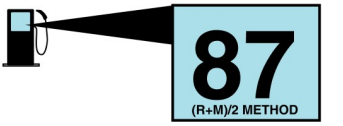
Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

Long-Term Storage

Most gasoline contains ethanol. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain ethanol if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months. Alternatively, we recommend that you seek advice from an authorized dealer.

FUEL QUALITY - E85

Choosing the Right Fuel



E161513

Use only regular unleaded gasoline with a minimum pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87, or regular unleaded gasoline blended with a maximum of 85% ethanol (E85). Flex fuel vehicles have a yellow bezel on the fuel tank filler pipe opening. Some fuel stations offer fuels posted as regular unleaded gasoline with an octane rating below 87, particularly in high altitude areas. Fuels with octane levels below 87 are not recommended.

Do not use any fuel other than those recommended because they could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: *Use of any fuel other than those recommended can impair the emission control system and cause a loss of vehicle performance.*

Do not use:

- Diesel fuel.
- Fuels containing kerosene or paraffin.
- Fuels containing more than 85% ethanol or E100 fuel.
- Fuels containing methanol.
- Fuels containing metallic-based additives, including manganese-based compounds.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

- Fuels containing the octane booster additive, methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT).
- Leaded fuel (using leaded fuel is prohibited by law).

The use of fuels with metallic compounds such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (commonly known as MMT), which is a manganese-based fuel additive, will impair engine performance and affect the emission control system.

Do not be concerned if the engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if it knocks heavily under most driving conditions while you are using fuel with the recommended octane rating, contact an authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

FUEL QUALITY - DIESEL

WARNINGS

Do not mix diesel with oil, gasoline or other liquids. This could cause a chemical reaction.

Do not add kerosene, paraffin or gasoline to diesel. This could cause damage to the fuel system.

Use diesel that meets the specification defined by EN 590 or the relevant national specification.

Note: *We recommend that you use only high quality fuel.*

Note: *We do not recommend the use of additional additives or other engine treatments for normal vehicle use.*

Note: *We do not recommend the use of additional additives to prevent fuel waxing.*

Long-Term Storage

Most diesel fuels contain biodiesel. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain biodiesel if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months. Alternatively, we recommend that you seek advice from your dealer.

FUEL FILLER FUNNEL LOCATION

The fuel filler funnel is located in the spare wheel storage tray.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Running out of fuel can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If your vehicle runs out of fuel:

- Add a minimum of 1.1 gal (5 L) of fuel to restart the engine. If your vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep slope, more fuel may be required.
- You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container

WARNINGS

Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel system filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.

Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the plastic funnel included with your vehicle. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 131).

Note: *Do not use aftermarket funnels as they will not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.*

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel tank filler door until it engages and remove the fuel tank filler cap.

Note: *Capless fuel systems do not have a fuel tank filler cap.*

2. Fully insert the plastic funnel into the fuel tank filler pipe opening.


E157452

3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the plastic funnel from the fuel tank filler pipe opening.
5. Replace the fuel tank filler cap and close the fuel tank filler door.
6. Clean the plastic funnel and place it back in your vehicle or properly dispose of it.

Note: *Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.*

CATALYTIC CONVERTER

WARNING

Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during use, and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

Driving with a Catalytic Converter

WARNINGS

Avoid running out of fuel.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

WARNINGS

Do not crank the engine for long periods.

Do not run the engine when a spark plug lead is disconnected.

Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 204).

Do not switch the ignition off when driving.

REFUELING

WARNINGS

Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with the incorrect fuel. This may cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked immediately.

When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

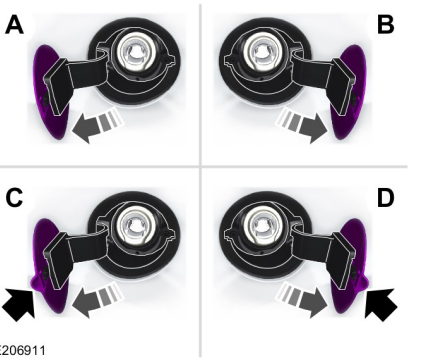
WARNINGS

If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the fuel tank filler door briefly from a distance not less than 8 in (20 cm).

Wait at least 10 seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

Stop refueling after the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the second time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

Note: *Your vehicle does not have a fuel filler cap.*



A Type 1: Left hand side - press the fuel tank filler door to open it.

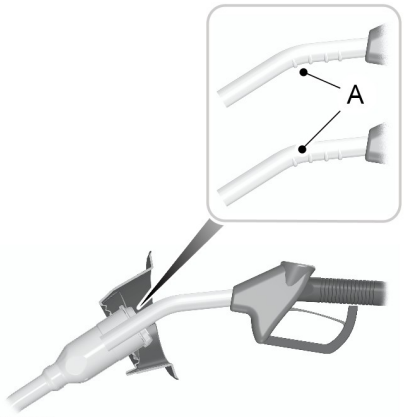
B Type 1: Right hand side - press the fuel tank filler door to open it.

C Type 2: Left hand side - pull the fuel tank filler door to open it.

D Type 2: Right hand side - pull the fuel tank filler door to open it.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

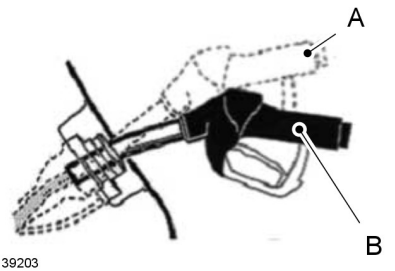
1. Fully open the fuel tank filler door until it engages.



E139202

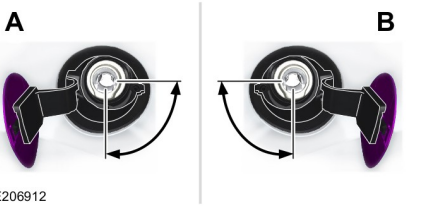
Note: *When you insert the correct size fuel pump nozzle a spring loaded inhibitor will open.*

2. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel tank filler pipe opening.



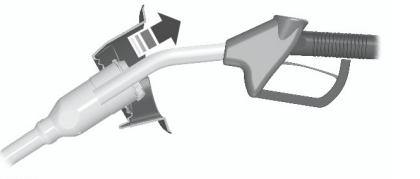
E139203

3. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A may affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



E206912

4. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



E119081

5. Slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and then slowly remove it.

FUEL CONSUMPTION

We derive CO2 and fuel consumption figures in laboratory tests according to Regulation (EC) 715/2007 or CR (EC) 692/2008 and subsequent amendments.

They are intended as a comparison between makes and models of vehicles. They are not intended to represent the real world fuel consumption you may get from your vehicle.

Real world fuel consumption is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, the accessories fitted, payload and towing.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

The advertised capacity is the indicated capacity and the empty reserve combined. Indicated capacity is the difference in the amount of fuel in the fuel tank and when the fuel gauge indicates empty. Empty reserve is the amount of fuel in the fuel tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty.

Note: *The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity due to the empty reserve still present in the fuel tank.*

Filling the Fuel Tank

For consistent results when refueling:

- Switch the ignition off.
- Allow no more than two automatic shut-offs when refueling.

Results are most accurate when the refueling method is consistent.

Calculating Fuel Economy

Do not measure fuel economy during the first 1,000 mi (1,600 km) of driving (this is the engine break-in period). A more accurate measurement is obtained after 2,500 mi (4,000 km). Also, fuel expense, frequency of fill ups or fuel gauge readings are not accurate ways to measure fuel economy.

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading.
2. Each time you fill the fuel tank, record the amount of fuel added.
3. After at least three fill ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.
4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.
5. Calculate fuel economy by dividing miles traveled by gallons used (For Metric: Multiply liters used by 100, then divide by kilometers traveled).

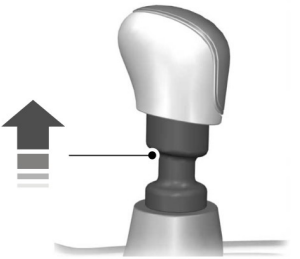
Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or freeway). This provides an accurate estimate of your vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Additionally, keeping records during summer and winter show how temperature impacts fuel economy. In general, your vehicle will use more fuel in cold temperatures.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

MANUAL TRANSMISSION

Selecting Reverse Gear

Do not engage reverse gear when your vehicle is moving. This can cause damage to the transmission.



E99067

Raise the collar when you select reverse gear.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WARNINGS

Always set the parking brake fully and make sure you shift the gearshift lever to park (P). Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than three seconds will limit engine rpm, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

Selector Lever Positions



E142628

P	Park
R	Reverse
N	Neutral
D	Drive
S	Sport mode

WARNING

Apply the brakes before shifting the gearshift lever to a forward or reverse gear. Keep the brakes applied until you are ready to move off.

Press the button on the front of the gearshift lever to shift to each position.

The gearshift lever position will be shown in the instrument cluster display.

Park (P)

WARNINGS

Shift the gearshift lever to park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

Apply the parking brake and shift the gearshift lever to park (P) before leaving your vehicle. Make sure that the gearshift lever is latched in position.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

In this position, power is not transmitted to the driven wheels and the transmission is locked. You can start the engine with the gearshift lever in this position.

Note: *A warning tone sounds if you open the driver door and you have not shifted the gearshift lever to park (P).*

Reverse (R)

WARNINGS

Shift the gearshift lever to reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idle speed.

Always come to a complete stop before shifting the gearshift lever out of reverse (R).

Shift the gearshift lever to reverse (R) to allow your vehicle to move backward.

Neutral (N)

In this position, power is not transmitted to the driven wheels but the transmission is not locked. You can start the engine with the gearshift lever in this position.

Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy and smoothness. Shift the gearshift lever to drive (D) to allow your vehicle to move forward and shift automatically through the forward gears.

The transmission will shift to the appropriate gear for optimum performance based on ambient temperature, road gradient, vehicle load and your input.

Sport Mode (S)

Switch on sport mode by shifting the gearshift lever to sport (S).

Emergency Park Position Release Lever

WARNINGS

Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.

This procedure requires you to shift the gearshift lever out of park (P) causing your vehicle to roll. Make sure you fully set the parking brake before attempting to release the gearshift lever.

If you release the parking brake and the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working correctly. The system has detected a fault that requires service.

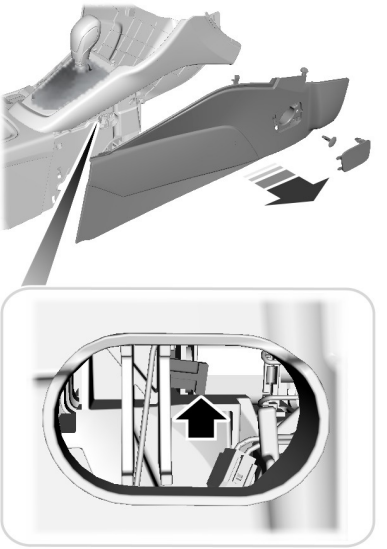
Note: *For some markets this feature will be disabled.*

Your vehicle is equipped with a brake-shift interlock feature that prevents moving the gearshift lever from park (P) when the ignition is in the on position and the brake pedal is not pressed.

If you cannot move the gearshift lever out of park (P) position with the ignition in the on position and the brake pedal pressed, a malfunction may have occurred. It is possible that a fuse has blown or your vehicle's brake lamps are not operating properly. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 207).

If the fuse is not blown and the brake lamps are working properly, the following procedure will allow you to move the gearshift lever from park (P):

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



E162619

1. Remove the side panel on the right side of the gearshift lever.
2. Locate the access hole.
3. Insert the screwdriver (or similar tool) into the access hole and press the lever forward while pulling the gearshift lever out of the park (P) position and into the neutral (N) position.
4. Remove the tool and reinstall the panel.
5. Start your vehicle and release the parking brake.

Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning

This feature may increase durability and provide consistent shift feel over the life of your vehicle. A new vehicle or transmission may have firm shifts, soft shifts or both. This operation is considered normal and does not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process fully updates transmission operation.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

Note: *Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.*

Note: *Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.*

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern.

Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out. If your vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear. See* ***Cleaning the Alloy Wheels*** *(page 252).*

Note: *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this the hazard warning flashers may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.*

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Shift the transmission to park (P) (automatic transmission) or to a low gear (manual transmission), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal and the area around it for any items or debris that may be obstructing its movement. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the dealer for service.

Brake Assist

Brake assist detects when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. Brake assist can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control and vehicle stability during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

Note: *When the system is operating, the brake pedal will pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.*

The anti-lock braking system will not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

PARKING BRAKE

Vehicles With Automatic Transmission

WARNING

Always set the parking brake fully and leave your vehicle with the transmission selector lever in position P.

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill move the transmission selector lever to position P and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.*

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill move the transmission selector lever to position P and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.*

Vehicles With Manual Transmission

WARNING

Always set the parking brake fully.

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.*

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.*

All Vehicles

Note: *Do not press the release button while pulling the lever up.*

To apply the parking brake:

1. Press the foot brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the parking brake lever up to its fullest extent.

To release the parking brake:

1. Press the brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the lever up slightly.
3. Press the release button and push the lever down.

HILL START ASSIST

WARNINGS

The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake. Failure to leave your vehicle securely parked may lead to a crash or injury. See **Parking Brake** (page 140).

You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system will turn off if a malfunction is apparent or if you rev the engine excessively. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, your vehicle remains stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The system releases the brakes automatically once the engine has

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

developed sufficient drive to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

Note: *The system only functions when you bring your vehicle to a complete standstill in an uphill gear (for example, drive when facing uphill or reverse when facing downhill).*

Note: *There is no warning light to indicate the system is either on or off.*

Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed.
2. If the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope, the system activates automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle remains on the slope without rolling away for about two to three seconds. This hold time automatically extends if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The system releases the brakes automatically.

Note: *When you remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the pedal again when the system is active, you will experience significantly reduced brake pedal travel. This is normal.*

Switching the System On and Off

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

You cannot turn the system on or off. When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

USING TRACTION CONTROL

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

Switching the System Off and On Using the Information Display Controls

Your vehicle comes with this feature already enabled. If required, you can switch this feature off using the information display controls.

When you switch the system off, stability control remains fully active.

Switching the System Off Using a Switch (If Equipped)

The switch is located in the instrument panel.

Press the switch. You will see a message in conjunction with an illuminated icon in the display. Press the switch again to return the system to normal mode.

When you switch the system off, stability control remains fully active.

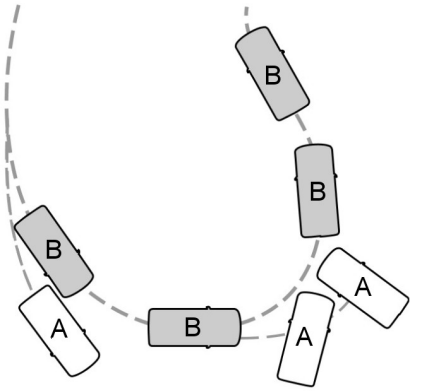
C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Electronic Stability Program

WARNING

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to do so could result in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.



E72903

A Without ESC
B With ESC

The system supports stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path. The system performs this by braking individual wheels and reducing engine torque as required.

The system also provides an enhanced traction control function by reducing engine torque if the wheels spin when you accelerate. This improves your ability to pull away on slippery roads or loose surfaces, and improves comfort by limiting wheel spin in hairpin bends.

Stability Control Warning Lamp

While driving, it flashes when the system is operating. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 75).

USING STABILITY CONTROL

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

Switching the System Off and On Using the Information Display Controls

Your vehicle comes with this feature already enabled. If required, you can switch this feature off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 80).

Stability control will remain on even when you have switched the traction control off.

Switching the System Off Using a Switch (If Equipped)

The switch is located in the instrument panel.

Press the switch. You will see a message in conjunction with an illuminated icon in the display. Press the switch again to return the system to normal mode.

Stability control will remain on even when you have switched the traction control off.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

If your vehicles has a non-Ford approved trailer tow module the system may not correctly detect objects.

The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.

The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves.

The system does not detect objects that are moving away from your vehicle. They will only be detected shortly after they start to move toward your vehicle.

Take particular care when reversing with a tow ball arm or a rear fitted accessory. For example, a bicycle carrier. The rear parking aid will only indicate the approximate distance from the rear bumper to an object.

Note: *If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the sensors briefly from a distance not less than 8 in (20 cm).*

Note: *If your vehicle has a tow ball arm, the system is turned off automatically when trailer lamps (or lighting boards) are connected to the 13-pin socket through a Ford approved trailer tow module.*

Note: *Keep the sensors free from dirt, ice or snow. Do not clean with sharp objects.*

Note: *The system may emit false alerts if it detects a signal using the same frequency as the sensors or if your vehicle is fully loaded.*

Note: *The outer sensors may detect the side walls of a garage. If the distance between the outer sensors and the side wall remains constant for three seconds, the alert will turn off. As you continue the inner sensors will detect objects directly behind your vehicle.*

REAR PARKING AID

WARNINGS

Sensing is only an aid to detect some objects when moving forward or backward at low speeds. Traffic control systems, inclement weather or an external motor and fan can affect the sensors; this may include reduced performance or false activation. To help avoid personal injury you must read and understand the limitations of the system detailed in this section.

The parking aid system may not prevent contact with small or moving objects that are close to the ground. The parking aid system gives an audible warning when it detects a large object helping to avoid damage to your vehicle. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

Rear Sensing System

When the parking aid system produces an audible warning, the audio system may reduce the set volume to a predetermined level.

Note: *Some add-on equipment can cause reduced performance or false activation. For example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks.*

Note: *The parking aid system sensors must be kept clean and free from snow or ice to avoid reduced performance or false activation. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Note: *If the parking aid sensors are misaligned due to vehicle bumper damage it will cause reduced performance or false activation.*

The rear parking aid sensors turn on automatically when you move the transmission selector lever to R (reverse) and your vehicle is moving at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h). Moving your vehicle closer to a large object will increase the audible warning repeat rate. When the object is less than 12 inches (30 centimeters) from the center of your vehicle's rear bumper the audible warning will sound continuously.



E130178

A Sensor coverage area is up to 71 in (180 cm) from the rear bumper.

Note: *There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.*

The system detects large objects when you move the transmission selector lever to R (reverse):

- Your vehicle is moving backward at low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at low speed and an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.

Note: *If your vehicle remains stationary for two seconds the audible tone will mute. If your vehicle moves backward, you will hear the tone again.*

Move the transmission selector lever from R (reverse) or press the parking aid button to switch the system off. If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display and does not allow you to switch the system on. See **Information Messages** (page 83).

FRONT PARKING AID

WARNINGS

The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. Take care when using the system to avoid personal injury.

To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse and when using the sensing system.

This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist you in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging your vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

WARNINGS

Traffic control systems, inclement weather, air brakes and external motors and fans may affect correct operation of the sensing system; this may include reduced performance or a false alerts.

Front Sensing System

When the parking aid system produces an audible warning, the audio system may reduce the set volume to a predetermined level.

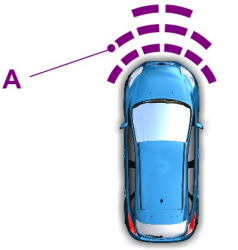
Note: *Keep the sensors located on the bumper or fascia free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false beeps.*

The front sensors are active when the transmission is in any position other than park (P). When your vehicle approaches an object, a warning tone sounds. When your vehicle moves closer to an object, the warning tone repeat rate increases. The warning tone sounds continuously when an object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from the front bumper.

You can also press the parking aid button to switch the front parking aid system on without selecting reverse (R).

The system automatically turns off when your vehicle speed reaches 7 mph (12 km/h).



E184301

A Sensor coverage area is up to 28 in (70 cm) from the front bumper and 6-14 inches (15-35 centimeters) to the side of the front bumper.

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the front sensing system provides audio warnings when the vehicle is moving and the detected obstacle is moving towards the vehicle. Once the vehicle is stationary, the audio warning will be stopped after 2 seconds.

The system detects objects when:

- Your vehicle is moving forward at low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving forward at low speed and an object is approaching the front of your vehicle at a low speed.

Press the parking aid button to switch the system off. If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display and does not allow you to switch the system on. See **Information Messages** (page 83).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Obstacle Distance Indicator (If Equipped)

The system provides obstacle distance indication through the information display. The distance indicator displays when the transmission is in reverse (R).

The indicator displays:

- As the distance to the obstacle decreases the indicator blocks illuminate and move towards the vehicle icon.
- If there is no obstacle detected, the distance indicator blocks are greyed out.

Vehicles with automatic transmission

If the gearshift is in neutral (N), the system provides obstacle distance indication through the information display. If your vehicle moves, the front sensing system provides an audible warning when the vehicle is moving at 5 mph (8 km/h) or below and an obstacle is located inside the detection area. Once the vehicle is stationary, the audio warning will be stopped after 2 seconds.

If the gearshift is in drive (D) or any other forward gear, the front sensing system provides audio warnings when the vehicle is moving and an obstacle is located inside the detection area. Once the vehicle is stationary, the audio warning will be stopped after 2 seconds.

SIDE SENSING SYSTEM

The side sensing system uses the front and rear outer sensors to detect obstacles that are near to the sides of your vehicle. The system places them on a virtual map in the instrument cluster as your vehicle moves past them. The system detects obstacles even when they are no longer in the sensor's field of view.

Note: *If an obstacle approaches the side of the vehicle without passing a front or rear side sensor, the obstacle will not be detected.*

The side sensors are active when the transmission is in any other position other than park (P).



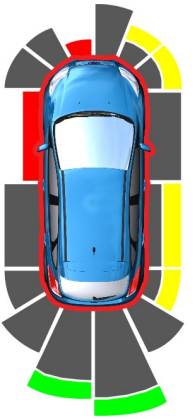
E190458

Coverage area is up to 24 in (60 cm) from the side of your vehicle.

When the system detects an object close to the side of your vehicle, an audible warning sounds. As the object comes closer to the side of your vehicle, the rate of the audible warning increases. The rate of the audible warning varies depending on whether the obstacle is inside or outside of the driving path of your vehicle.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Distance Indication (If Equipped)



E190459

The system may provide obstacle distance indication through the information display.

As the distance to the obstacle decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon. If there is no obstacle detected, the distance indicator blocks will not be present.

When you shift to reverse (R), the side sensing system provides audible and visual distance indication when your vehicle is moving and obstacles are detected within 12 in (30 cm), or when obstacles are detected within 12–24 in (30–60 cm) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle the audible warning stops after two seconds.

Note: *Visual distance indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

When you shift to drive (D) or any other forward gear, for example, low (L), sport (S) or any forward gear in manual transmission, the side sensing system provides audible and visual distance indication when your vehicle is moving at 7 mph (12 km/h) or below and obstacles are detected within 12 in (30 cm), or when obstacles are detected within 12–24 in (30–60 cm) and are inside the driving path of your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle the audible warning stops after two seconds and the visual distance indication stops after four seconds.

Note: *If the obstacle remains within 12–24 in (30–60 cm) visual distance indication remains on.*

When you shift to neutral (N), the side sensing system only provides visual distance indication when your vehicle is moving at 7 mph (12 km/h) or below, for example when moving on a slope, and obstacles are detected within 12 in (30 cm). When you stop your vehicle the visual distance indication stops after four seconds.

If the side sensing system is not available, the side distance indicator blocks will not be present.

The side sensing system is not available under the following condition:

- If you switch the traction control system off.

The side sensing system may not available until you have driven approximately the length of your vehicle in order for the system to reinitialize if:

- You switch the ignition on, off and back on.
- Your vehicle remains stationary for over two minutes.
- The anti-lock brake system is activated.
- The traction control system is activated.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

Parallel Parking, Perpendicular Parking, Park Out Assist

WARNINGS

You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. You are responsible at all times for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.

Note: *The driver is always responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required by grabbing the steering wheel or pushing the active park assist button.*

The system detects an available parallel or perpendicular parking space and automatically steers your vehicle into the space (hands-free) while you control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly guides you to park your vehicle.

If you are uncomfortable with the proximity to any vehicle or object, you may choose to override the system.

Park Out Assist automatically steers your vehicle out of a parallel parking space (hands-free) while you control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly guides you to enter traffic.

Note: *The Blind Spot Information System does not detect traffic alongside or behind your vehicle during a park assist maneuver.*

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- You use a spare tire or a tire significantly worn more than the other tires.
- You use a unauthorized tire size.
- You try to park on a tight curve.
- Something passes between the front bumper and the parking space (a pedestrian or cyclist).
- The edge of the neighboring parked vehicle is high off the ground (for example, a bus, tow truck or flatbed truck).
- The weather conditions are poor (heavy rain, snow, fog, etc).

Note: *Keep the sensors, located on the bumper or fascia, free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. Covered sensors can affect the system's accuracy. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Note: *The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves or cause ultrasonic interference (motorcycle exhaust, truck air brakes or horns).*

Do not use the system if:

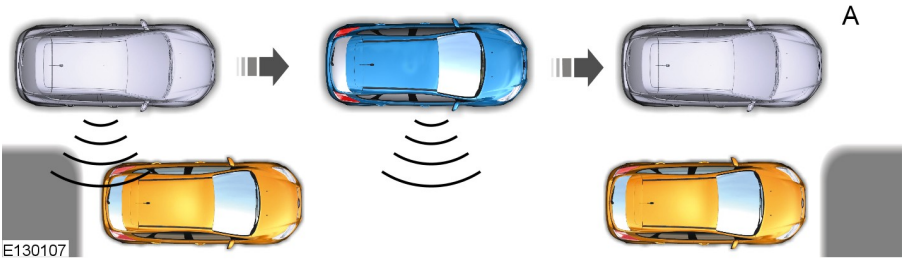
- You have attached a foreign object (bike rack or trailer) to the front or rear of your vehicle or close to the sensors.
- You have attached an overhanging object (surfboard) to the roof.
- A foreign object damages or obstructs the front or rear bumper or side sensors.
- The correct tire size is not in use on your vehicle (for example, a mini-spare tire).

Using Active Park Assist - Parallel Parking

Press the button located on the center console near the gearshift lever or the right side of the center stack once.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

When driving at a speed less than 22 mph (35 km/h) the system automatically scans both sides of your vehicle for an available parking space. The system displays a message and a corresponding graphic to indicate it is searching for a parking space. Use the direction indicator to select searching either to the left-hand side or right-hand side of your vehicle.



Note: *If the direction indicators are not used, the system defaults to the passenger side of your vehicle.*

Note: *The system passively searches for parking spaces prior to pressing the button, so activating the system is still possible while passing a parking space.*

When the system finds a suitable space, it displays a message and a tone sounds. Stop your vehicle and follow the instructions on the screen. If your vehicle is moving very slowly, you may need to pull forward a short distance before the system is ready to park.

Note: *You must observe that the selected space remains clear of obstructions at all times during the maneuver.*

Note: *Active park assist may not detect street furniture and other items. You must make sure the selected space is suitable for parking.*

Note: *You should drive your vehicle within 5 ft (1.5 m) and as parallel as possible to the other vehicles while passing a parking space.*

Note: *The system always offers the last detected parking space (for example, if your vehicle detects multiple spaces while you are driving, it offers the last one).*

Note: *If driven above approximately 22 mph (35 km/h), the system shows a message to alert you to reduce your vehicle speed.*

Automatic Steering into Parking Space

Note: *If your vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (9 km/h) or the maneuver is interrupted (driver input), the system switches off and you need to take full control of your vehicle.*

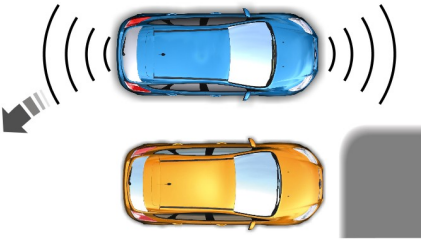
When you shift the transmission into reverse (R), with your hands off the wheel (and nothing obstructing its movement), your vehicle steers itself into the space. The system displays instructions to move your vehicle back and forth in the space.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



When you think your vehicle is properly parked, or you hear a solid tone from the parking aid (accompanied by a display message and a chime), bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

When automatic steering is complete, the system displays a message and a tone sounds, indicating that the active park assist process is finished. You are responsible for checking the parking job and making any necessary corrections before leaving your vehicle.

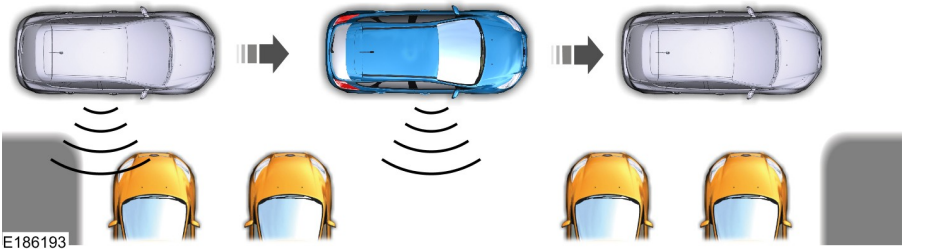


Using Active Park Assist - Perpendicular Parking

Press the button located on the center console near the gearshift lever or the right side of the center stack twice.

The system displays a message and a corresponding graphic to indicate it is searching for a parking space. Use the direction indicator to select searching either to the left-hand side or right-hand side of your vehicle.

Note: *If you do not make a selection the system will default to the passenger's side.*



When the system finds a suitable space, it displays a message and a tone sounds. Stop your vehicle and follow the instructions on the screen. If your vehicle is moving very slowly, you may need to pull forward a short distance before the system is ready to park.

Note: *You must observe that the selected space remains clear of obstructions at all times during the maneuver.*

Note: *You should drive your vehicle within 4.9 ft (1.5 m) and as perpendicular as possible to the other vehicles while passing a parking space.*

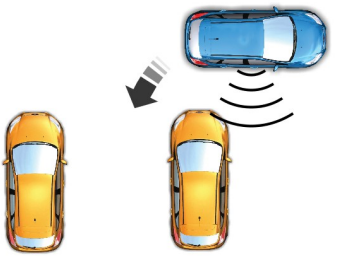
C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Note: *The system always offers the last detected parking space (for example, if your vehicle detects multiple spaces while you are driving, it offers the last one).*

Note: *If driven above approximately 19 mph (30 km/h), the system shows a message to alert you to reduce your vehicle speed.*

Automatic Steering into Parking Space

Note: *If your vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (9 km/h) or the maneuver is interrupted (driver input), the system switches off and you need to take full control of your vehicle.*



E186191

When you shift the transmission into reverse (R), with your hands off the wheel (and nothing obstructing its movement), your vehicle steers itself into the space. The system displays instructions to move your vehicle back and forth in the space.

When you think your vehicle is properly parked, or you hear a solid tone from the parking aid (accompanied by a display message and a chime), bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

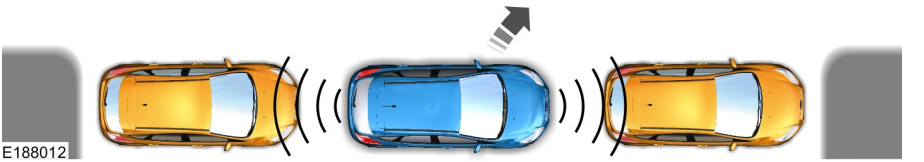
When automatic steering is complete, the system displays a message and a tone sounds, indicating that the active park assist process is finished. You are responsible for checking the parking job and making any necessary corrections before leaving your vehicle.

Using Active Park Assist - Park Out Assist



While your vehicle is at rest in a parallel parking space, press the active park assist button.

The system displays a message requesting an indication of direction. Use the direction indicator to signal which side of your vehicle you want to exit the parking space.



E188012

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

The system determines the clearance to the front and rear of your vehicle and automatically steers your vehicle out of a parallel parking space (hands-free) while you control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly guides you to enter traffic.

After the system has directed your vehicle past the adjacent vehicle or object, it guides you to take control of the steering to complete the exit from the parking spot.

The system may not function correctly if something passes between the front bumper and the parking space (a pedestrian or cyclist) or if the edge of the neighboring parked vehicle is high off the ground (for example, a bus, tow truck or flatbed truck).

Note: *If the clearance in front of your vehicle allows easy departure, the Park Out Assist feature might not be available.*

Note: *You are responsible for controlling your vehicle and making sure the path is clear prior to pulling into traffic.*

Note: *This system is not intended to assist in exiting perpendicular parking spaces, damages to your vehicle may occur.*

Note: *If your vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (9 km/h) or the maneuver is interrupted (driver input), the system switches off and you need to take full control of your vehicle.*

Deactivating the Active Park Assist Feature

Manually deactivate the system by:

- Pressing the active park assist button twice.
- Grabbing the steering wheel during an active maneuver.
- Driving above approximately 22 mph (35 km/h) for 30 seconds during an active park search.
- Driving above 6 mph (9 km/h) during automatic steering.
- Switching off the traction control system.

Certain vehicle conditions can also deactivate the system, such as:

- Traction control has activated.
- There is an anti-lock brake system activation or failure.

If a problem occurs with the system, a warning message displays accompanied by a tone. Occasional system messages may occur in normal operation. For recurring or frequent system faults, contact an authorized dealer to have your vehicle serviced.

Troubleshooting the System

The system does not look for a space
The traction control system may be off.
The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

The system does not offer a particular space
The sensors may be covered (for example, snow, ice or dirt buildup). Covered senors can affect the system's functionality.
There is not enough room in the parking space for your vehicle to safely park.
There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.
The parking space is farther than 5 ft (1.5 m) or closer than 16 in (0.4 m) away.
The transmission is in reverse (R). Your vehicle must be moving forward to be able to detect a parking space.
Your vehicle is going faster than 22 mph (35 km/h) for parallel and 19 mph (30 km/h) for perpendicular parking.

The system does not position the vehicle where I want in the space
Your vehicle is rolling in the opposite direction of the transmission (rolling forward with reverse [R] selected).
An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from aligning your vehicle properly.
Vehicles or objects bordering the space may not be positioned correctly.
You pulled your vehicle too far past the parking space. The system performs best when you drive the same distance past the parking space.
The tires may not be installed or maintained correctly (not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes).
A repair or alteration has changed detection capabilities.
A parked vehicle has a high attachment (salt sprayer, snowplow or moving truck bed).
The parking space length or position of parked objects changed after your vehicle passed.
The temperature around your vehicle changes quickly (driving from a heated garage into the cold, or after leaving a car wash).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

REAR VIEW CAMERA

WARNINGS

The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

Back up as slow as possible since higher speeds might limit your reaction time to stop your vehicle.

Use caution when using the rear video camera and the luggage compartment door is ajar. If the luggage compartment door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines disappear when the luggage compartment door is ajar.

Use caution when turning camera features on or off. Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

The rear view camera provides an image of the area behind your vehicle.

During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind your vehicle.



E142435

The camera is located on the luggage compartment door.

Using the Rear View Camera System

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you shift the transmission into reverse (R).

Note: *The reverse sensing system is not effective at speeds above 7 mph (12 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.*

The system uses three types of guides to help you see what is behind your vehicle:

- Active guidelines: Show the intended path of your vehicle when reversing.
- Fixed guidelines: Show the actual path your vehicle is moving in while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning your vehicle with another object behind you.
- Centerline: Helps align the center of your vehicle with an object (for example, a trailer).

Note: *If the transmission is in reverse (R) and the luggage compartment door or liftgate is open, no rear view camera features will display.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

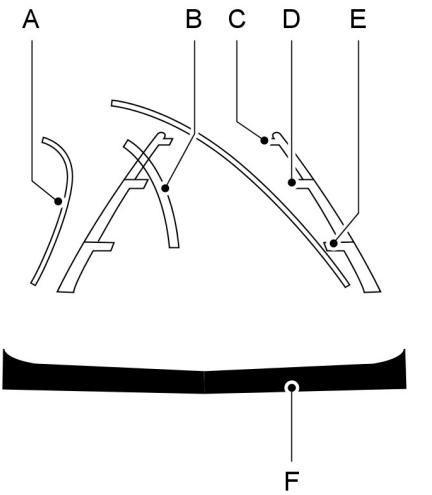
Note: *When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen. In some vehicles, the guidelines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.*

The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if one or both reverse lamps are not operating.
- Mud, water or debris obstructs the camera's view. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The rear of your vehicle is hit or damaged, causing the camera to become misaligned.

Camera Guidelines

Note: *Active guidelines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*



E142436

A	Active guidelines
B	Centerline
C	Fixed guideline: Green zone
D	Fixed guideline: Yellow zone
E	Fixed guideline: Red zone
F	Rear bumper

Active guidelines only show with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Always use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

Manual Zoom

WARNING

When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Note: *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

Note: *When you enable manual zoom, only the centerline is shown.*

Selectable settings for this feature are Zoom in (+) and Zoom out (-). Press the symbol in the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is Zoom OFF.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

Camera System Settings

You can adjust the camera settings using the vehicle settings menu in the information display.

Enhanced Park Aids or Park Pilot (If Equipped)

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

The system uses red, yellow and green highlights that appear on top of the video image when any of the sensing systems detect an object.

Rear Camera Delay

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

The default setting for the rear camera delay is OFF.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until:

- Your vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift your vehicle into park (P).
- 10 seconds of time elapse.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 20 mph (30 km/h).

USING CRUISE CONTROL

WARNINGS

Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning displays.



E200801

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On

Press and release the cruise control icon.



The indicator appears in the instrument cluster.

Setting the Cruise Speed

1. Drive to desired speed.
2. Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**.
3. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note: *The indicator will change color.*

Note: *Cruise control will disengage if your vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below your set speed while driving uphill.*

Changing the Set Speed

- Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**. The set speed will change in approximately 5 mph (5 km/h) increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**.
- Press and hold **SET+** or **SET-**. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.

Note: *If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed will not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.*

Canceling the Set Speed

Press and release **CAN** to place the system in standby mode. The system will not erase the set speed.

Resuming the Set Speed

Press and release **RES**.

Switching Cruise Control Off

Press and release the cruise control icon, when the system is in stand by mode or switch the ignition off.

Note: *You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

USING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

WARNINGS

Adaptive cruise control is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

Adaptive cruise control does not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 6 mph (10 km/h).

Always pay close attention to changing road conditions when using adaptive cruise control. The system does not replace attentive driving. Failing to pay attention to the road may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

Adaptive cruise control does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

The system does not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

Do not use the system when entering or leaving a freeway.

Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

WARNINGS

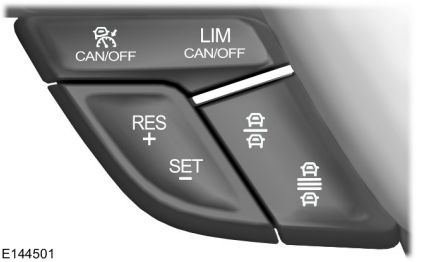
Do not use the system when towing a trailer with brake controls. Aftermarket trailer brakes will not operate when you switch the system on because the brakes are electronically controlled. Failure to do so may result in loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failing to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

The system helps you to maintain a gap from the vehicle in front of you. The system adjusts your vehicle speed to maintain the set gap between you and the vehicle in front of you in the same lane.

If there is no vehicle in front of you the system will maintain a set speed. The system is intended to provide enhanced operation of your vehicle when following other vehicles which are in the same lane and traveling in the same direction.

The system is based on the use of a radar sensor which projects a beam directly forward of your vehicle. This beam will detect any vehicle ahead within the system's range.



E144501

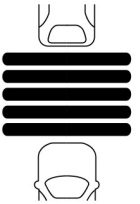
C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

The adaptive cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On

Press and release the Adaptive Cruise Control **CAN/OFF** button.



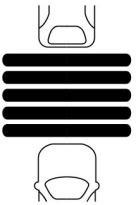

E82312

The information display shows:

- The cruise control indicator.
- The current gap setting indicator.
- The SET mph (kph) or Standby.

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed

1. Drive to desired speed.
2. Press and release **SET-**.
3. The information display shows a green indicator light, current gap setting and desired set speed.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.


E82312

5. A vehicle graphic illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

Note: *When adaptive cruise control is active, the set speed displayed in the information display may vary slightly from the speedometer.*

Changing the Set Speed

- Press and release **RES+** or **SET-**. The set speed changes in 5 mph (5 km/h) increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release **SET-**.
- Press and hold **RES+** or **SET-**. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed.

Canceling the Set Speed

Press and release the Adaptive Cruise Control **CAN/OFF** button or tap the brake pedal. The last set speed displays with a strikethrough.

Resuming the Set Speed

Press and release **RES+**. The vehicle returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display while the system is active.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off

Press and release the Adaptive Cruise Control **CAN/OFF** button when the system is in stand by mode or switch the ignition off.

Note: *You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Following a Vehicle

WARNINGS

When following a vehicle, your vehicle does not decelerate automatically to a stop, nor does your vehicle always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Always apply the brakes when necessary. Failing to do so may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. You should always apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to do so may result in a crash, serious injury or death.

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance.

The lead vehicle graphic illuminates.

Your vehicle will maintain a consistant gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of your lane or out of view.
- The vehicle speed falls below 12 mph (20 km/h).
- A new gap is set.

If required, the system automatically applies the brakes to maintain the set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead. This braking capacity is limited to approximately 30% of the total manual braking capacity to maintain smooth and comfortable cruising.

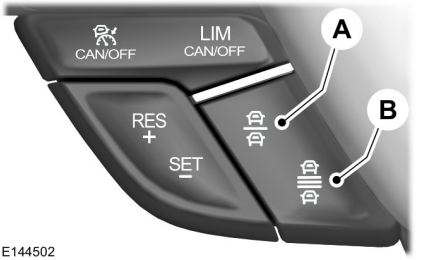
The system is designed to assist you by warning you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle ahead.

The system alerts you with warning chimes and a visual warning in the information display.

Brake support assists with full braking and reduces the severity of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

Note: *The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.*

Setting the Gap Distance



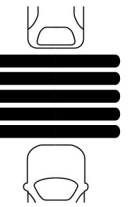
E144502

A Gap decrease.

B Gap increase.

You can decrease or increase the gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you by pressing the gap control.

Note: *It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.*



E82312

The selected gap appears in the information display as shown by the bars in the image. You can select five gap settings.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Note: *The gap setting is time dependent and therefore the distance will automatically adjust with your speed.*

Adaptive cruise control gap settings

Set speed mph (km/h)	Graphic display, bars indicated between vehicles	Time gap, seconds	Gap yd (m)	Dynamic behavior
62 (100)	1	1	31 (28)	Sport
62 (100)	2	1.2	36 (33)	
62 (100)	3	1.5	46 (42)	Normal
62 (100)	4	1.8	55 (50)	
62 (100)	5	2.1	63 (58)	Comfort

Note: *The system status and settings remain unchanged each time you switch the ignition on.*

Overriding the Set Speed

WARNING

If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

Use the accelerator pedal normally to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the green indicator light illuminates and the vehicle graphic does not show in the information display.

It will switch back on when you release the accelerator pedal.

Automatic Cancellation

The system does not operate below 12 mph (20 km/h). An audible warning sounds and the automatic braking releases if the vehicle drops below this speed.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- Your vehicle speed falls below approximately 12.4 mph (20 km/h).
- The tires lose traction.
- The engine speed is too low.
- You apply the parking brake.

Note: *If the engine speed drops too low, the information display indicates low engine speed. Shift to a lower gear (manual transmission only) to avoid automatic cancellation.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Hilly Condition Usage

You should select a lower gear position when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep grades, for example in mountainous areas. The system needs additional engine braking in these situations to reduce the load on the vehicle's regular brake system to prevent them from overheating.

Note: *An audible warning sounds and the system shuts down if it applies brakes for an extended period of time. This allows the brakes to cool down. The system functions normally again when the brakes have cooled down.*

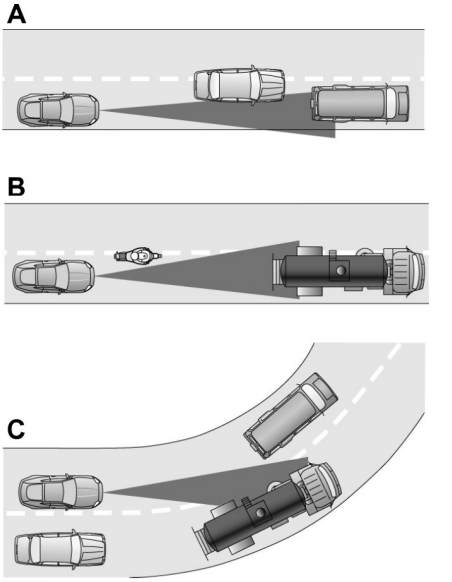
Detection Issues

WARNING

On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

The radar sensor has a limited field of vision. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The vehicle graphic does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

Detection issues can occur:



A With vehicles that edge into your lane that can only be detected once they have moved fully into your lane.

B Motorcyclists may be detected late, or not at all.

C With vehicles in front of you when going into and coming out of a bend. The detection beam does not follow sharp curves in the road.

In these cases the system may brake late or unexpectedly. You should stay alert and intervene if necessary.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

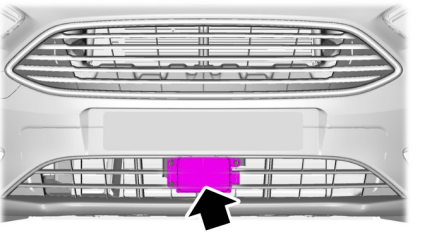
If something hits the front of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

System Not Available

Conditions that can cause the system to deactivate or prevent the system from activating when requested include:

- A blocked sensor.
- High brake temperature.
- A failure in the system or a related system.

Blocked Sensor



E190005

A message displays if something obstructs the radar signals from the sensor. The sensor is in the lower grille. The system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function when something blocks the sensor.

Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors and aftermarket lights may also block the sensor.

The following table lists possible causes and actions for this message displaying

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar in the grille is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that it is free from obstruction.
Swirling water, snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.
Heavy rain or snow is interfering with the radar signals.	Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.

It is possible to get a blockage warning and not be blocked. A false blocked condition self clears or clears after a key cycle.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Switching to Normal Cruise Control

WARNING

Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

You can manually change from adaptive cruise control to normal cruise control through the information display.



The cruise control indicator light replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator light if you select normal cruise control. The system defaults to adaptive cruise control when you start the vehicle.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

SPEED LIMITER - VEHICLES WITH: CRUISE CONTROL

Principle of Operation

WARNING

When you are going downhill, your speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning will be given.

The system allows you to set a speed, to which your vehicle then becomes limited. The set speed will become the effective maximum speed of your vehicle, but with the option to temporarily exceed this limit if required.

Using the System

Note: *The set speed limit can be intentionally exceeded for a short period of time if required, for example when overtaking.*

The system is operated by adjustment controls mounted on the steering wheel.



E193646

Switching the System On and Off

Press LIM to set the limiter in standby mode. The information display will prompt you to set a speed. Press LIM again to turn the system off.

Setting the Speed Limit

- Press SET+ or SET- with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the current vehicle speed.
- Press SET+ or SET- to select your desired speed limit. The speed is displayed in the information display and stored as the set speed.
- Press CAN to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The information display will confirm this has been turned off by showing the set speed crossed out.
- Press RES to resume the limiter. The information display will confirm this has been turned on by showing the set speed again.

Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit

Depress the accelerator fully to temporarily turn the system off. The system will reactivate once your vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

System Warnings

If you accidently exceed the set speed, the set speed indication will flash in the information display and you will hear and audible warning chime.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, the set speed indication will flash in the information display.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

SPEED LIMITER - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

Principle of Operation

WARNING

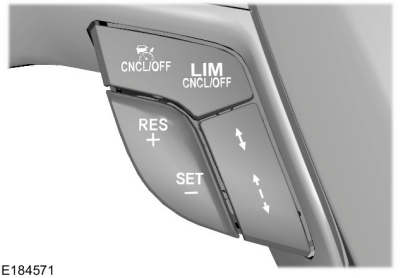
When you are going downhill, your speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning will be given.

The system allows you to set a speed, to which your vehicle then becomes limited. The set speed will become the effective maximum speed of your vehicle, but with the option to temporarily exceed this limit if required.

Using the System

Note: *The set speed limit can be intentionally exceeded for a short period of time if required, for example when overtaking.*

The system is operated by adjustment controls mounted on the steering wheel.



E184571

Switching the System On and Off

Press LIM CNCL/OFF to set the limiter in standby mode. The information display will prompt you to set a speed. Press LIM again to turn the system off.

Setting the Speed Limit

- Press SET+ or SET- with the limiter in standby mode to set the limiter to the current vehicle speed.
- Press SET+ or SET- to select your desired speed limit. The speed is displayed in the information display and stored as the set speed.
- Press CAN to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The information display will confirm this has been turned off by showing the set speed crossed out.
- Press RES to resume the limiter. The information display will confirm this has been turned on by showing the set speed again.

Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit

Depress the accelerator fully to temporarily turn the system off. The system will reactivate once your vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

System Warnings

If you accidently exceed the set speed, the set speed indication will flash in the information display and you will hear an audible warning chime.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, the set speed indication will flash in the information display.

DRIVER ALERT

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNING

The driver alert system is designed to aid you. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Note: *The system will store the on or off setting in the information display menu through ignition cycles.*

Note: *If enabled in the menu, the system will be active at speeds above 40 mph (64 km/h). When below the activation speed, the information display will inform the driver that the system is unavailable.*

Note: *The system works as long as one lane marking can be detected by the camera.*

Note: *If the camera is blocked or if the windshield is damaged, the system may not function.*

Note: *The system may not be available in poor weather or other low visibility conditions.*

The system automatically monitors your driving behavior using various inputs including the front camera sensor.

If the system detects that your driving alertness is reduced below a certain threshold, the system will alert you using a chime and a message in the cluster display.

USING DRIVER ALERT

Switching the System On and Off

Switch the system on or off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 80).

When activated, the system will monitor your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings, and other factors.

System Warnings

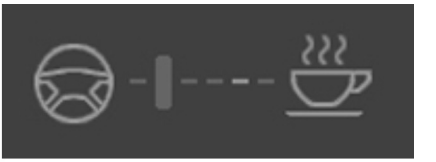
Note: *The system will not issue warnings below approximately 40 mph (64 km/h).*

The warning system has two stages. At first, the system issues a temporary warning that you need to take a rest. This message will only appear for a short time. If the system detects further reduction in driving alertness, it may issue another warning that will remain in the information display for a longer time. You can press OK on the steering wheel control to clear the warning.

System Display

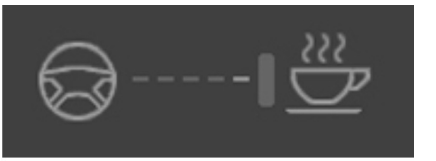
When active the system will run automatically in the background and only issue a warning if required. You can view the status at any time using the information display. See **General Information** (page 80).

The alertness level is shown by six steps in a colored bar.



E131358

The current assessment of your alertness is within a typical range.



E131359

The current assessment of your alertness indicates that you should rest as soon as safely possible.

The status bar will travel from left to right as the calculated alertness level decreases. As the rest icon is approached the color turns from green to yellow to red.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

The yellow position indicates the first warning is active and the red position indicates the second warning is active.

Note: *If you have recently received a warning; you should consider resting, even if the current assessment is within the typical range.*

Note: *If the camera sensor cannot track the road lane markings or if your vehicle speed drops below approximately 40 mph (64 km/h), the alertness level will change to grey for a short time and the information display will inform you that the system is unavailable.*

Resetting the System

You can reset the system by either:

- Switching the ignition off and on.
- Stopping the vehicle and then opening and closing the driver's door.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

WARNINGS

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.

If the sensor becomes blocked the system may not function.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray can all limit sensor performance.

Large contrasts in lighting can limit sensor performance.

The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

WARNINGS

The vehicle should be taken to an authorized dealer for inspection if damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.

Note: *The system works above 40 mph (64 km/h).*

Note: *The system works as long as the camera can detect one lane marking.*

Note: *The system may not function if the camera is blocked or there is damage to the windshield.*

Note: *When Aid mode is on and the system detects no steering activity for a short period, the system will alert you to put your hands on the steering wheel. The system may detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands off driving.*

The system notifies you to stay in your lane through the steering system and the instrument cluster display when the front camera detects an unintentional drift out of your lane is likely to occur. The system automatically detects and tracks the road lane markings using a camera mounted behind the interior rear view mirror.

Switching the System On and Off

Note: *The system on or off setting is stored until it is manually changed, unless a MyKey is detected. If the system detects a MyKey it defaults to on and the mode is set to Alert.*

Note: *If a MyKey is detected, pressing the button will not affect the on or off status of the system.*



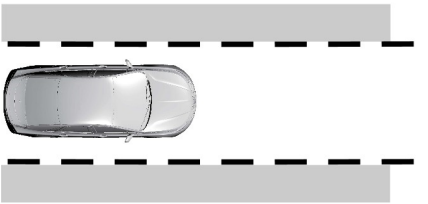
Press the button located on the left steering wheel stalk to switch the system on or off.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

System Settings

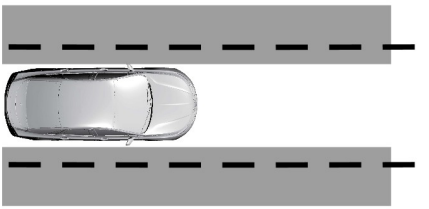
The system has optional setting menus available. To view or adjust the settings, See **General Information** (page 80). The system stores the last-known selection for each of these settings. You do not need to readjust your settings each time you turn on the system.

Mode: This setting allows you to select which of the system features you can enable.



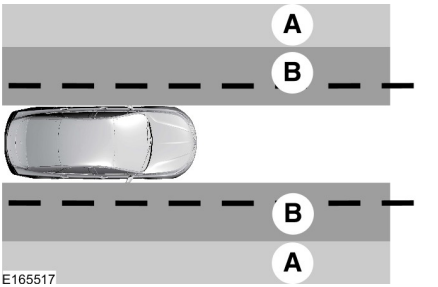
E165515

Alert only – Provides a steering wheel vibration when the system detects an unintended lane departure.



E165516

Aid only – Provides an assistance steering torque input toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure.



E165517

A Alert
B Aid

Alert + Aid – Provides an assistance steering torque input toward the lane center. If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane, the system provides a steering wheel vibration.

Note: *The alert and aid diagrams illustrate general zone coverage. They do not provide exact zone parameters.*

Intensity: This setting affects the intensity of the steering wheel vibration used for the alert and alert + aid modes. This setting does not affect the aid mode.

- Low
- Normal
- High

System Display



E151660

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

When you switch on the system, an overhead graphic of a vehicle with lane markings will display in the information display. If you select aid mode when you switch on the system, a separate white icon will also appear or in some vehicles arrows will display with the lane markings.

When you switch off the system, the lane marking graphics will not display.

While the system is on, the color of the lane markings will change to indicate the system status.

Gray: Indicates that the system is temporarily unable to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side(s). This may be because:

- Your vehicle is under the activation speed.
- The turn indicator is active.
- Your vehicle is in a dynamic maneuver.
- The road has no or poor lane markings in the camera field-of-view.
- The camera is obscured or unable to detect the lane markings due to environmental conditions (significant sun angles, shadows, snow, heavy rain or fog), traffic conditions (following a large vehicle that is blocking or shadowing the lane), or vehicle conditions (poor headlamp illumination).

See **Troubleshooting** for additional information.

Green: Indicates that the system is available or ready to provide a warning or intervention, on the indicated side(s).

Yellow: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping aid intervention.

Red: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping alert warning.

The system can be temporarily suppressed at any time by the following:

- Quick braking.
- Fast acceleration.
- Using the turn signal indicator.
- Evasive steering maneuver.

Troubleshooting

Why is the feature not available (line markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?
Vehicle speed is outside the operational range of the feature
Sun is shining directly into the camera lens
Quick intentional lane change
Staying too close to the lane marking
Driving at high speeds in curves
The last Alert warning or Aid intervention occurred a short time ago

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Why is the feature not available (line markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?
Ambiguous lane markings (mainly in construction zones)
Rapid transition from light to dark or vice versa
Sudden offset in lane markings
ABS or AdvanceTrac activation
Camera blockage due to dirt, grime, fog, frost or water on the windshield
Driving too close to the vehicle in front of you
Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings or vice versa
Standing water on the road
Faint lane markings (partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads)
Lane width too narrow or too wide
Camera not calibrated after a windshield replacement
Driving on tight roads or on uneven roads

Why does the vehicle not come back toward the middle of the lane, as expected, in the Aid or Aid + Alert mode?
High cross winds
Large road crown
Rough roads, grooves, shoulder drop-offs
Heavy uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure
If the tires have been exchanged (including snow tires), or the suspension has been modified

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

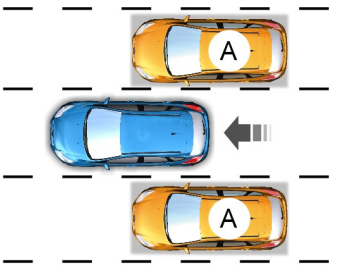
BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

Blind Spot Information System (BLIS™) with Cross Traffic Alert

(If Equipped)

WARNING

Do not use the system as a replacement for using the mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. You should only use the system as an aid. It is not a replacement for careful driving.



E124788

The system is a convenience feature that assists you in detecting vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone (A). The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 10 feet (3 meters) beyond the rear bumper. The system is designed to alert you if other vehicles enter the blind spot zone when driving.

Cross Traffic Alert is designed to warn you of vehicles approaching from the sides when the transmission is in reverse (R).

Note: *The Blind Spot Information System does not prevent contact with other vehicles or objects; nor detect parked vehicles, people, animals or infrastructure (fences, guardrails, trees, etc.). It's only designed to alert you to vehicles in the blind zones.*

Note: *Vehicles that pass through the blind spot zone quickly (typically less than 2 seconds) will not trigger the alert.*

Using the Systems

The Blind Spot Information System turns on when you start the engine and you drive you vehicle forward above 5 mph (8 km/h); it remains on while the transmission is in drive (D) or neutral (N). If shifted out of drive (D) or neutral (N), the system enters cross traffic alert mode. Once shifted back into drive (D), the Blind Spot Information System turns back on when you drive your vehicle above 5 mph (8 km/h).

Note: *The Blind Spot Information System does not function in reverse (R) or park (P) or provide any additional warning when a turn signal is on.*

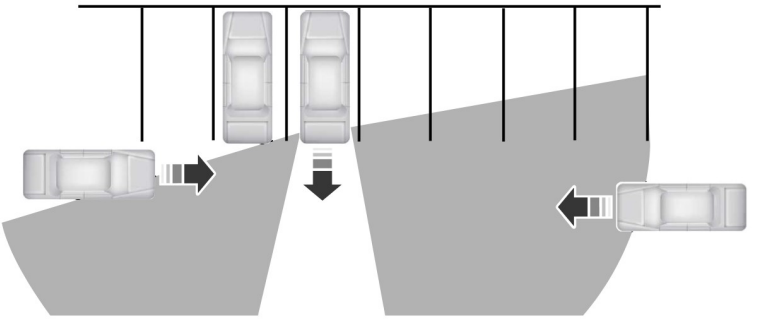
Note: *Cross Traffic Alert is designed to detect approaching vehicles from up to 131 ft (40 m) away, though coverage decreases when the sensors are blocked. Reversing slowly helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.*

Note: *For manual transmission vehicles, the Cross Traffic Alert will be active only if the transmission is in reverse (R). If your vehicle is rolling backwards and the transmission is not in reverse (R) then Cross Traffic Alert will not be active.*

WARNING

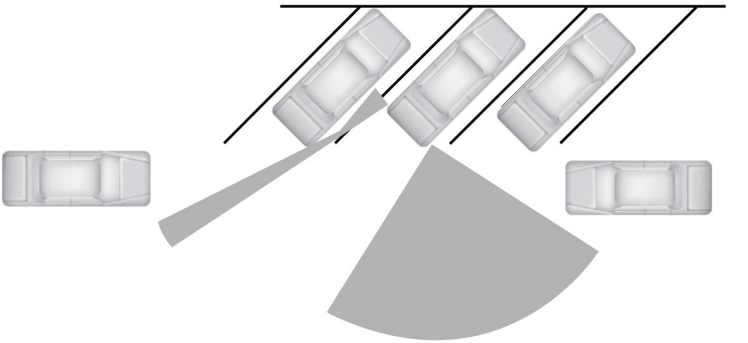
Do not use the system as a replacement for using the mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. You should only use the system as an aid. It is not a replacement for careful driving.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



E142440

In this first example, the left sensor is only partially obstructed; zone coverage is nearly maximized.



E142441

Zone coverage also decreases when parking at shallow angles. Here, the left sensor is mostly obstructed; zone coverage on that side is severely limited.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

System Lights and Messages



E142442

The system displays a yellow warning indicator located in the exterior mirrors.

Note: *It will dim when the ambient light decreases.*

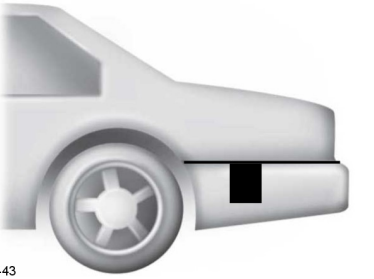
Cross Traffic Alert also sounds a series of tones and a message appears in the information display indicating a vehicle is coming from the right or left. Cross Traffic Alert works with the reverse sensing system that sounds its own series of tones. See **Parking Aids** (page 144).

System Sensors

WARNING

Prior to the system recognizing a blocked condition and issuing a warning, the number of missed objects will increase.

Note: *It is possible to get a blockage warning with no blockage present; this is rare and known as a false blockage warning. A false blocked condition either self-corrects or clears after a key cycle.*



E142443

The system uses radar sensors which are located behind the bumper fascia on each side of your vehicle. Do not allow mud, snow or bumper stickers to obstruct these areas, this can cause degraded system performance.

If the system detects a degraded performance condition, a message warning of a blocked sensor or low visibility will appear in the information display along with a warning indicator. You can clear the information display warning but the warning indicator will remain illuminated.

When you remove a blockage, you can reset the system in two ways:

- While driving, the system detects at least two objects.
- You cycle the ignition from on to off and then back on.

If the blockage is still present after the key cycle and driving in traffic, check again for a blockage.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Reasons for messages being displayed	
The radar surface is dirty or obstructed	Clean the fascia area in front of the radar or remove the obstruction.
The radar surface is not dirty or obstructed	Drive normally in traffic for a few minutes to allow the radar to detect passing vehicles so it can clear the blocked state.
Heavy rainfall or snowfall interferes with the radar signals	No action required. The system automatically resets to an unblocked state once the rainfall or snowfall rate decreases or stops. Do not use the Blind Spot Information System or Cross Traffic Alert in these conditions.

Detection Limitations

There may be instances where the system will not always detect vehicles entering and exiting the blind spot zone.

Instances which may cause non-detection:

- Debris build up on the rear bumper panels in the area of the sensors.
- Certain maneuvering of vehicles entering and exiting the blind spot zone.
- Vehicles passing through the blind spot zone at high speed.
- Severe weather conditions.
- Several vehicles passing through the blind spot zone following each other closely.

The following are other situations that may limit the Cross Traffic Alert system:

- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects obstructing the sensors.
- Approaching vehicles passing at speeds greater than 15 mph (24 km/h).
- Driving in reverse faster than 5 mph (8 km/h).
- Backing out of an angled parking spot.

False Alerts

Note: *If your vehicle has a trailer tow module approved by us, the system will detect a connected trailer and turn off. For non-factory equipped tow bars, you may want to turn the Blind Spot Information System off manually.*

There may be certain instances when there is a false alert by either the Blind Spot Information or the Cross Traffic Alert systems that illuminates the alert indicator with no vehicle in the coverage zone. Some amount of false alerts are normal; they are temporary and self-correct.

Detection Errors

If either system senses a problem with the left or right sensor, the Blind Spot Information System warning indicator will illuminate and a message will appear in the information display.

All other system faults will display only with a message in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 83).

Switching the Systems Off and On

You can temporarily switch off one or both systems in the information display. See **General Information** (page 80). When you switch off the Blind Spot Information System, you will not receive alerts and the information display will display a system off message.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Note: *The Cross Traffic Alert system always switches on whenever the ignition is switched on. However, the Blind Spot Information System will remember the last selected on or off setting.*

One or both systems cannot be switched off when MyKey is used. See **Principle of Operation** (page 33).

You can also have one or both systems switched off permanently at an authorized dealer. Once switched off, the system can only be switched back on at an authorized dealer.

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

Principle of Operation

WARNINGS

The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.

If the sensor becomes blocked the system may not function.

Note: *In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from functioning correctly.*

Note: *Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.*

Note: *If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not function correctly.*

Note: *Always fit Ford original parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.*

Note: *Keep the windshield free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.*

Note: *The system may not detect all traffic signs and may read signs incorrectly.*

Note: *The system is designed to automatically detect traffic signs meeting the Vienna convention.*

Note: *Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.*

There is a sensor mounted behind the interior rear view mirror. It continuously monitors road signs to inform you of the current speed limit and overtaking regulations.

The system automatically detects recognisable traffic signs, such as:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.

When the system recognises a traffic sign, it will be shown in the display.

Using the System

Switching the System On and Off

Note: *The system status and settings will remain unchanged during ignition cycles.*

You can switch the system on and off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 80).

Setting the System Speed Warning

The system has a number of speed warning levels which can be set using the information display. See **General Information** (page 80).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

System Display



E132994

The system can display two traffic signs in parallel.

You can view the status at any time using the information display.

The system display is in four stages as follows:

1. All new recognizable traffic signs will appear brighter than the other traffic signs in the display.
2. After a predetermined time they will be shown normally.
3. After a predetermined distance they will be shown greyed out.
4. After another predetermined distance they will be deleted.

If the system detects a supplementary traffic sign, this sign is indicated as a box below the respective traffic sign. For example, when passing a reduced speed limit in wet road conditions sign.

If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.

ACTIVE CITY STOP

Principle of Operation

WARNINGS

You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

To achieve full system performance you must break in the braking system. See **Breaking-In** (page 200). Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

If the system applies the brakes and the engine stops the hazard warning flashers will automatically turn on. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

The system does not react to cyclists, motorcyclists, pedestrians, animals or vehicles that are driving in a different direction. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system does not operate during harsh acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

The system may not operate during cold or severe weather conditions. Snow, ice, heavy rain and spray can influence the system. Keep the hood free of snow and ice. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system may not operate when driving around sharp curves. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

WARNINGS

The system may not operate correctly if you replace the windshield with a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in front of the sensor. Failure to adhere to this warning may lead to an accident or injury.

The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflections. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system will not operate correctly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstructions, for example, bird droppings, insects, snow or ice. Failure to adhere to this warning may lead to an accident or injury.

When you switch the ignition on the sensor transmits a laser beam. Never look directly into the sensor. There is a risk of eye injury.

The sensor is on the rear of the interior mirror. It continuously monitors conditions to decide when to intervene.

The system operates at speeds below approximately 31 mph (50 km/h) by applying the brakes if it detects that a crash is likely. If the system applies the brakes a message will appear in the information display.

The system may reduce the risk of a low speed crash into another vehicle. It also helps reduce impact damage or may avoid the crash completely.

Note: *You must depress the brake pedal to obtain full braking force.*

Switching the System Off and On

You can switch this feature off using the information display controls. See **General Information** (page 80).

Note: *The system automatically turns on every time you switch the ignition on.*

In certain situations we recommend that you switch the system off, for example:

- Driving off-road when objects may cover the windshield.
- Driving through a car wash facility.

ECO MODE

This system assists you in driving more efficiently by constantly monitoring characteristics of gear changing, anticipation of traffic conditions and speeds while driving.

The value of these characteristics is represented by petals shown in the display, with five petals being the most efficient. The more efficiently you drive, the better the rating, and the better your vehicle's overall fuel economy.

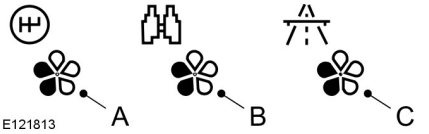
Note: *These efficiency values do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure. It might vary as it is not only related to these driving habits, but also influenced by many other factors such as short trips and cold starts.*

Note: *Frequent short trips, where the engine does not fully warm up, will also increase fuel consumption*

The system is accessed using the information display control. See **General Information** (page 80).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Type 1



E121813

A Gear shifting
B Anticipation
C Efficient speed

Gear shifting

Use the highest drivable gear appropriate for the road conditions to improve fuel consumption.

Anticipation

Adjust your vehicle speed and the distance to other vehicles to avoid the need for heavy braking or acceleration to improve fuel economy.

Efficient speed

Reduce your cruising speed on open roads to improve economy. Higher speeds use more fuel.

Type 2 and 3

The relevant information is shown in the display.

Resetting Eco Mode

Reset the average fuel consumption by using the information display control.

Note: *New values may take a short time to calculate*

COLLISION WARNING SYSTEM

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

This system is designed to be a supplementary driving aid. It is not intended to replace your attention, and judgment, or the need to apply the brakes. Failure to press the brake pedal to activate the brakes may result in a collision.

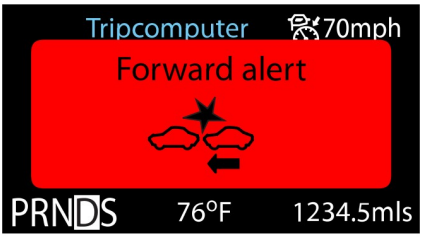
Never wait for a crash warning. When driving you are responsible for maintaining the correct distance and speed, even when the system is used.

Note: *The system does not detect, warn or respond to potential collisions with vehicles to the rear or sides of the vehicle.*

Note: *The collision warning system is active at speeds above approximately 5 mph (8 km/h).*


E156130

The system is designed to assist you by warning you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you. The system is designed to alert you by warning chimes and a visual warning in the information display.



E190002

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

The brake support system assists the driver in reducing the collision speed by charging the brakes. If the risk of collision further increases after the warning light illuminates, the brake support prepares the brake system for rapid braking. This may be apparent to the driver. Brake support may apply if the system determines that a collision is imminent. The system may help reduce impact damage or avoid the crash completely.

Using the Collision Warning System

WARNING

The collision warning system's brake support can only help reduce the speed at which a collision occurs. The brake pedal must be pressed just like any typical braking situation.

Distance Alert

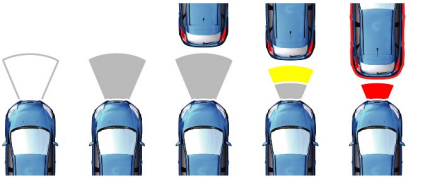


If the distance to the lead vehicle is small, the red warning lamp will illuminate in the instrument cluster.

Note: *The warning lamp is small and below the Distance Indication graphic. It does not flash when Distance Alert is active.*

Distance Indication

Distance Indication provides a graphical indication of the time gap to other vehicles traveling in the same direction. The information display will show one of the graphics below in color.



E190004

Key: Left to right.
Outline - Stand by.
Grey, no object - No object detected or object outside of Distance Indication range.
Grey, with object - Object detected or object within Distance Indication range.
Yellow, with object - Early Distance Indication warning threshold.
Red, with object - Final Distance Indication warning threshold.

Note: *Distance Alert and Distance Indication turns off when adaptive cruise control is switched on. The Distance Indication graphics do not display in the information display unless adaptive cruise control is switched off.*

Adjusting Pre-Collision Assist Settings

If collision warnings are perceived as being too frequent, the warning sensitivity can be reduced, we recommend using the highest sensitivity setting where possible. Setting lower sensitivity would lead to fewer and later system warnings.

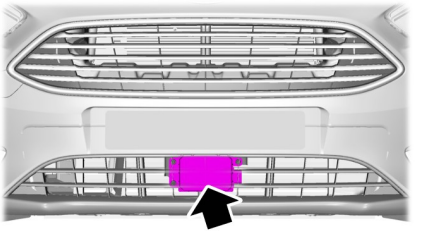
You can adjust the Collision Warning and Distance Alert sensitivity to one of three possible settings by using the information display control. You can also switch the Distance Indication function off using the information display controls. See **General Information** (page 80).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Distance Alert sensitivity

Speed	Sensitivity	Graphic	Distance gap	Time gap
62 mph (100 km/h)	Normal	Grey	Greater than 82 ft (25 m)	Greater than 0.9 seconds
62 mph (100 km/h)	Normal	Yellow	Between 56 ft (17 m) and 82 ft (25 m)	Between 0.6 and 0.9 seconds
62 mph (100 km/h)	Normal	Red	Less than 56 ft (17 m)	Less than 0.6 seconds

Blocked Sensors



E190005

The sensors are located at the center of the lower grille.

If a message regarding a blocked sensor appears in the information display, the radar signals from the sensor have been obstructed. When the sensors are obstructed, a vehicle ahead cannot be detected and the collision warning system does not function. The following table lists possible causes and actions for this message being displayed.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Cause	Action
The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed in some way	Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction
The surface of the radar in the grille is clean but the message remains in the display	Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that it is no longer obstructed
Heavy rain, spray, snow, or fog is interfering with the radar signals	The collision warning system is temporarily disabled. Collision warning should automatically reactivate a short time after the weather conditions improve
Swirling water, or snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals	The collision warning system is temporarily disabled. Collision warning should automatically reactivate a short time after the weather conditions improve

System Limitations

WARNING

The collision warning system's brake support can only help reduce the speed at which a collision occurs. The brake pedal must be pressed just like any typical braking situation.

Due to the nature of radar technology, there may be certain instances where vehicles do not provide a collision warning. These include:

- Stationary vehicles or vehicles moving below 6 mph (10 km/h).
- Pedestrians or objects in the roadway.
- Oncoming vehicles in the same lane.
- Severe weather conditions (see blocked sensor section).
- Debris build-up on the grille near the headlamps (see blocked sensor section).
- Small distance to vehicle ahead.
- Steering wheel and pedal movements are large (very active driving style).

If the front end of the vehicle is hit or damaged, the radar sensing zone may be altered causing missed or false collision warnings. See your authorized dealer to have your collision warning radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS

Use load securing straps to an approved standard, e.g. DIN.

Make sure that you secure all loose items properly.

Place luggage and other loads as low and as far forward as possible within the luggage or loadspace.

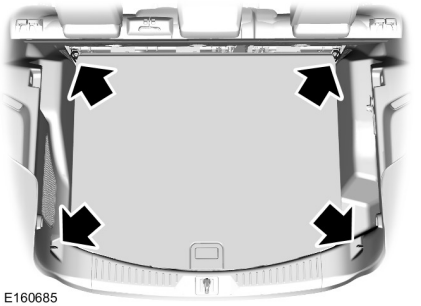
Do not drive with the luggage compartment or rear door open. Exhaust fumes may enter your vehicle.

Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 277).

Do not allow items to contact the rear windows.

Note: *When loading long objects in to your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture be careful not to damage the interior trim.*

LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS



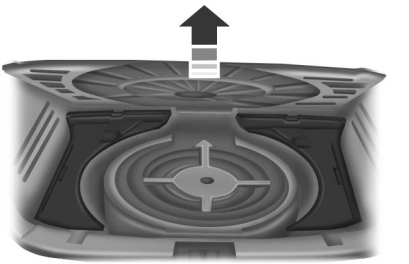
E160685

Luggage Retention Nets

Note: *Your vehicle does not have luggage retention net anchor points fitted behind the first or second row seats.*

REAR UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

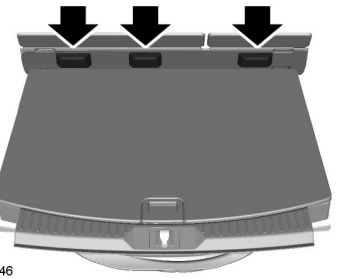
Cargo Management System (If Equipped)



E142445

The system is located in the floor of the cargo area. Lift the handle to open.

Adjustable Load Floor (If Equipped)



E142446

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

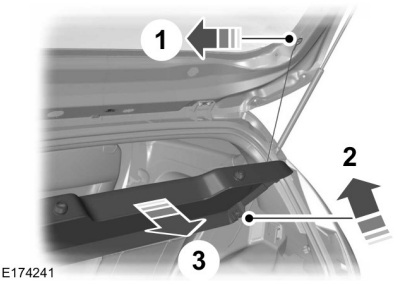
Vehicles with the standard size spare tire can adjust the load floor to two positions. The front of the load floor can be placed either on (for high position) or below (for low position) the ledges behind the rear seats. The rear of the load floor always sits on the two small shelves located on the liftgate trim.

LUGGAGE COVERS

WARNING

Do not place objects on the luggage cover.

Removing the Cover



E174241

ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS

WARNINGS

If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.

Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.

WARNINGS

When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

The maximum recommended load, evenly distributed on the roof rack, is:

- 165 pounds (75 kilograms) for vehicles without a moonroof
- 132 pounds (60 kilograms) for vehicles with a moonroof.

Note: *Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.*

For correct roof rack system function, you must place loads directly on crossbars affixed to the roof rack side rails. When using the roof rack system, we recommend you use Ford Genuine Accessory crossbars designed specifically for your vehicle.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

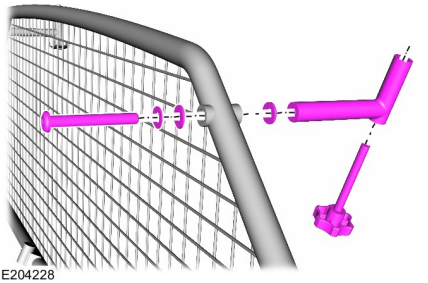
DOG GUARD

WARNING

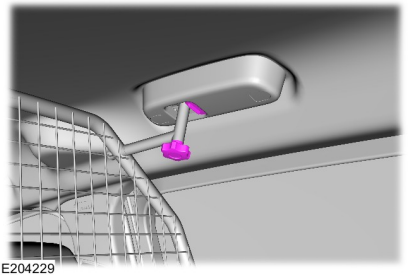
Leave at least 0.4 in (1 cm) space between the dog guard and the seats in front of it.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

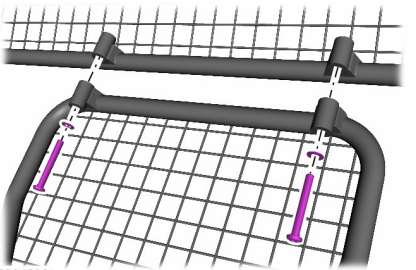
Installing behind the front seats


E204228

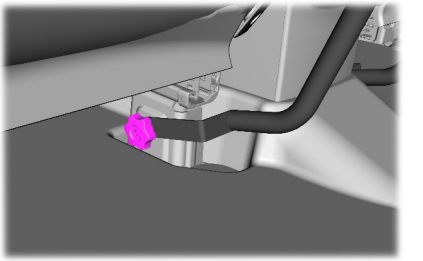
1. Attach the mounting hardware to the grille.


E204229

2. Secure the grille using the mounting hardware into the retainers on the roof. Tighten the handwheels.


E204230

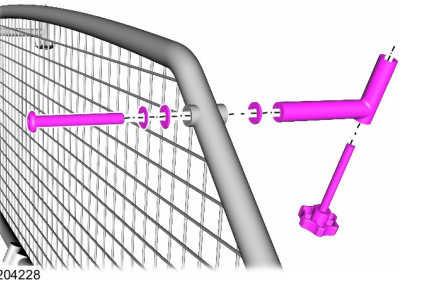
3. Attach the grille to the lower bar with the supplied hardware.


E204231

4. Attach the dog guard to the lower anchor points using the supplied handwheels. Tighten the handwheels at the lower anchor points.

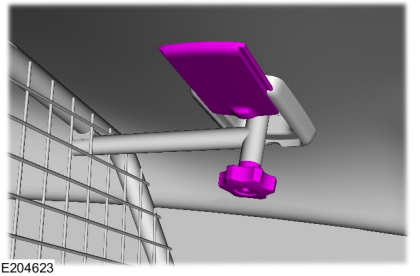
Note: *Passengers should not sit in the second row of seats when the dog guard is installed behind the front seats.*

Installing behind the rear seats

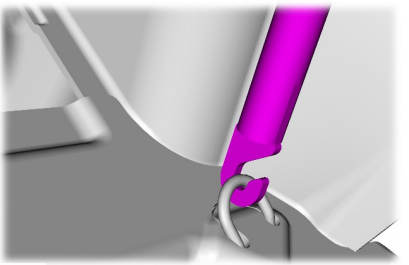

E204228

1. Attach the mounting hardware to the grille.

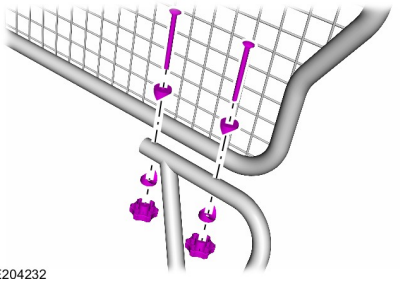
C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing


E204623

2. Secure the grille using the mounting hardware into the retainers on the roof. Do not tighten the handwheels.


E204233

3. Attach the dog guard to the lower anchor points by hooking the lower bar to the anchor points. See **Luggage Anchor Points** (page 184).


E204232

4. Attach the grille to the lower bar with the supplied hardware.
5. Tighten the handwheels.
6. Place the small package tray inside the luggage compartment.

Remove in the reverse order.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

TOWING A TRAILER

WARNINGS

Do not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h).

The rear tire pressures must be increased by 2.9 psi (0.2 bar) above specification. Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the tire sidewall. This could cause serious personal injury. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 253).

Do not exceed the maximum gross train weight stated on your vehicle identification plate. This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 277).

Do not exceed the maximum permissible trailer vertical weight on the tow ball as stated in the vehicle specification chart. This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 275).

The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

When towing a trailer:

- Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.
- Do not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.
- Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unloaded vehicle, you should place the load in your trailer toward the front, within the maximum vertical load, as this gives the best stability. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 275).
- The trailer vertical weight on the tow ball is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.
- The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissable weight. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 275).
- Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying. See **Trailer Sway Control** (page 189).
- Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill gradient.

Note: *The maximum permissible trailer vertical weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer vertical weight may be lower.*

The stability of your vehicle-to-trailer combination depends on the quality of the trailer.

Towing a trailer changes the handling characteristics of your vehicle and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behavior according to the trailer load.

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% and altitudes up to 3,281 ft (1,000 m) when towing a trailer. In mountainous regions the engine performance decreases due to lower air density with increasing altitude. In high altitude regions above 3,281 ft (1,000 m), you should reduce the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight by 10% for every additional 3,281 ft (1,000 m).

Note: *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have a tow bar fitted. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

TRAILER SWAY CONTROL

If the trailer begins to sway the stability control warning lamp flashes in the information display. The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Check the vertical weight on the tow ball and trailer load distribution. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 275). See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 275).

Note: *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.*

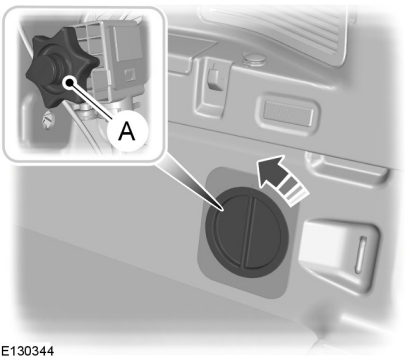
Note: *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*

Note: *In some cases, if your vehicle speed is too high, the system may turn on multiple times, gradually reducing your vehicle speed.*

TOW BALL

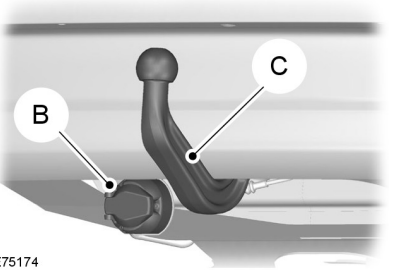
Retractable Tow Ball - Manually Operated

Only move the tow ball arm with your hand. Never use your foot or auxiliary tools as damage to the mechanism may result.



E130344

You can turn the retractable tow ball arm through 90 degrees using the handwheel **A**.



E75174

A 13-pin trailer socket **B** is provided underneath the rear bumper next to the tow ball arm **C**.

Swivelling the Tow Ball In

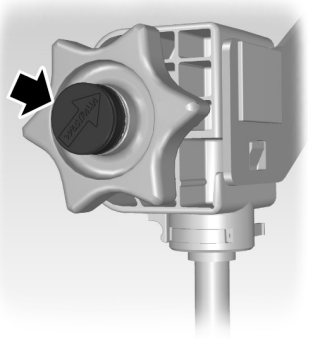
WARNINGS

Keep your hands away from the handwheel as it rotates during the locking process.

You will hear a warning tone when the tow ball arm is not in one of the locked positions. If you do not hear the tone when moving the tow ball arm, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by an authorised dealer.

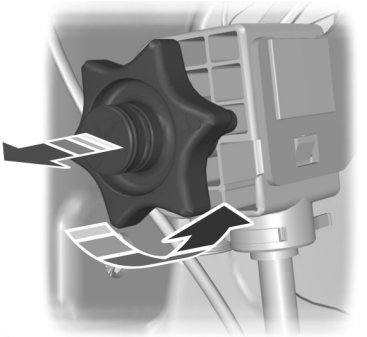
Before retracting the ball neck into its stowage position always unhitch the trailer or dismantle load carriers and their attachments. Dismantle attachments for tracking stabilization. Remove the plug for the trailer power supply and the adapter from the socket. Failure to do so may result in damage to the bumper.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



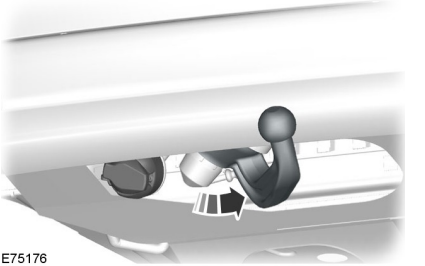
E130345

1. Insert the key into the handwheel and turn it clockwise to unlock.



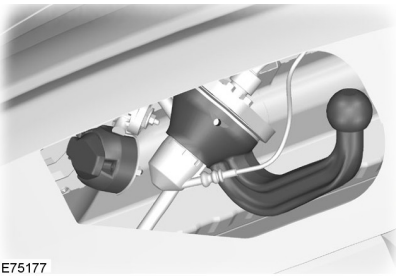
E130346

2. Pull the handwheel out and turn it counterclockwise to the stop. The tow ball arm automatically swivels into a midway position.



E75176

3. Release the handwheel. The tow ball arm is not locked. This is indicated by the warning tone and the handwheel projects about five millimeters (0.2 inch) from its housing.



E75177

4. Manually turn the tow ball arm steadily from its midway position to the stop in the stowage position. The tow ball arm automatically locks in the end position. The locking process is clearly audible if the level of background noise is not too high. When the locking process is completed, the warning tone stops and the handwheel will return to its original position.
5. Turn the key counterclockwise and remove it.

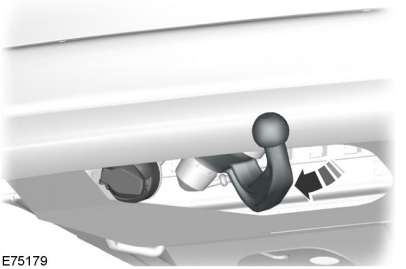
C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Swivelling the Tow Ball Out

WARNING

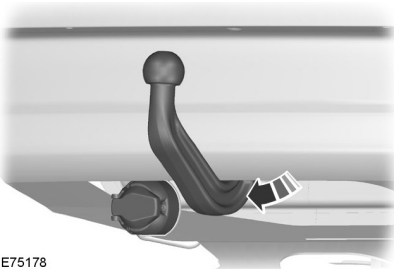
You will hear a warning tone when the tow ball arm is not in one of the locked positions. If you do not hear the tone when moving the tow ball arm, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by a properly trained technician.

1. Insert the key into the handwheel and turn it clockwise to unlock.
2. Pull the handwheel out and turn it counterclockwise to the stop. The tow ball arm automatically swivels into the midway position.



E75179

3. Release the handwheel. The tow ball arm is not locked. This is indicated by the warning tone and the handwheel projects about five millimeters (0.2 inch) from its housing.



E75178

4. Manually turn the tow ball arm steadily from its midway position to the stop in the operating position. The tow ball arm automatically locks in the end position. The locking process is clearly audible if the level of background noise is not too high. When the locking process is completed, the warning tone stops and the handwheel will return to its original position.
5. Turn the key counterclockwise and remove it.

Driving with a Trailer

WARNING

If any of the conditions below cannot be met, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by a properly trained technician.

Before starting your journey, make sure that the tow ball arm is properly locked. Check that:

- there is no warning tone when the locking procedure has been completed
- the handwheel is in its housing and that there is no gap
- you have locked the handwheel (counterclockwise) and removed the key
- the tow ball arm is locked. It must not move when jerked.

Maintenance

The towing hitch and control unit are maintenance free. Do not grease or oil them.

Only the manufacturer should carry out repairs or dismantle the towing hitch.

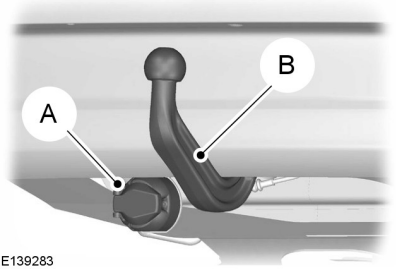
If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, do not direct the spray onto the swivel joint of the tow ball arm.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Retractable Tow Ball - Electrically Operated

You will hear a warning tone when the tow ball arm is not in one of the locked positions. The warning tone will switch off after 30 seconds. If you do not hear the tone when moving the tow ball arm or at system activation, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by a properly trained technician.

Only move the tow ball arm with your hand. Never use your foot or auxiliary tools as damage to the mechanism may result.



E139283

A 13-pin trailer socket **A** is provided underneath the rear bumper next to the tow ball arm **B**.

Releasing the Tow Ball Arm

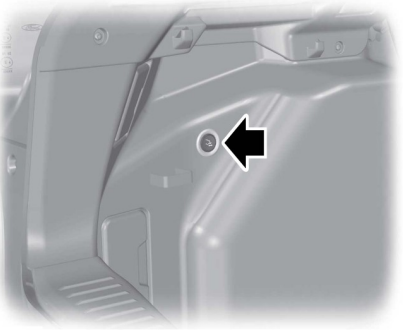
Do not touch the tow ball arm during the release process.

Note: *If the release process is interrupted, for example an obstacle in the way or loss of power supply, the system will need to be reset. To reset the system, repeat the release process.*

Note: *The lamp in the switch illuminates when the system is activated.*

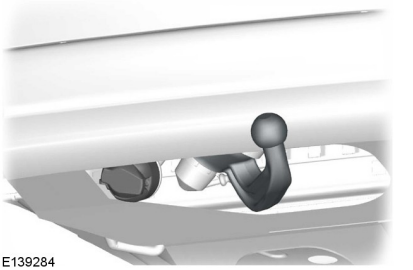
The following conditions must be met before releasing the tow ball arm:

- The luggage compartment lid must be open.
- The ignition must be off.
- No plug must be attached to the 13-pin trailer socket.
- The battery voltage must be greater than 11 volts.



E132909

1. Press the button until it illuminates to activate the system.
2. Press the button again within four seconds to release the tow ball arm.



E139284

The tow ball arm automatically swivels into the lowered position.

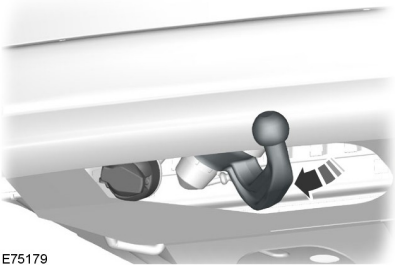
If the tow ball arm fails to release, press the button again for 15 seconds.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

WARNING

If it still fails to release, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by a properly trained technician.

Swivelling the Tow Ball Arm Out


E75179

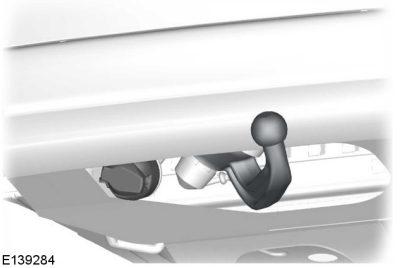
Move the tow ball arm to the operating position. The tow ball arm automatically locks in the operating position. The locking process is clearly audible and the warning tone will stop.

Swivelling the Tow Ball In

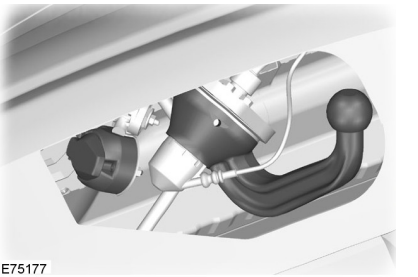
WARNING

Before swivelling the tow ball arm in, always unhitch the trailer or dismantle load carriers and their attachments. Dismantle attachments for tracking stabilization. Remove the plug for the trailer power supply and the adapter from the socket. Failure to do so may result in damage to the bumper.

1. Release the tow ball arm. See releasing the tow ball arm.


E139284

2. The tow ball arm automatically swivels into the lowered position.


E75177

3. Move the tow ball arm to the stop in the stowed position. The tow ball arm automatically locks in the stowed position. The locking process is clearly audible and the warning tone will stop.

Fault Conditions

If the tow ball arm release button is illuminated or you hear a warning tone when the ignition switch is in position II, repeat the release process.

If you pull on the tow ball arm during the release process, the system will stop moving to prevent an overload condition. To reset the system, press the release button for 15 seconds.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Driving with a Trailer

WARNINGS

In the event of a vehicle breakdown, disconnect the trailer before towing the vehicle.

If any of the conditions below cannot be met, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by a properly trained technician.

Before starting your journey, make sure that the tow ball arm is properly locked. Check that:

- there is no warning tone when the locking procedure has been completed
- the tow ball arm is locked. It must not move when jerked.

Maintenance

Note: *The towing hitch and control unit are maintenance-free. Do not grease or oil them.*

Note: *Only the manufacturer should carry out repairs or dismantle the towing hitch.*

Note: *If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, do not direct the spray onto the swivel joint of the tow ball arm.*

Detachable Tow Ball

WARNINGS

When not in use, always transport the tow ball arm securely fastened in the luggage compartment.

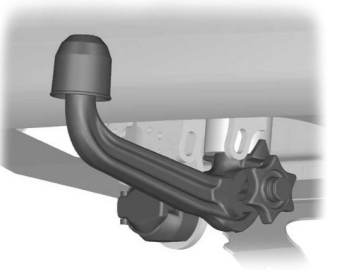
Take special care when fitting the tow ball arm as the safety of your vehicle and the trailer depends on this.

Do not use any tools for mounting or dismounting the tow ball arm.

Do not modify the trailer coupling.

WARNINGS

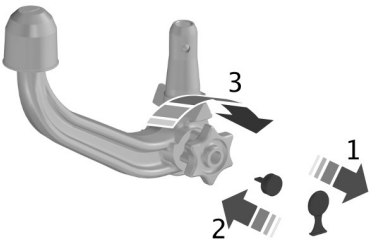
Do not disassemble or repair the tow ball arm.



E71328

A 13-pin trailer socket and the tow ball arm seat are provided under the rear bumper. Turn the trailer socket down through 90 degrees until it engages in the end position.

Unlocking the Tow Ball Arm Mechanism



E71329

1. Remove the protecting cap.
2. Insert the key and turn it counterclockwise to unlock.
3. Hold the tow ball arm. Pull the handwheel out and turn it clockwise until it clicks.

Note: *The red mark on the handwheel must align with the white dot on the tow ball.*

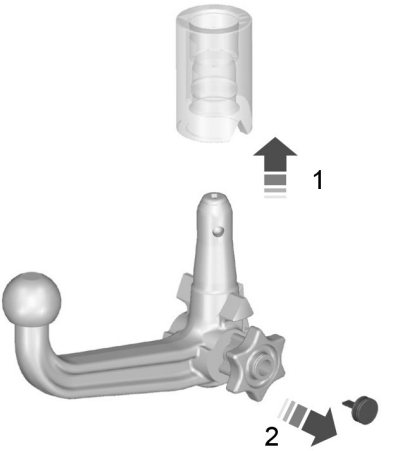
4. Release the handwheel. The tow ball arm is unlocked.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Inserting the Tow Ball Arm

WARNING

The tow ball arm may only be inserted when completely unlocked.



E71330

Note: *Pull out the plug.*

1. Insert the tow ball arm vertically and press it upward until it engages.

Note: *Do not hold your hand near the handwheel.*

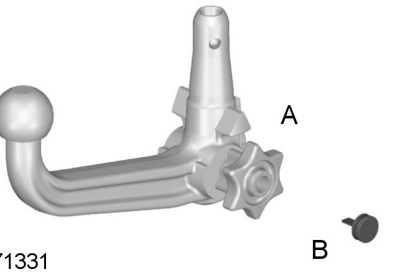
Note: *The green mark on the handwheel must align with the white dot on the tow ball.*

2. Turn the key clockwise and remove the key to lock the tow ball.
3. Pull the protecting cap from the key bow and press it onto the lock.

Driving with a Trailer

WARNING

If any of the below conditions cannot be met, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by an authorized dealer.



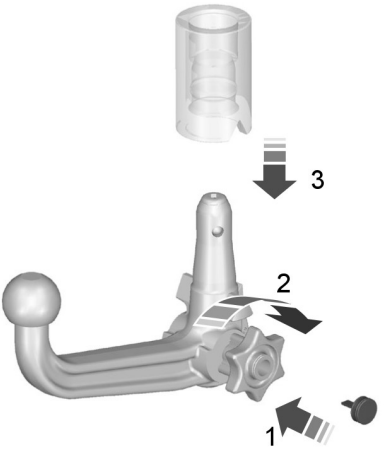
E71331

Before starting your journey, make sure that the tow ball arm is correctly locked. Check that:

- the green mark on the handwheel is aligned with the white dot on the tow ball
- the handwheel (A) is correctly fitted to the tow ball arm
- you have removed the key (B)
- the tow ball arm is securely positioned.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Removing the Tow Ball Arm



E71332

Note: *Unhitch the trailer.*

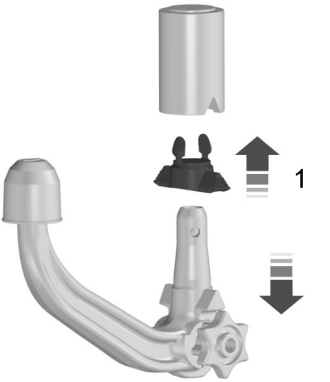
1. Remove the protecting cap. Insert the key and unlock.
2. Hold the tow ball arm. Pull the handwheel out, turn it clockwise against the stop.
3. Remove the tow ball arm.
4. Release the handwheel.

When unlocked in this way, the tow ball arm can be reinserted at any time.

Driving without a Trailer

WARNING

Never unlock the tow ball arm with the trailer attached.



E94771

Remove the tow ball arm. Insert the plug into its seat (1).

Maintenance

WARNING

Remove the tow ball arm and protect the seat with the plug before steam cleaning your vehicle.

Keep the system clean. Periodically lubricate bearings, sliding surfaces, and locking balls with resin free grease or oil and the lock with graphite.

In case of loss, replacement keys are available from the manufacturer by stating the number on the lock cylinder.

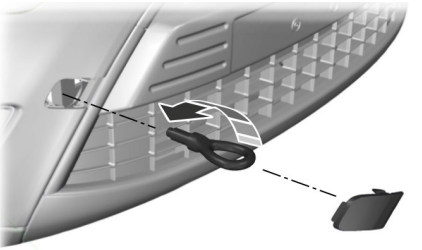
TOWING POINTS

WARNING

The towing eye has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it. Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Front Towing Eye



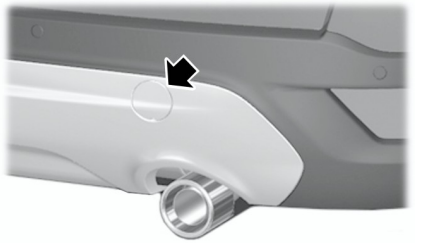
E99490

Space is provided in the spare wheel well.

You must carry the towing eye in your vehicle at all times.

Remove the cover and install the towing eye.

Rear Towing Eye



E152139

Note: *If your vehicle has a tow bar, you cannot install the towing eye at the rear of your vehicle. Use the tow bar to tow other vehicles.*

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

WARNINGS

You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed. Failure to follow this warning could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.

If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.

Too much tension on a tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

When towing your vehicle you must select neutral. Failure to follow this warning could damage the transmission and may lead to a crash or injury.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle. See **Towing Points** (page 196).

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example; right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Do not exceed 31 mph (50 km/h). See **Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels** (page 197).

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WARNINGS

You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed. Failure to follow this warning could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

You must make sure the transmission selector lever is placed in position **N**. Failure to follow this warning could damage the transmission and may lead to a crash or injury.

The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and allow for increased stopping distances and heavier steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock, make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position before you tow.

Too much tension on a tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

Emergency Towing

If your vehicle is disabled without access to wheel dollies, a car-hauling trailer, or a flatbed transport vehicle it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground. You may do this under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so that it is towed in a forward direction.
- The transmission selector lever is placed in position **N**. If the transmission gear shift lever cannot be moved to position **N**, it may need to be overridden. See **Transmission** (page 136).
- Maximum speed is 30 mph (50 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 mi (80 km).

Note: *If you need to exceed a speed of 30 mph (50 km/h) and a distance of 50 mi (80 km) while towing, you must lift the drive wheels clear of the ground.*

Note: *We recommend you do not tow with the drive wheels on the ground. However, if it is required to move the vehicle from a dangerous location, do not tow your vehicle faster than 30 mph (50 km/h) or farther than 50 mi (80 km).*

WARNING

In the event of a mechanical failure of the transmission, do not use individual axle carriers. All wheels must be lifted clear of the ground on a level platform.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle that is being towed.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle. See **Towing Points** (page 196).

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example; right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

Note: *Using a rigid towing bar is the safest way to tow a vehicle.*

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

BREAKING-IN

Tires

WARNING

New tires need to be run-in for approximately 300 miles (500 kilometers). During this time, you may experience different driving characteristics.

Brakes and Clutch

WARNING

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 100 miles (150 kilometers) in town and for the first 1000 miles (1500 kilometers) on freeways.

Engine

WARNING

Avoid driving too fast during the first 1000 miles (1500 kilometers). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

Vehicles With a Diesel Engine

During the first 2000 miles (3000 kilometers), you may notice a ticking sound when your vehicle slows down. This is due to adjustments of your new diesel engine and is normal.

REDUCED ENGINE PERFORMANCE

WARNING

Continued operation will increase the engine temperature and cause the engine to shut down completely.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge needle moves to the upper limit position, the engine is overheating. See **Gauges** (page 74).

You must only drive your vehicle for a short distance if the engine overheats. The distance you can travel depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain. The engine will continue to operate with limited power for a short time.

If the engine temperature continues to rise, the fuel supply to the engine will reduce. The air conditioning will switch off and the engine cooling fan will operate continually.

1. Reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Switch the engine off immediately to prevent severe engine damage.
3. Wait for the engine to cool down.
4. Check the coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 237).
5. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

ECONOMICAL DRIVING

The following will help to improve fuel consumption.

Tire Pressures

Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy. For best results use the economy pressures. See **Tire Pressures** (page 269).

Gear Shifting

Use the highest drivable gear appropriate for the road conditions.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Anticipation

Adjust your vehicle speed and the distance to other vehicles without the need for heavy braking or acceleration.

Efficient Speed

Higher speeds use more fuel. Reduce your cruising speed on open roads.

Accessories

Try not to add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.

Electrical Systems

Switch off all electrical systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below -13ºF (-25ºC).

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

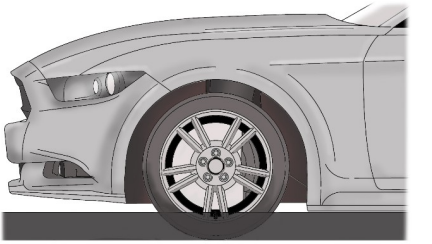
WARNING

Do not drive through flowing or deep water as you may lose control of your vehicle.

Note: *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

Note: *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



E176360

When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction may be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the exterior lights work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

FLOOR MATS

WARNINGS

Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle. Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed. Only use floor mats that are firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

WARNINGS

Always make sure that the floor mats are properly attached to the retention posts in the carpet that are supplied with your vehicle. Floor mats must be properly secured to both retention posts to make sure mats do not shift out of position.

Never place floor mats or any other covering in the vehicle foot well that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.

Never place floor mats or any other covering on top of already installed floor mats. Floor mats should always rest on top of vehicle carpeting surface and not another floor mat or other covering. Additional floor mats or any other covering will reduce the pedal clearance and potentially interfere with pedal operation.

Check attachment of floor mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning or replacement.

Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or attachment instructions can potentially cause interference with pedal operation causing a loss of vehicle control.


E142666

To install floor mats, position the floor mat so that the eyelet is over the retention post and press down to lock in.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS



The hazard warning button is located on the instrument panel. Use it when your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

Press the button to turn on the hazard warning function, and the front and rear direction indicators will flash.

Press the button again to turn them off.

Note: *If used when the engine is not running, the battery will lose charge. There may be insufficient power to restart your engine.*

Note: *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the hazard warning flashers may flash if you brake heavily.*

FIRST AID KIT

The first aid kit can be stowed under the front passenger seat or in the luggage compartment.

WARNING TRIANGLE

The warning triangle can be stowed under the front passenger seat.

FUEL SHUTOFF

WARNING

Failure to inspect and, if necessary, repair fuel leaks after a collision may increase the risk of fire and serious injury. Ford Motor Company recommends that the fuel system be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision.

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle includes a fuel pump shutoff feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shutoff.

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision, you may restart your vehicle. For vehicles equipped with a key system:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 to re-enable the fuel pump.

For vehicles equipped with a push button start system:

1. Press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
2. Press the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch on the ignition.
3. Remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
4. You can either attempt to start the engine by pressing the brake pedal and the **START/STOP** button, or switch on the ignition only by pressing the **START/STOP** button without pressing the brake pedal. Both ways re-enable the fuel system.

Note: *When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once your vehicle determines that the systems are safe, then the vehicle will allow you to restart.*

Note: *In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact an authorized dealer.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

WARNINGS

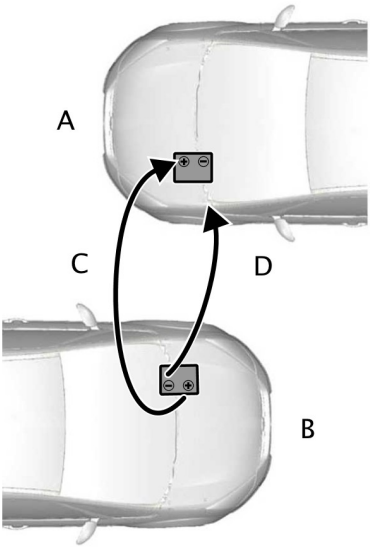
Do not use fuel lines, engine rocker covers or the intake manifold as grounding points.

Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.

Always use booster cables with insulated clamps and adequate size cable.

Note: *Do not disconnect the battery from your vehicle's electrical system.*

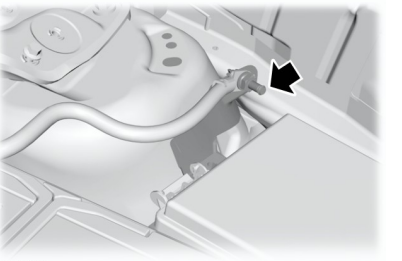
To Connect the Booster Cables



E102925

A Flat battery vehicle
B Booster battery vehicle
C Positive connection cable
D Negative connection cable

1. Position the vehicles so that they do not touch one another.
2. Switch off the engine and any electrical equipment.
3. Connect the positive (+) terminal of vehicle B with the positive (+) terminal of vehicle A (cable C).



E152134

4. Connect the negative (-) terminal of vehicle B to the ground connection of vehicle A (cable D).

WARNINGS

Do not connect directly to the negative (–) terminal of the flat battery.

Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

To Start the Engine

1. Run the engine of vehicle B at a moderately high speed.
2. Start the engine of vehicle A.
3. Run both vehicles for a minimum of three minutes before disconnecting the cables.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

WARNING


Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system flashes the direction indicator lamps in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy) or the safety belt pretensioners.

The lamps turn off when:

- You press the hazard control button.
- You press the panic button (if equipped) on the remote entry transmitter.
- Your vehicle runs out of power.

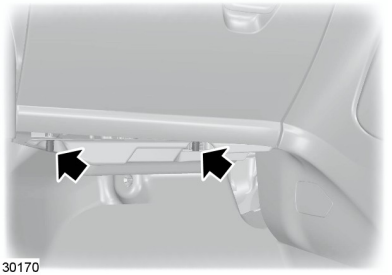
C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

FUSE BOX LOCATIONS

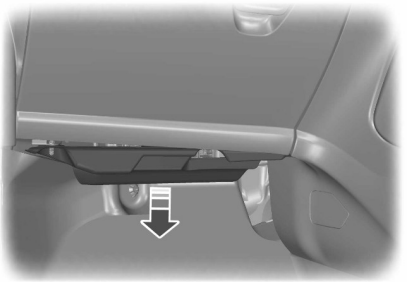
Engine Compartment Fuse Box

This fuse box is located in the engine compartment. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 230).

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



E130170



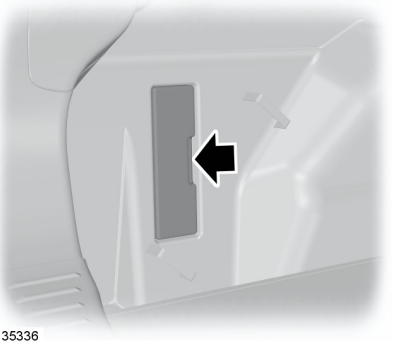
E130171

1. Pinch the retaining clips to release the cover.
2. Lower the fuse box cover and pull it towards you.

Install in the reverse order.

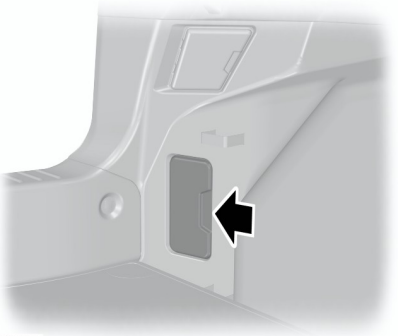
Luggage Compartment Fuse Box

Sedan



E135336

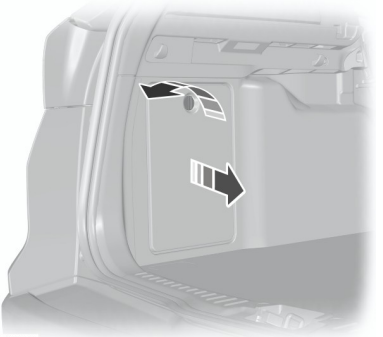
Five-door



E135337

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

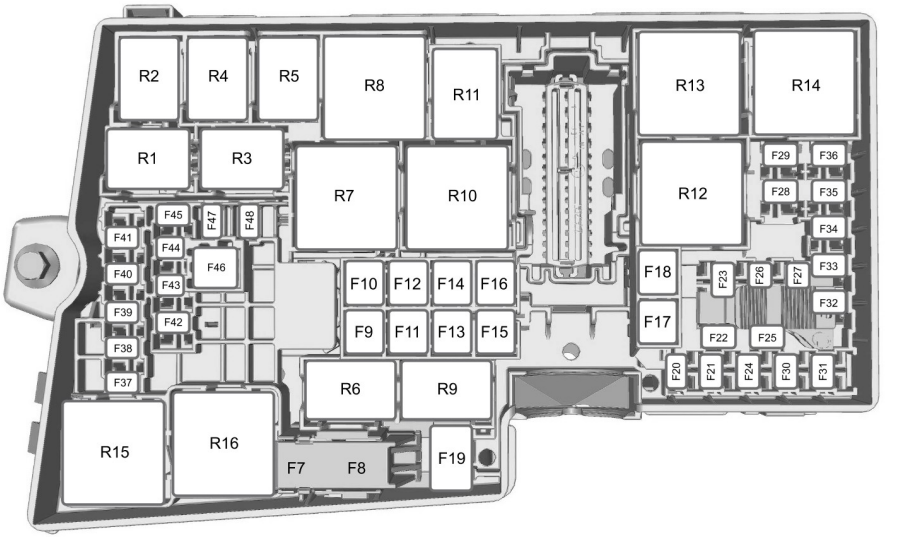
Wagon



E135338

FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART - VEHICLES BUILT UP TO: 22-06-2015

Engine Compartment Fuse Box



E129925

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F7	40A**	Anti-lock brake system. Electronic stability program.
F8	30A**	Electronic stability program.
F9	20A**	Headlamp washer.
F10	40A**	Blower motor.
F11	30A**	Auto-Start-Stop module.
F12	30A**	Powertrain control module.
F13	30A**	Starter relay.
F14	40A**	Right-hand heated windshield element.
F15	25A**	Intercooler fan (1.0L).
	40A**	Cooling fan relay 1.
F16	40A**	Left-hand heated windshield element.
F17	20A**	Auxiliary heater.
F18	20A**	Windshield wipers.
F19	5A*	Anti-lock brake system. Electronic stability program.
F20	15A*	Horn.
F21	5A*	Brake lamps.
F22	15A*	Battery monitor system.
F23	5A*	Relay coils. Lighting control.
F24	20A*	Luggage compartment power point.
F25	-	Not used.
F26	25A*	Transmission control module (TMC 6F35).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
	15A*	Transmission control module (TMC MPS6).
F27	15A*	Air conditioning clutch.
F28	7.5A*	Rear view camera. Collision warning system.
F29	-	Not used.
F30	5A*	Powertrain control module.
F31	-	Not used.
F32	10A*	Powertrain control module. Cooling fan module relay.
F33	15A*	Powertrain control module. Ignition coils.
F34	10A*	Powertrain control module.
F35	10A*	Water-in-fuel sensor. Powertrain control module. Ignition coils.
F36	-	Not used.
F37	-	Not used.
F38	15A*	Powertrain control module.
F39	5A*	Headlamp leveling.
F40	5A*	Electronic power assist steering.
F41	20A*	Body control module.
F42	-	Not used.
F43	15A*	Headlamp leveling. Adaptive front lighting unit.
F44	5A*	Adaptive cruise control.
F45	10A*	Heated washer nozzle.
F46	25A**	Cooling fan.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F47	-	Not used.
F48	15A*	Diesel particulate filter vaporizer.

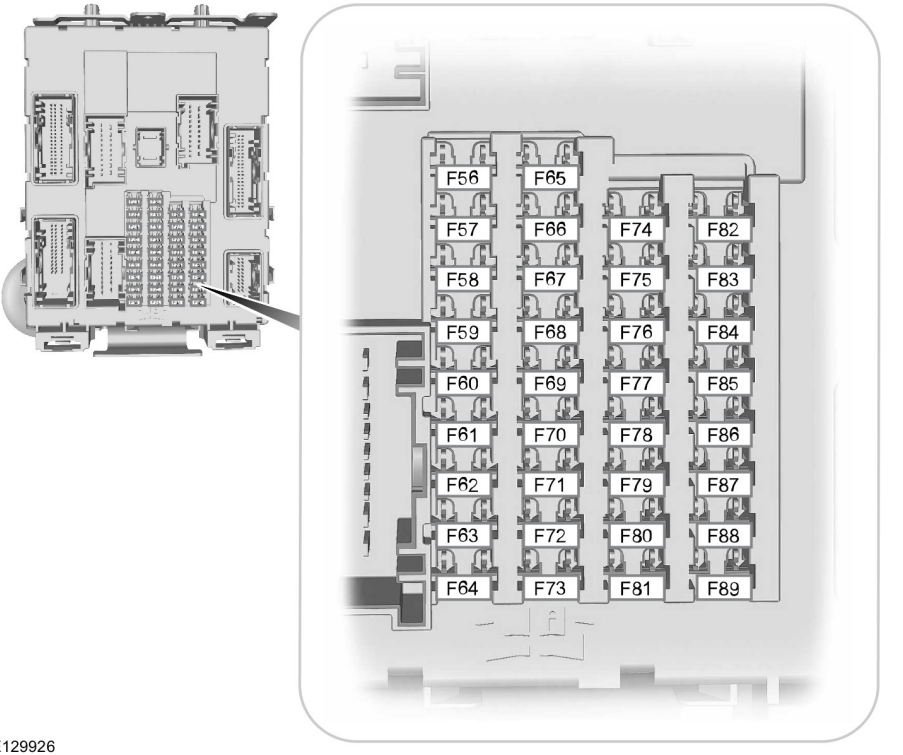
*Mini fuses

**Cartridge fuses

Relay	Circuits switched
R1	Intercooler fan.
R2	Horn.
R3	Diesel particulate filter vaporizer.
R4	Front wiper on/off relay.
R5	Headlamp washer.
R6	Front wiper hi/low relay.
R7	Heated windshield.
R8	Cooling fan relay.
R9	Not used.
R10	Cooling fan relay.
R11	Air conditioning clutch.
R12	Cooling fan relay.
R13	Blower motor.
R14	Engine control module.
R15	Starter relay.
R16	Ignition.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



E129926

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F56	20A	Fuel pump.
F57	-	Not used.
F58	-	Not used.
F59	5A	Passive anti-theft transceiver.
F60	10A	Interior lighting. Driver door switch pack. Glove box lamp.

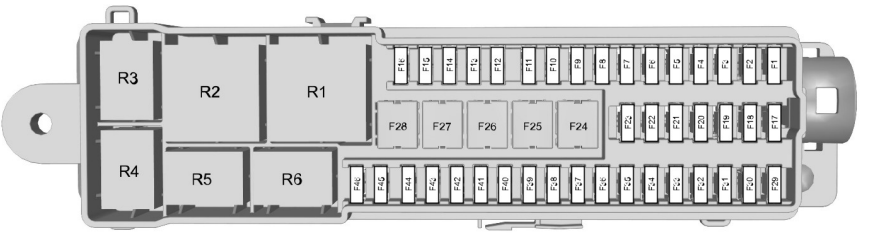
C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
		Ambient lighting.
F61	20A	Front cigar lighter. Rear auxiliary power points.
F62	5A	Autowipers. Humidity sensor. Auto-dimming interior mirror.
F63	10A	Adaptive cruise control.
F64	-	Not used.
F65	10A	Liftgate release.
F66	20A	Driver door lock. Fuel door lock. Central double locking system.
F67	7.5A	SYNC module. Global positioning system module. Information and entertainment display.
F68	15A	Electric steering column lock.
F69	5A	Instrument cluster.
F70	20A	Central locking system.
F71	7.5A	Air conditioning.
F72	7.5A	Steering wheel module.
F73	7.5A	Data link connector. Battery backup sounder.
F74	15A	High beam.
F75	15A	Front fog lamps.
F76	10A	Reversing lamps.
F77	20A	Front and rear windshield washer pump.
F78	5A	Ignition switch. Push button ignition switch. Keyless vehicle module.
F79	15A	Audio unit. Hazard flasher switch. Electronic finish panel.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F80	20A	Moonroof.
F81	5A	Interior motion sensor. Radio frequency receiver. Sunshade.
F82	20A	Front and rear windshield washer pump.
F83	20A	Central locking system.
F84	20A	Driver door unlock. Fuel door unlock. Central double locking system.
F85	7.5A	Air conditioning. Rear wiper relay. Auxiliary heater. Radio. Adaptive cruise control.
F86	10A	Restraints control module. Occupant classification system.
F87	15A	Heated steering wheel.
F88	20A	Voltage quality module.
F89	-	Not used.

Luggage Compartment Fuse Box



E129927

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F1	5A*	Handsfree liftgate.
F2	-	Not used.
F3	5A*	Keyless vehicle door handles.
F4	25A*	Front left door control unit.
F5	25A*	Front right door control unit.
F6	25A*	Rear left door control unit.
F7	25A*	Rear right door control unit.
F8	10A*	Anti-theft alarm.
F9	25A*	Driver seat.
F10	25A*	Power windows.
F11	5A*	Relay coil feed.
F12	-	Not used.
F13	-	Not used.
F14	-	Not used.
F15	-	Not used.
F16	-	Not used.
F17	-	Not used.
F18	-	Not used.
F19	-	Not used.
F20	-	Not used.
F21	-	Not used.
F22	-	Not used.
F23	-	Not used.
F24	30A**	DC/AC power converter.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F25	25A**	Power operated tailgate.
F26	40A**	Trailer tow module.
F27	30A**	Rear window defroster.
F28	-	Not used.
F29	5A*	Blind spot monitor. Lane keeping system. Active City Stop. Rear view camera.
F30	5A*	Parking aid module.
F31	-	Not used.
F32	5A*	DC/AC power converter.
F33	15A*	Rear window wiper relay.
F34	15A*	Driver heated seat.
F35	15A*	Passenger heated seat.
F36	-	Not used.
F37	15A*	Sunshade.
F38	-	Not used.
F39	-	Not used.
F40	-	Not used.
F41	-	Not used.
F42	-	Not used.
F43	-	Not used.
F44	10A*	Power exterior mirrors.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F45	7.5A*	Heated exterior mirrors.
F46	-	Not used.

*Mini fuses

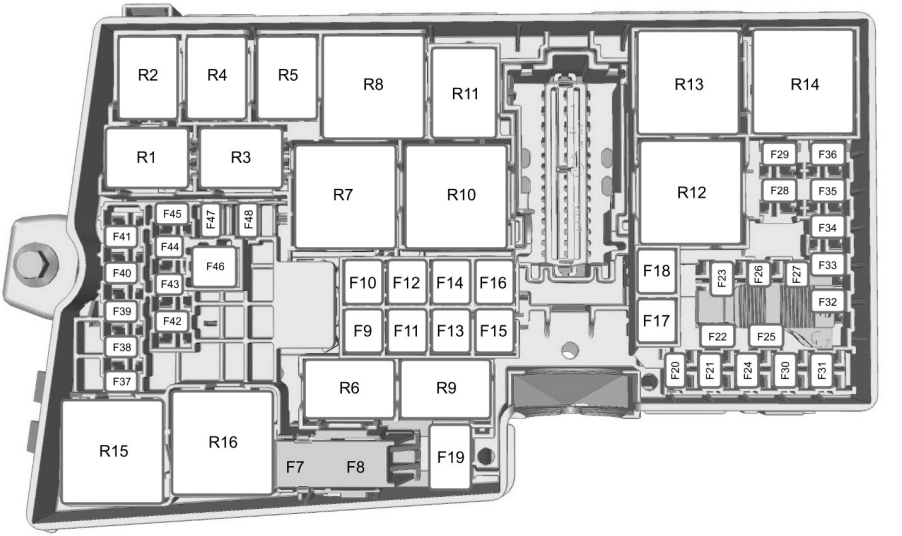
**Cartridge fuses

Relay	Circuits switched
R1	Ignition switch.
R2	Heated rear window.
R3	Rear window wiper.
R4	Not used.
R5	Anti-theft alarm horn.
R6	Delayed accessory power.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART - VEHICLES BUILT FROM: 23-06-2015

Engine Compartment Fuse Box



E129925

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F7	40A**	Anti-lock brake system. Electronic stability program.
F8	30A**	Electronic stability program.
F9	20A**	Headlamp washer.
F10	40A**	Blower motor.
F11	30A**	Auto-Start-Stop module.
F12	30A**	Powertrain control module.
F13	30A**	Starter relay.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F14	40A**	Right-hand heated windshield element.
F15	25A**	Intercooler fan (1.0L).
	40A**	Cooling fan relay 1.
F16	40A**	Left-hand heated windshield element.
F17	20A**	Auxiliary heater.
F18	20A**	Windshield wipers.
F19	5A*	Anti-lock brake system. Electronic stability program.
F20	15A*	Horn.
F21	5A*	Brake lamps.
F22	15A*	Battery monitor system.
F23	5A*	Relay coils. Lighting control.
F24	20A*	Luggage compartment power point.
F25	-	Not used.
F26	25A*	Transmission control module (TMC 6F35).
	15A*	Transmission control module (TMC MPS6).
F27	15A*	Air conditioning clutch.
F28	7.5A*	Rear view camera. Collision warning system.
F29	-	Not used.
F30	5A*	Powertrain control module.
F31	-	Not used.
F32	10A*	Powertrain control module. Cooling fan module relay.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F33	15A*	Powertrain control module. Ignition coils.
F34	10A*	Powertrain control module.
F35	10A*	Water-in-fuel sensor. Powertrain control module. Ignition coils.
F36	-	Not used.
F37	-	Not used.
F38	15A*	Powertrain control module.
F39	5A*	Headlamp leveling.
F40	5A*	Electronic power assist steering.
F41	20A*	Body control module.
F42	-	Not used.
F43	15A*	Headlamp leveling. Adaptive front lighting unit.
F44	5A*	Adaptive cruise control.
F45	10A*	Heated washer nozzle.
F46	25A**	Cooling fan.
F47	-	Not used.
F48	15A*	Diesel particulate filter vaporizer.

*Mini fuses

**Cartridge fuses

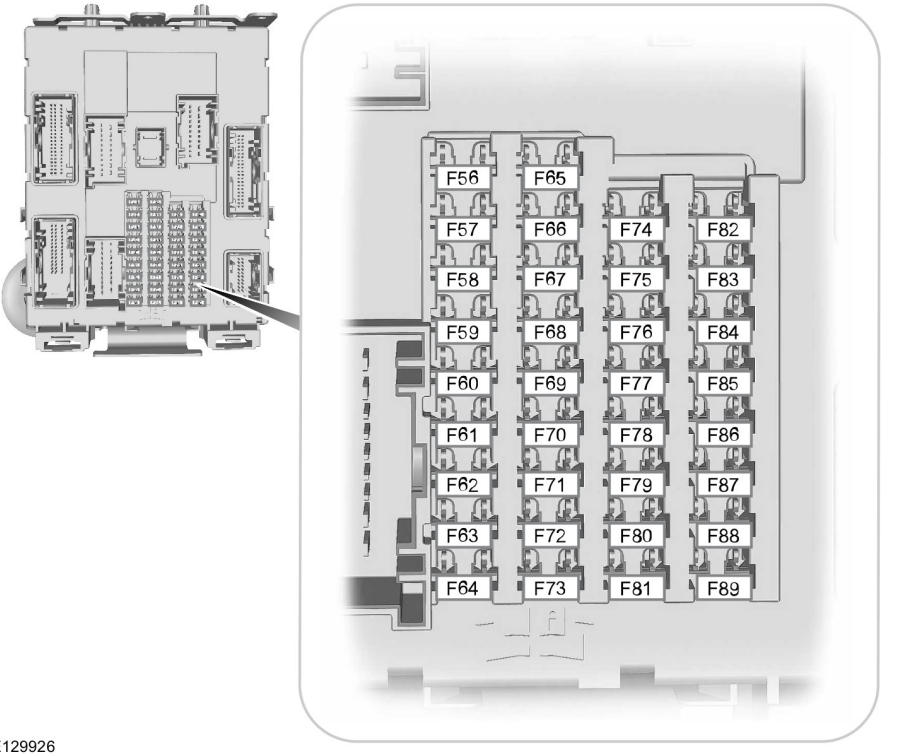
Relay	Circuits switched
R1	Intercooler fan.
R2	Horn.
R3	Diesel particulate filter vaporizer.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Relay	Circuits switched
R4	Cooling fan relay.
R5	Front wiper on/off relay.
R6	Front wiper hi/low relay.
R7	Heated windshield.
R8	Cooling fan relay.
R9	Headlamp washer.
R10	Starter relay.
R11	Air conditioning clutch.
R12	Cooling fan relay.
R13	Blower motor.
R14	Engine control module.
R15	Glow plug relay.
R16	Ignition.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



E129926

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F56	20A	Fuel pump.
F57	-	Not used.
F58	-	Not used.
F59	5A	Passive anti-theft transceiver.
F60	10A	Interior lighting. Driver door switch pack. Glove box lamp.

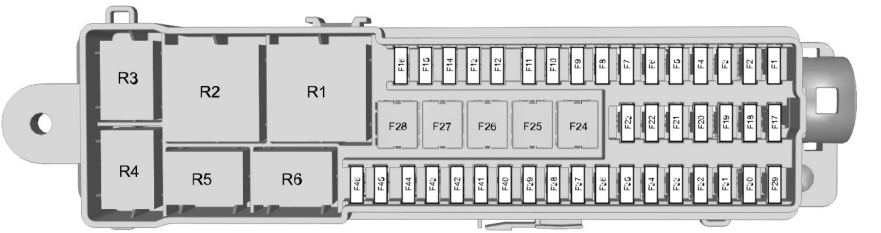
C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
		Ambient lighting.
F61	20A	Front cigar lighter. Rear auxiliary power points.
F62	5A	Autowipers. Humidity sensor. Auto-dimming interior mirror.
F63	10A	Adaptive cruise control.
F64	-	Not used.
F65	10A	Liftgate release.
F66	20A	Driver door lock. Fuel door lock. Central double locking system.
F67	7.5A	SYNC module. Global positioning system module. Information and entertainment display.
F68	15A	Electric steering column lock.
F69	5A	Instrument cluster.
F70	20A	Central locking system.
F71	7.5A	Air conditioning.
F72	7.5A	Steering wheel module.
F73	7.5A	Data link connector. Battery backup sounder.
F74	15A	High beam.
F75	15A	Front fog lamps.
F76	10A	Reversing lamps.
F77	20A	Front and rear windshield washer pump.
F78	5A	Ignition switch. Push button ignition switch. Keyless vehicle module.
F79	15A	Audio unit. Hazard flasher switch. Electronic finish panel.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F80	20A	Moonroof.
F81	5A	Interior motion sensor. Radio frequency receiver. Sunshade.
F82	20A	Front and rear windshield washer pump.
F83	20A	Central locking system.
F84	20A	Driver door unlock. Fuel door unlock. Central double locking system.
F85	7.5A	Air conditioning. Rear wiper relay. Auxiliary heater. Radio. Adaptive cruise control.
F86	10A	Restraints control module. Occupant classification system.
F87	15A	Heated steering wheel.
F88	20A	Voltage quality module.
F89	-	Not used.

Luggage Compartment Fuse Box



E129927

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F1	5A*	Handsfree liftgate.
F2	-	Not used.
F3	5A*	Keyless vehicle door handles.
F4	25A*	Front left door control unit.
F5	25A*	Front right door control unit.
F6	25A*	Rear left door control unit.
F7	25A*	Rear right door control unit.
F8	10A*	Anti-theft alarm.
F9	25A*	Driver seat.
F10	25A*	Power windows.
F11	5A*	Relay coil feed.
F12	-	Not used.
F13	-	Not used.
F14	-	Not used.
F15	-	Not used.
F16	-	Not used.
F17	-	Not used.
F18	-	Not used.
F19	-	Not used.
F20	-	Not used.
F21	-	Not used.
F22	-	Not used.
F23	-	Not used.
F24	30A**	DC/AC power converter.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F25	25A**	Power operated tailgate.
F26	40A**	Trailer tow module.
F27	30A**	Rear window defroster.
F28	-	Not used.
F29	5A*	Blind spot monitor. Lane keeping system. Active City Stop. Rear view camera.
F30	5A*	Parking aid module.
F31	-	Not used.
F32	5A*	DC/AC power converter.
F33	15A*	Rear window wiper relay.
F34	15A*	Driver heated seat.
F35	15A*	Passenger heated seat.
F36	-	Not used.
F37	15A*	Sunshade.
F38	-	Not used.
F39	-	Not used.
F40	-	Not used.
F41	-	Not used.
F42	-	Not used.
F43	-	Not used.
F44	10A*	Power exterior mirrors.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Fuse	Fuse rating	Circuits protected
F45	7.5A*	Heated exterior mirrors.
F46	-	Not used.

*Mini fuses

**Cartridge fuses

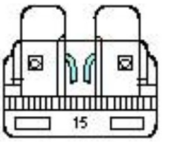
Relay	Circuits switched
R1	Ignition switch.
R2	Heated rear window.
R3	Rear window wiper.
R4	Not used.
R5	Anti-theft alarm horn.
R6	Delayed accessory power.

CHANGING A FUSE

Fuses

WARNING

Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



E142430

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

Standard Fuse Amperage Rating and Color

	Color			
Fuse rating	**Micro fuses**	**Dual micro fuses**	**M-type fuses**	**J-type fuses**
5A	Tan	Tan	-	-
7.5A	Brown	Brown	-	-
10A	Red	Red	-	-

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Color				
Fuse rating	**Micro fuses**	**Dual micro fuses**	**M-type fuses**	**J-type fuses**
15A	Blue	Blue	Grey	-
20A	Yellow	-	Light Blue	Blue
25A	White	-	White	White
30A	Green	-	Pink	Pink
40A	-	-	Green	Green
50A	-	-	-	Red
60A	-	-	-	Yellow

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of Ford authorized repairers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. Authorized repairers are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly, with a wide range of highly specialized tools.

In addition to regular servicing, we recommend that you carry out the following checks.

WARNINGS

Switch the ignition off before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.

Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage.

Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan. Under certain conditions, the fan may continue to run for several minutes after you have switched the engine off.

Make sure that you fit filler caps securely after carrying out maintenance checks.

Daily Checks

- Exterior lamps.
- Interior lamps.
- Warning lamps and indicators.

Check When Refueling

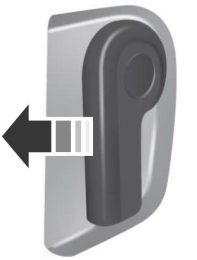
- Engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 237).
- Brake fluid level. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 238).
- Washer fluid level. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 239).
- Tire pressures (when cold). See **Tire Pressures** (page 269).
- Tire condition. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 253).

Monthly Checks

- Engine coolant level (engine cold). See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 237).
- Pipes, hoses and reservoirs for leaks.
- Air conditioning operation.
- Parking brake operation.
- Horn operation.
- Tightness of lug nuts. See **Tire Pressures** (page 269).

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

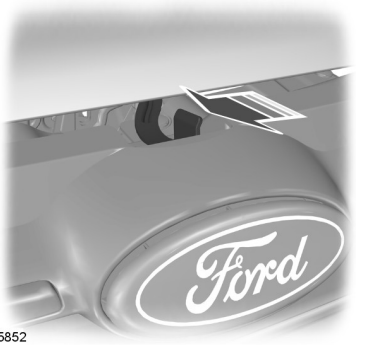
Opening the Hood



E142457

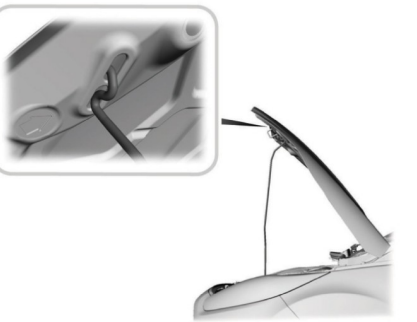
1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the left-hand side of the instrument panel.
2. Slightly lift the hood.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



E135852

3. Move the catch to the left.



E87786

4. Open the hood. Support the hood with the strut.

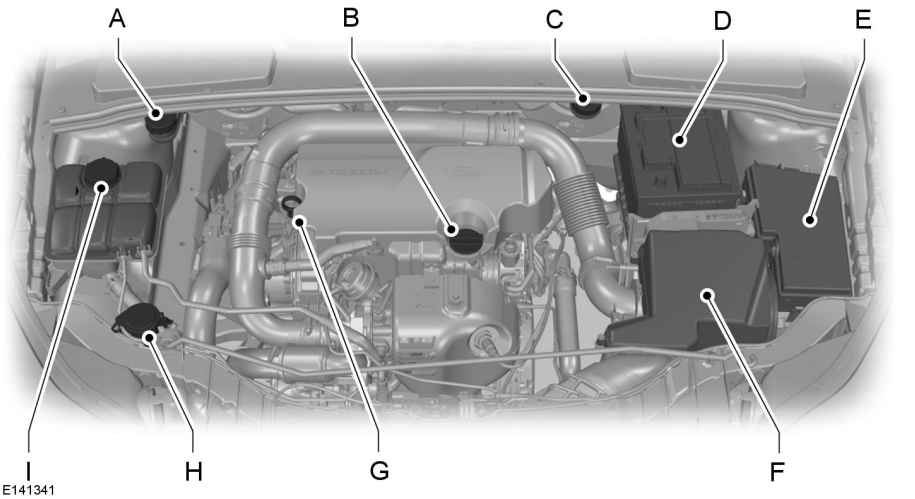
Closing the Hood

1. Remove the hood strut from the catch and secure it correctly after use.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 8-12 in (20-30 cm).

Note: *Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



A Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive). See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 238).

B Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 237).

C Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive). See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 238).

D Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 239).

E Power distribution box. See **Fuses** (page 206).

F Air filter assembly.

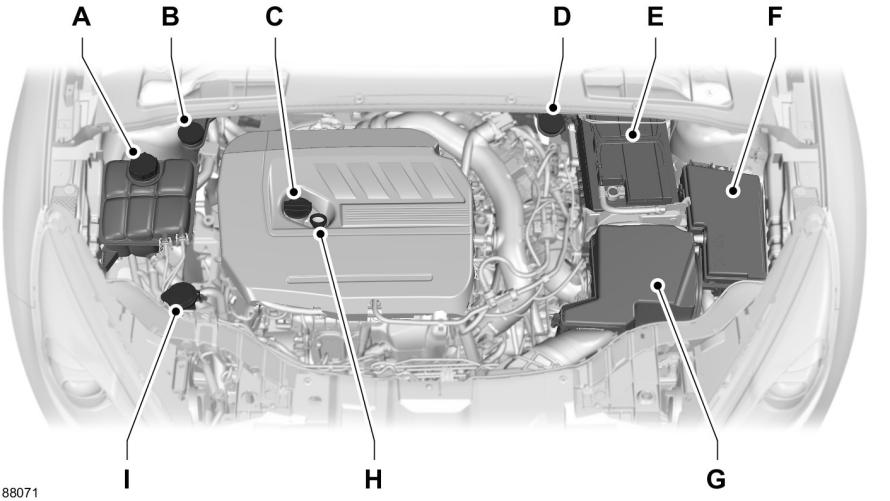
G Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 236).

H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 239).

I Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 237).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L ECOBOOST™



A Engine coolant reservoir*: See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 237).

B Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive)*: See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 238).

C Engine oil filler cap*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 237).

D Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive)*: See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 238).

E Battery: See **Maintenance** (page 228).

F Engine compartment fuse box: See **Fuses** (page 206).

G Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.

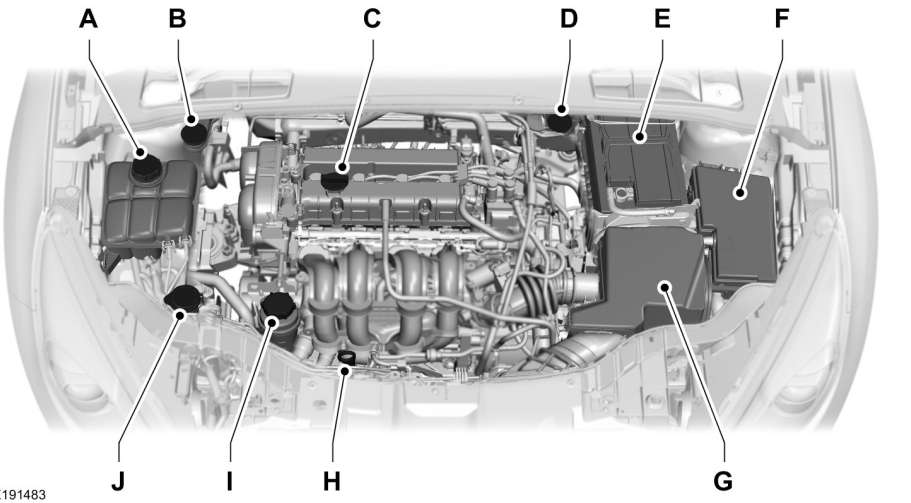
H Engine oil dipstick*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 237).

I Screen washer fluid reservoir*: See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 239).

*For easy identification, filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are marked in color.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.6L DURATEC-16V TI-VCT (SIGMA)/ 1.6L FLEX FUEL



A Engine coolant reservoir*. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 237).

B Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive)*. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 238). See **Clutch Fluid Check** (page 239).

C Engine oil filler cap*. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 237).

D Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive)*. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 238). See **Clutch Fluid Check** (page 239).

E Battery. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 204).

F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 206).

G Air cleaner. No maintenance necessary.

H Engine oil dipstick*. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 237).

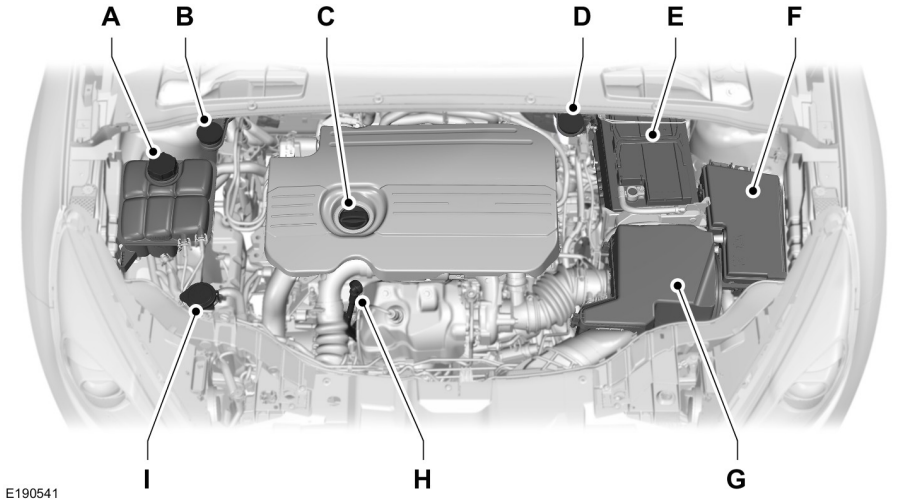
I Power steering fluid reservoir*.

J Screen washer fluid reservoir*. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 239).

*For easy identification, filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are marked in color.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL



A Engine coolant reservoir: See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 237).

B Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive): See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 238).

C Engine oil filler cap: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 237).

D Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive): See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 238).

E Battery: See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 239).

F Engine compartment fuse box: See **Fuses** (page 206).

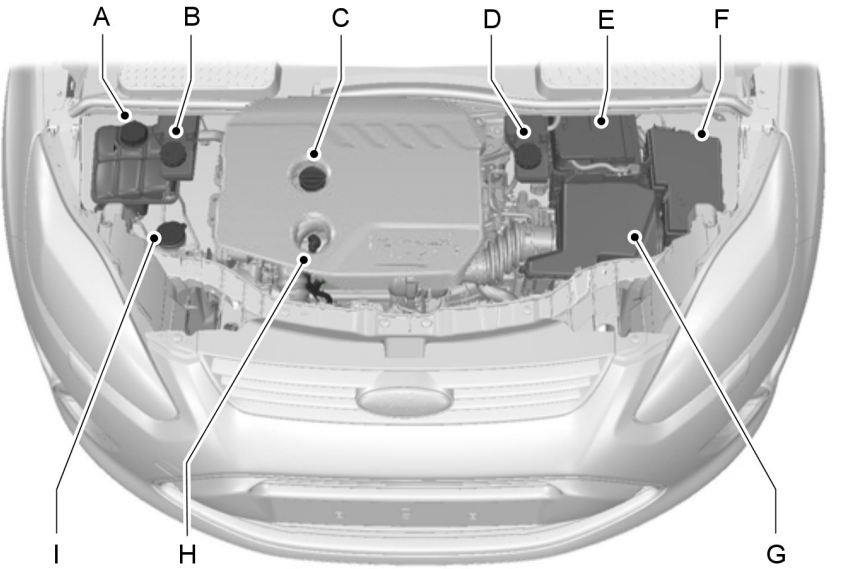
G Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.

H Engine oil dipstick: See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 236).

I Windshield and rear window washer fluid reservoir: See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 239).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.6L DURATORQ-TDCI (DV) DIESEL



E130031

A Engine coolant reservoir*: See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 237).

B Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive)*: See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 238).

C Engine oil filler cap*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 237).

D Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive)*: See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 238).

E Battery: See **Maintenance** (page 228).

F Engine compartment fuse box: See **Fuses** (page 206).

G Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.

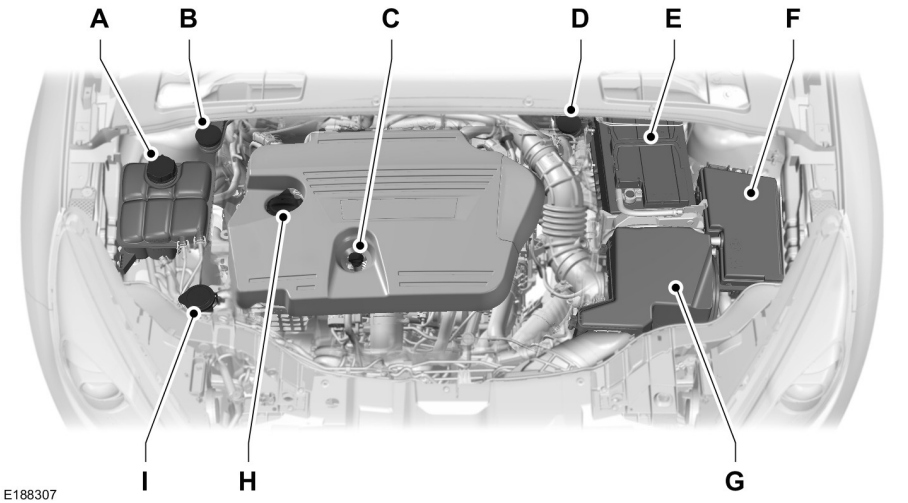
H Engine oil dipstick*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 237).

I Screen washer fluid reservoir*: See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 239).

*For easy identification, filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are marked in color.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L DURATORQ-TDCI (DW) DIESEL



A Engine coolant reservoir*: See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 237).

B Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive)*: See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 238).

C Engine oil dipstick*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 237).

D Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive)*: See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 238).

E Battery: See **Maintenance** (page 228).

F Engine compartment fuse box: See **Fuses** (page 206).

G Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.

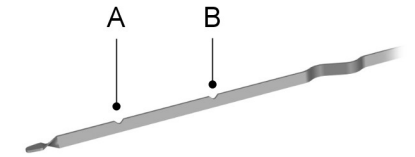
H Engine oil filler cap*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 237).

I Screen washer fluid reservoir*: See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 239).

*For easy identification, filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are marked in colour.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

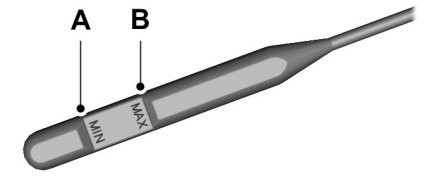
ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



E141337

A Minimum.
B Maximum.

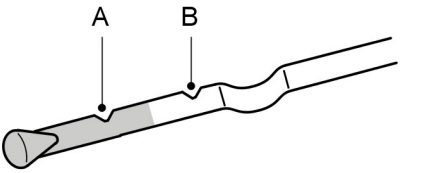
ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.5L ECOBOOST™



E199415

A Minimum.
B Maximum.

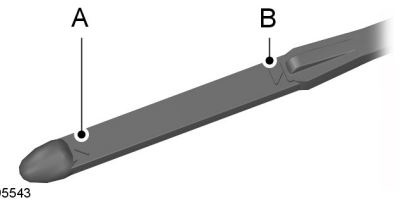
ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.6L DURATEC-16V TI-VCT (SIGMA)/1.6L FLEX FUEL



E95540

A Minimum
B Maximum

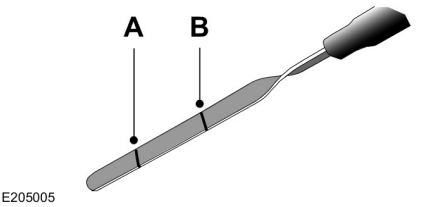
ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL/1.6L DURATORQ-TDCI (DV) DIESEL



E95543

A Minimum.
B Maximum.

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.0L DURATORQ-TDCI (DW) DIESEL



A Minimum.
B Maximum.

ENGINE OIL CHECK

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the oil level is at the minimum mark, add oil immediately. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 279).

Note: *Make sure that the oil level is between the minimum and the maximum marks.*

Note: *Do not use oil additives or other engine treatments. Under certain conditions they may cause engine damage.*

Note: *The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 3,000 mi (5,000 km).*

Adding Engine Oil

WARNINGS

Only add oil when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.

Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

1. Remove the engine oil filler cap. See **Maintenance** (page 228).
2. Add engine oil that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 279).
3. Replace the engine oil filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: *Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.*

Note: *Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.*

ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

WARNINGS

Do not dispose of engine coolant in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



E169064

Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add coolant immediately.

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -20ºF (-29ºC) and -29.2ºF (-34ºC).

Note: *Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.*

Note: *Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants or additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems.*

Adding Engine Coolant

WARNINGS

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

Only add coolant when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.

Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilled on a hot exhaust.

Ford Motor Company does not recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.

Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle.

Note: *Add a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water or prediluted engine coolant that meets the correct specification.*

Note: *Use fluids which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by your vehicle's Warranty. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 275).*

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Remove the coolant reservoir cap.
2. Add engine coolant to the MAX mark, do not overfill.
3. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: *In case of emergency, you can add water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.*

Note: *Prolonged use of an incorrect dilution of engine coolant can cause engine damage, such as corrosion, overheating or freezing.*

BRAKE FLUID CHECK

WARNINGS

Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

WARNINGS

Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

A fluid level between the **MAX** and **MIN** lines is within the normal operating range and there is no need to add fluid. A fluid level not in the normal operating range could compromise the performance of the system. Have your vehicle checked immediately.



E170684

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 275).

CLUTCH FLUID CHECK

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 238).

WASHER FLUID CHECK

When adding fluid, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing in cold weather and improve the cleaning capability. For information on fluid dilution, refer to the product instructions.

Note: *The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.*

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

WARNINGS

Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

WARNINGS

For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

The battery is located in the engine compartment. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 230).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If your vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

To maintain correct operation of the battery management system, if you add any electrical devices to your vehicle, do not connect the ground connection directly to the negative battery terminal. A connection at the negative battery terminal can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *Electrical accessories or components added to your vehicle by you or an authorized dealer, may adversely affect battery performance, durability and the performance of other electrical systems on your vehicle.*

If a replacement battery is required, we recommend you use a Ford replacement battery that matches the electrical requirements of your vehicle.

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, transmission must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

Remove and Reinstall the Battery

To disconnect or remove the battery, do the following:

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.*
4. Disconnect the negative battery cable terminal first.
5. Disconnect the positive battery cable terminal last.
6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.
8. Install in the reverse order.**

*The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Note: *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid un-intended connection or arcing.*

Note: *Make sure the battery cable terminals are fully tightened.*

Note: *If you disconnect or replace the battery, you must reset the clock and the pre-set radio stations once the battery is reconnected.*

Battery Disposal



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



E142463

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

Note: *Use the service position in winter to provide easier access to the front wiper blades for freeing them from snow and ice. The front wipers will not return to their normal position as soon as you switch on the ignition. The front wipers will stay in the service position when you switch the ignition on or start the engine. Switch on the front wipers to any mode, then switch off the front wipers to bring the front wipers back to the park position.*

Note: *The windshield wiper blades are different in length. If you install wiper blades of the wrong length, the wipers may not work correctly. If equipped with autowipers, the rain sensor may not work correctly.*

Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place. Lower the wiper arm and blade back to the windshield. The wiper arms will automatically return to their normal position when the ignition is turned on.*

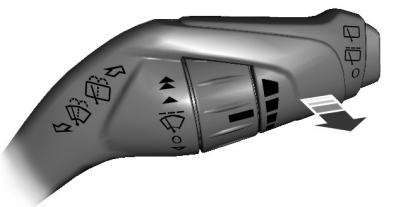
Note: *Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.*

Note: *Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield*

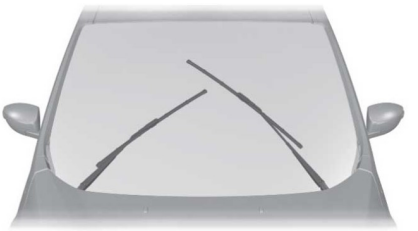
Setting the Front Wipers in the Service Position

1. Make sure that the outside of the windshield is free from snow and ice.
2. Switch on the ignition.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing


E162733

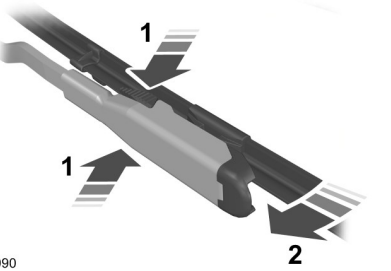
3. Switch off the ignition and within three seconds, pull the wiper lever to toward you. Hold the lever in until wipers have moved to the service position.


E162532

4. Release the lever when the wipers have moved to the service position.

Changing the Front Wiper Blades

1. Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass.



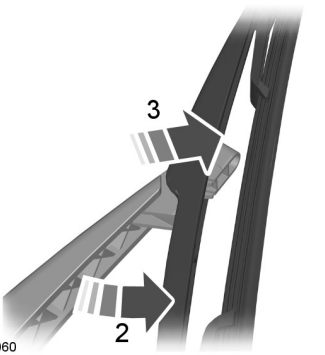
E129990

2. Press the locking buttons together.
3. Rotate and remove the wiper blade.
4. Install in the reverse order.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

Changing the Rear Window Wiper Blade

1. Lift the wiper arm.



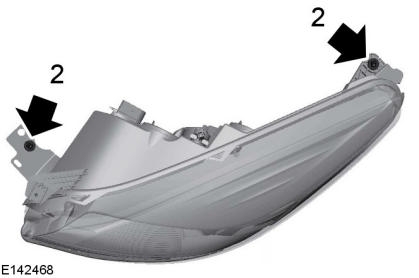
E130060

2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade from the wiper arm
3. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
4. Remove the wiper blade.
5. Install in the reverse order.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

REMOVING A HEADLAMP



E142468

1. Make sure the headlamp control is in the off position and open the hood.
2. Remove the two screws from the headlamp assembly.
3. Carefully pull the headlamp assembly as far as possible towards the front of the vehicle to disengage it from the lower fixing point.
4. Carefully lift the outer side of the headlamp and remove it.
5. Disconnect the electrical connector.

CHANGING A BULB

WARNINGS

Switch all of the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Bulbs can become hot. Let the bulb cool down before removing it. Failure to do so could result in personal injury.

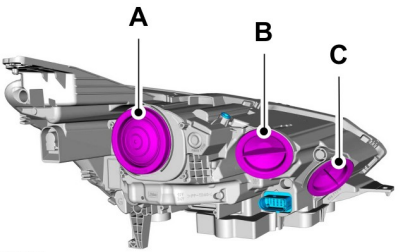
The following instructions describe how to remove the bulbs. Fit replacements in the reverse order unless otherwise stated.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Bulb Specification Chart** (page 250).

Headlamp

You must remove the headlamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 243).

Base Series Headlamp

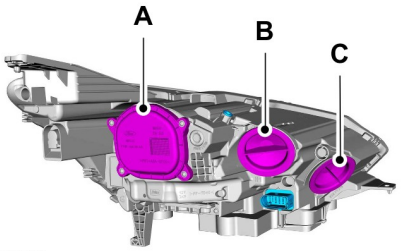


E201653

A	Headlamp low beam.
B	Headlamp high beam.
C	Side lamp. Direction indicator.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

High Series Headlamp



E201654

A High intensity discharge headlamp. Low and high beam.*

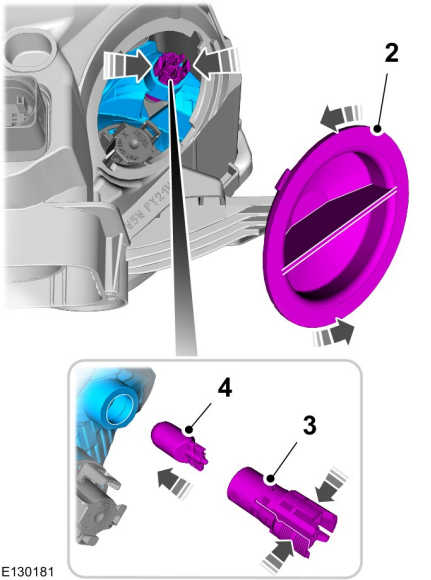
B Cornering lamp.

C Direction indicator.

*These lamps operate at a high voltage. See an authoized dealer if they fail.

Front Side Lamp

1. Remove the headlamp.



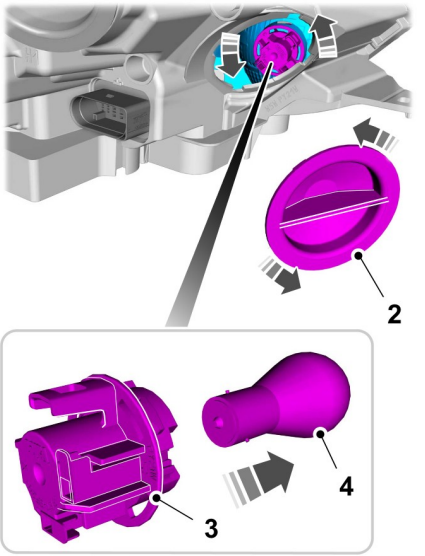
E130181

2. Carefully remove the cover.
3. Gently pinch the bulb holder and pull it straight out.
4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

Direction Indicator

1. Remove the headlamp.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

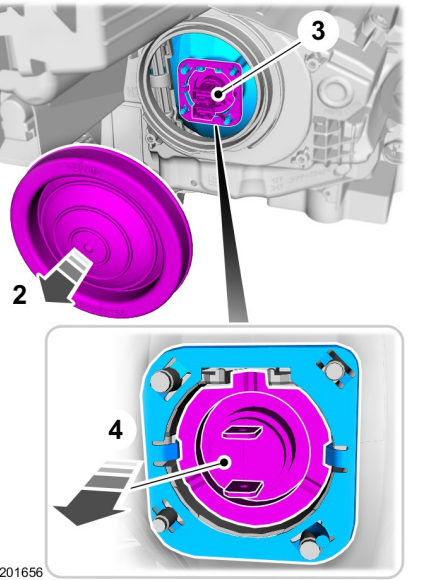


E201655

2. Carefully remove the cover.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.

Headlamp Low Beam

1. Remove the headlamp.



E201656

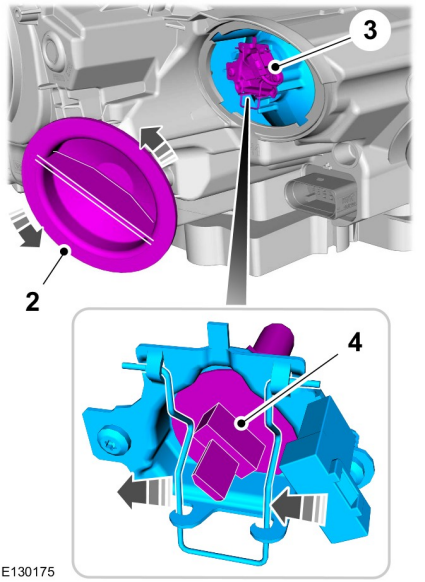
2. Carefully remove the cover.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

Note: *Do not touch the bulb glass.*

Headlamp High Beam

1. Remove the headlamp.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

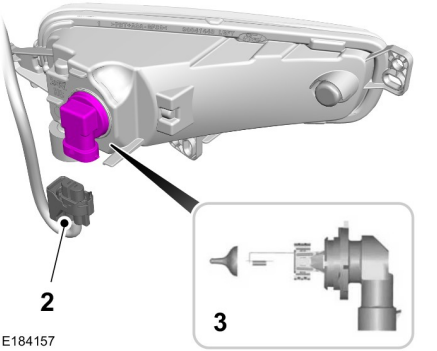


2. Carefully remove the cover.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Release the clip and remove the bulb.

Note: *Do not touch the bulb glass.*

Front Fog Lamp

1. Remove fog lamp grille from front fascia then unscrew the fog lamp.



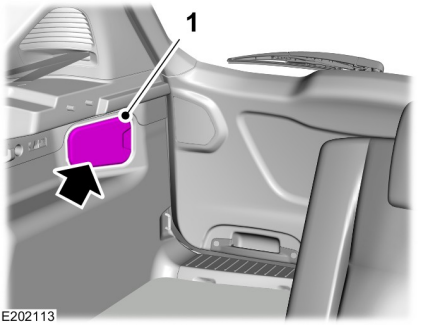
2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

Note: *Do not touch the bulb glass.*

Note: *You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.*

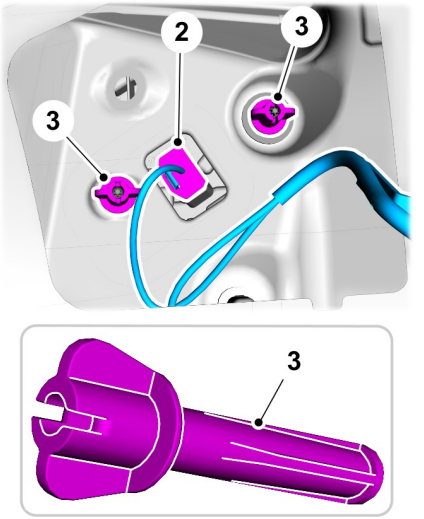
Rear lamps

Direction Indicator, Brake and Rear Lamp



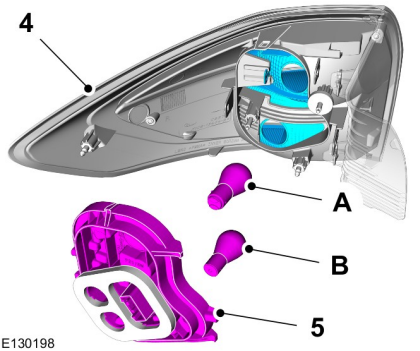
1. Carefully remove the cover.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



E202114

2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Remove the wing nuts.
4. Remove the lamp.

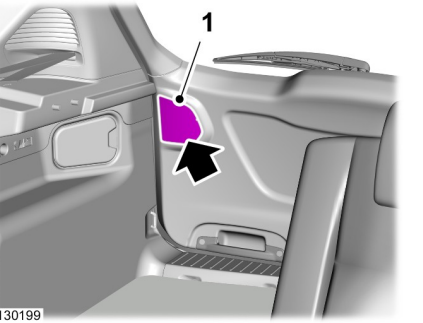


E130198

5. Unclip the bulb holder.
6. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.

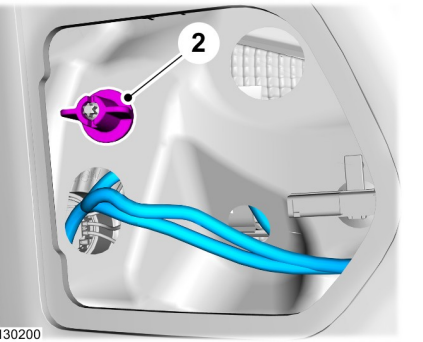
A. Direction indicator.
B. Brake and rear lamp.

Reversing Lamp, Rear Lamp



E130199

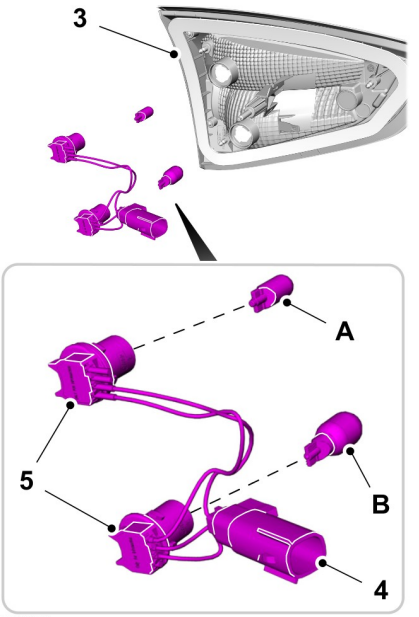
1. Carefully remove the cover.



E130200

2. Remove the wing nut.
3. Remove the lamp.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



E201657

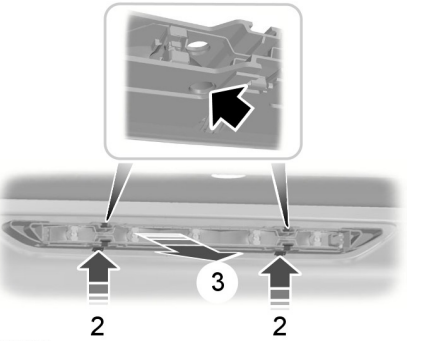
4. Disconnect the electrical connector.
5. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
6. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

A. Reversing lamp.
B. Rear lamp.

Central High Mounted Brake Lamp


E87619

1. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and gently push the clip.



E130235

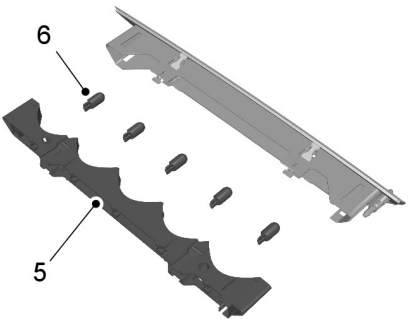
2. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver into the holes.
3. Carefully pull the lamp to release the spring clips.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



E130236

4. Remove the lamp.

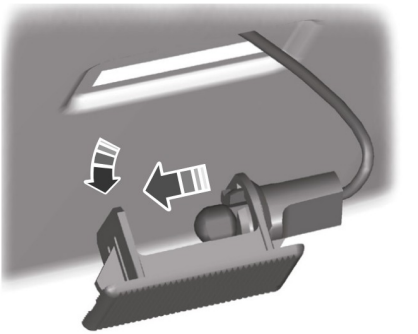


E130205

5. Unclip the bulb holder.
6. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

Interior Lamps

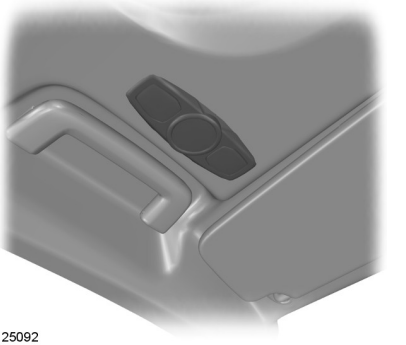
Footwell Lamp, Luggage Compartment Lamps



E72784

1. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver and pry out the lamp.
2. Remove the bulb.

Vehicles with LED lamps



E125092

LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authoized dealer if they fail.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Exterior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Brake and rear lamp.	P21/5W	21/5
Central high mounted brake lamp.	W16W	16
Cornering lamps.	H1	55
Front direction indicator.	PY21W	21
Front fog lamp.	H8	55
Front side lamp.	W5W	5
Headlamp high beam.	H1	55
Daytime running lamps.	LED	LED
License plate lamp.	LED	LED
Headlamp low beam.	H7	55
Rear direction indicator.	PY21W	21
Rear fog lamp.	P21W	21
Reversing lamps.	W16W	16
Side direction indicator.	WY5W	5

Note: *LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.*

Interior Lamps

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Interior lamp.	W6W	6
Luggage compartment lamp.	211 Festoon	10
Map lamp.	W6W	6

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

Note: *If you use a car wash with a waxing cycle, make sure that you remove the wax from the windshield and the wiper blades.*

Note: *Prior to using a car wash facility check the suitability of it for your vehicle.*

Note: *Some car washes use water at high pressure. Due to this, water droplets may enter inside your vehicle and could also damage certain parts of your vehicle.*

Note: *Remove the aerial before using an automatic car wash.*

Note: *Switch the heater blower off to prevent contamination of the fresh air filter.*

We recommend that you wash your vehicle with a sponge and lukewarm water containing a car shampoo.

Cleaning the Headlamps

Note: *Do not scrape the headlamp lenses or use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.*

Note: *Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.*

Cleaning the Rear Window

Note: *Do not scrape the inside of the rear window or use abrasives or chemical solvents to clean it.*

Use a clean, lint free cloth or a damp chamois leather to clean the inside of the rear window.

Cleaning the Chrome Trim

Note: *Do not use abrasives or chemical solvents. Use soapy water.*

Note: *Do not apply cleaning product to hot surfaces and do not leave cleaning product on chrome surfaces for a period of time exceeding that which is recommended.*

Note: *Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, may cause damage over a period of time.*

Body Paintwork Preservation

WARNINGS

Do not polish your vehicle in strong sunshine.

Do not allow polish to touch plastic surfaces. It could be difficult to remove.

Do not apply polish to the windshield or rear window. This could cause the wipers to become noisy and they may not clear the window properly.

We recommend that you wax the paintwork once or twice a year.

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

Note: *Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill on interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Damage may not be covered by your warranty.*

Safety Belts

Note: *Do not use abrasives, or chemical solvents to clean them.*

Note: *Do not allow moisture to penetrate the safety belt retractor mechanism.*

Clean them with interior cleaner or water applied with a soft sponge. Let them dry naturally, away from artificial heat.

Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens

Note: *Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean the instrument cluster screens, LCD screens or radio screens. These cleaning products can damage the screens.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

Rear Windows

Note: *Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.*

Note: *Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.*

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

You should repair paintwork damage caused by stones from the road or minor scratches as soon as possible. A choice of products are available from an authorized dealer.

Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.

Always read and follow the manufacturer's instructions before using the products.

CLEANING THE ALLOY WHEELS

Note: *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

Note: *Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period of time.*

Note: *Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.*

Note: *If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

Note: *Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.*

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean them weekly with the recommended wheel and tire cleaner.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse them thoroughly with a pressurized stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.

We recommend that you use Ford service wheel cleaner. Make sure that you read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Using other non-recommended cleaning products can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

TEMPORARY MOBILITY KIT

Your vehicle may not have a spare tire. Therefore you will have a temporary mobility kit which will only repair one damaged tire.

The kit is located in the left-hand side of the rear luggage compartment.

General Information

WARNINGS

Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.

Do not use the kit on a previously damaged tire, for example when it has been driven under inflated. This could cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Do not use the kit on run flat tires. This could cause loss of vehicle control.

Do not try to seal damage to the tire sidewall. The tire could burst and cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

The kit seals most tire punctures with a diameter of up to ¼ inch (six millimeters). This is to temporarily restore mobility.

You must observe the following rules when using the kit:

- Drive with caution and avoid making sudden steering or driving maneuvers, especially if your vehicle is heavily loaded or you are towing a trailer.
- The kit will provide you with an emergency temporary repair, enabling you to continue your journey to the next vehicle or tire dealer, or to drive a maximum distance of 125 miles (200 kilometers).
- Do not exceed a maximum speed of 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Keep the kit out of the reach of children.
- Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between -40ºF (–40ºC) and +158ºF (+70ºC).

Using the Kit

WARNINGS

Compressed air can act as an explosive or propellant which could cause serious personal injury.

Never leave the kit unattended while in use.

Do not keep the compressor operating for more than 10 minutes. This could cause loss of vehicle control or personal injury.

Note: *You must only use the kit for the vehicle with which it was supplied.*

- Park your vehicle at the roadside so that you do not obstruct the flow of traffic and so that you are able to use the kit without being in danger.
- Apply the parking brake, even if you have parked on a level road, to make sure that your vehicle will not move.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

- Do not attempt to remove foreign objects like nails or screws penetrating the tire.
- Leave the engine running while the kit is in use, but not if your vehicle is in an enclosed or poorly ventilated area (for example inside a building). In these circumstances, switch the compressor on with the engine switched off.
- You must replace the sealant bottle with a new one before the expiry date (see top of bottle).
- Inform all other users of your vehicle that the tire has been temporarily sealed with the kit. Make them aware of the special driving conditions that must be observed.

Inflating the Tire

WARNINGS

Check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire. This could cause personal injury.

Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is operating. This could cause personal injury if the tire bursts.

Watch the sidewall of the tire. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appears, switch the compressor off and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve F. Do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.

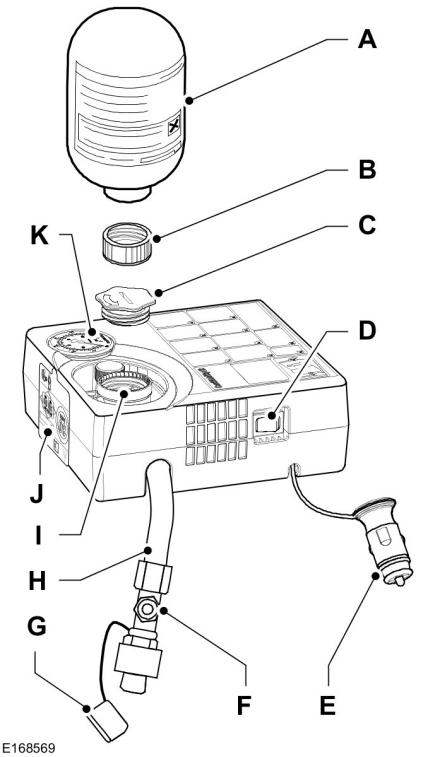
The sealant contains natural rubber latex. Avoid contact with skin and clothing. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and consult a physician.

WARNINGS

If the tire inflation pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi) within 10 minutes, the tire may have suffered excessive damage, making a temporary repair impossible. In this case, do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.

Screwing the bottle onto the bottle holder will pierce the seal of the bottle. Do not unscrew the bottle from the holder as the sealant will escape, which could cause serious personal injury.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



A Sealant bottle
B Bottle lid
C Orange cap
D Compressor switch
E Power plug with cable
F Pressure relief valve
G Protective cap
H Hose
I Bottle holder
J Label
K Pressure gauge

1. Peel off the label J showing the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) from the casing and attach it to the instrument panel in the driver's field of view. Make sure the label does not obscure anything important.
2. Take the hose H and the power plug with cable E out of the kit.
3. Unscrew the orange cap C and the bottle lid B.
4. Screw the sealant bottle A clockwise into the bottle holder I fully tight.
5. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tire.
6. Detach the protective cap G from the hose H and screw the hose H firmly onto the valve of the damaged tire.
7. Make sure that the compressor switch D is in position 0 and the pressure relief valve F is closed.
8. Insert the power plug E into the cigar lighter socket or auxiliary power point. See **Cigar Lighter** (page 116). See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 116).
9. Start the engine.
10. Move the compressor switch D to position 1.
11. Inflate the tire for no longer than 10 minutes to an inflation pressure of minimum 1.8 bar (26 psi) and a maximum of 3.5 bar (51 psi). Move the compressor switch D to position 0 and check the current tire pressure with pressure gauge K.

Note: *When pumping in the sealant through the tire valve, the pressure may rise up to 6 bar (87 psi) but will drop again after about 30 seconds.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Note: *After you have switched the compressor off, you may hear air escaping from the damaged tire. This is normal and can be ignored provided that the specified minimum tire pressure has been reached.*

12. Remove the power plug E from the cigar lighter socket or auxiliary power point.
13. Quickly unscrew the hose H from the tire valve and replace the protective cap G. Fasten the valve cap again.

Note: *Some residual sealant fluid may drip or spray out of hose H while you are disconnecting it. This is normal.*

14. Leave the sealant bottle A in the bottle holder I.
15. Make sure the kit, the bottle lid and the orange cap are stored safely, but still easily accessible in your vehicle. The kit will be required again when you check the tire pressure.
16. Immediately drive approximately two miles (three kilometers) so that the sealant can seal the damaged area.

WARNING

If you experience heavy vibrations, unsteady steering behavior or noises while driving, reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Recheck the tire and its pressure. If the tire pressure is less than 1.3 bar (19 psi) or if there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage visible, do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.

Checking the Tire Pressure

WARNING

Before driving, make sure the tire is adjusted to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Tire Pressures** (page 269). Monitor the tire pressure until the sealed tire is replaced.

1. Stop your vehicle after driving approximately two miles (three kilometers). Check, and where necessary, adjust the pressure of the damaged tire.
2. Attach the kit and read the tire pressure from the pressure gauge K.
3. If the pressure of the sealant-filled tire is 1.3 bar (19 psi) or more, adjust it to the specified pressure. See **Tire Pressures** (page 269).
4. Follow the inflation procedure once again to top up the tire.
5. Check the tire pressure again from the pressure gauge K. If the tire pressure is too high, deflate the tire to the specified pressure using the pressure relief valve F.
6. Once you have inflated the tire to its correct tire pressure, move the compressor switch D to position 0, remove the power plug E from the socket, unscrew the hose H, fasten the valve cap and replace the protective cap G.
7. Leave the sealant bottle A in the bottle holder I and store the kit away safely in its original location.
8. Drive to the nearest tire specialist to get the damaged tire replaced. Before the tire is removed from the rim, inform your tire dealer that the tire contains sealant. You must renew the sealant bottle A and hose H as soon as possible once used.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

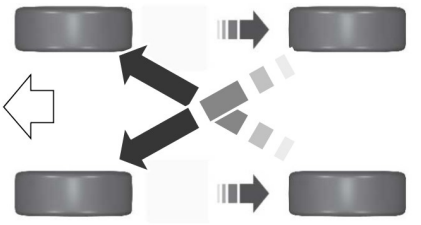
Note: *Remember that this kit only provides temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tire repair after usage of the kit may differ from country to country. You should consult a tire specialist for advice.*

Empty sealant bottles can be disposed of together with normal household waste. Return remains of sealant to an authorized dealer or dispose of it in compliance with local waste disposal regulations.

TIRE CARE

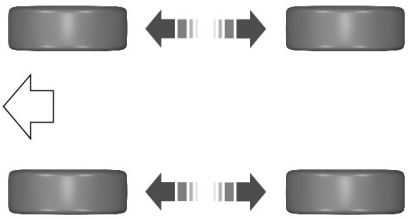
Front wheel drive vehicles (front tires on the left side of the diagram).

Non-directional tires



E142547

Directional tires



E70415

To make sure the front and rear tires of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tires from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals between 3,000 mi (5,000 km) and 6,000 mi (10,000 km).

WARNING

Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

Examine the tires regularly for cuts, foreign objects and uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

Check the tire pressures (including the spare) when cold, every two weeks.

USING WINTER TIRES

If winter tires are used you must inflate them to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressure table. See **Tire Pressures** (page 269).

USING SNOW CHAINS

WARNINGS

Do not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h).

Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.

Only fit snow chains to specified tires. See **Tire Pressures** (page 269).

If your vehicle has wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Note: *The anti-lock braking system will continue to operate normally.*

The tires on your vehicle may have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates you may need to use snow chains.

Your vehicle may not be compatible with snow chain or cable usage with the factory-fitted wheels and tires. Only certain chains or snow cables have been approved by Ford as safe for use on your vehicle with the following wheel and tire combination(s):

Tire Size	Rim Width	Load Index	Chain Size
205/55R16	6.5	94R	12mm
215/55R16	6.5	93/97	10mm
215/55R16	7	93/97	NONE
215/50R17	7	95R	NONE
235/40R18	8	95R	NONE

Not all S-class snow chains meet these restrictions. Chains of this size restriction will include a tensioning device. The chains should be mounted in pairs on the front tires only. If you need to use chains, it is recommended that steel wheels (of the same size and specification) be used, as chains may chip aluminum wheels.

Vehicles with Stability Control

When stability control is on, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics. To reduce this, switch traction control off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 143).

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

WARNING

The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



You must check the tire pressures (including the spare tire where applicable) every two weeks when the tires are cold.

You must inflate the tires to the correct pressure.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

See **Wheels and Tires** (page 253). The tire pressures are also on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar).

As a driver assistance feature, your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system. A warning lamp will illuminate when one or more of the tires are significantly under-inflated. If the low tire pressure warning lamp illuminates, you should stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, check the tires and inflate them to the correct pressure.

Driving on under-inflated tires can:

- Cause them to overheat.
- Lead to tire failure.
- Reduce fuel efficiency.
- Reduce tire life.
- Affect vehicle handling or stopping ability.

The system is not a substitute for correct tire maintenance.

You must maintain the correct tire pressures, even if low tire pressure has not illuminated the warning lamp.

The tire pressure monitoring system has a system malfunction indicator to warn you when the system is not operating correctly. The malfunction indicator and low tire pressure warning lamp have a combined function. When the system detects a malfunction, the warning lamp will flash for approximately one minute and then remain illuminated. This sequence will occur every time you switch the ignition on while the malfunction remains. The system has detected a fault that requires service.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressures. A malfunction may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of a replacement tire or wheel that prevents the system from functioning correctly.

Always check the tire pressure monitoring system malfunction warning after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle. Make sure the replacement tires or wheels allow the system to continue to function correctly. See **When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed** in this section.

How Temperature Affects the Tire Pressures

Under normal driving conditions tire pressures may increase by up to 4 psi (0.3 bar) from a cold start situation.

If the vehicle is stationary overnight and the temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, tire pressures may decrease by up to 3 psi (0.2 bar) when there is a drop in the ambient temperature of 31ºF (17ºC) or more. The system detects this pressure decrease as being significantly below the correct inflation pressure and the warning lamp illuminates.

Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System


E142549

You should always have tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Note: *Each road wheel and tire is fitted with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor attaches to the valve stem. The tire covers the pressure sensor and it is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.*

Understanding the Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The system measures the pressure in the four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle.

The system detects this lower pressure as being significantly below the correct inflation pressure and the warning lamp illuminates. You must inflate the tires to the correct pressure.

When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

If you need to replace a road wheel and tire with the temporary spare wheel, the system will continue to identify a defect. This is to remind you to repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle. To restore the correct operation of the system, you must have the repaired road wheel and tire assembly refitted to your vehicle.

When You Believe the System is Not Operating Correctly

The main function of the system is to warn you when the tire pressures are low. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of operating correctly. See the following chart for information concerning the system:

When Inflating the Tires

When inflating the tires the system may not respond immediately to the air added to the tires.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

System Warning Lamps

Warning lamp	Description	Action
Solid warning lamp	Tire(s) under-inflated	1. Make sure tires are at the correct pressure. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 253). The tire pressures are also on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar). 2. After inflating the tires to the correct pressure you must carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure** in this chapter.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, the system has detected a fault that requires service.
Solid warning lamp initially followed by a flashing warning lamp	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, the system has detected a fault that requires service.

If the Warning Lamp is On:

1. Check each tire to verify that none are flat.
2. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.
3. Check the tire pressures and inflate all the tires to the correct pressure.
4. Carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure

Overview

You must carry out the system reset procedure after each tire replacement or adjustment of the tire pressures.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

To maintain your vehicle load carrying capability, your vehicle requires different tire pressures in the front tires compared to the rear tires.

The system illuminates the warning lamp at different pressures for the front and rear tires.

The tires need to be periodically rotated to provide consistent performance and maximum tire life, the system needs to know when the tires have been rotated to determine which set of tires are on the front and rear axles. With this information, the system can detect and correctly warn of low tire pressures.

Carrying Out the System Reset Procedure

1. Check the tire pressures and inflate all the tires to the correct pressure.
2. Use the information display controls on the steering wheel or instrument panel. See **Information Displays** (page 80).

To reset the tire pressure monitoring system, scroll to:

Message	Description and Action
Settings	Press the **OK** button.
Driver assist	Press the **OK** button.
Tire Monitor	Press and hold the **OK** button until confirmation appears. Alternatively, if your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system reset button, press and hold the button until confirmation appears.

CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

Locking Lug Nuts

You can obtain a replacement locking lug nut key and replacement locking lug nuts from your dealer using the reference number certificate.

Vehicles With a Spare Wheel

WARNINGS

When stowing a wheel in the spare wheel well, to avoid the risk of injury, do not hold the wheel by the hole in the center.

WARNINGS

Drive the shortest possible distances.

Do not fit more than one spare wheel on your vehicle at any one time.

Do not carry out any tire repairs on a spare wheel.

Do not drive through an automatic car wash.

If you are unsure what type of spare wheel you have do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

WARNINGS

On vehicles with a 2.0L EcoBoost SCTi (MI4) engine, do not switch stability control off or select sport mode if you have fitted a temporary spare wheel to your vehicle.

Only fit snow chains to specified tires. See **Using Snow Chains** (page 257).

If the spare wheel is exactly the same type and size as the other fitted road wheels, you can replace the existing road wheel with the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.

If the spare wheel is different to the other road wheels, it will carry a yellow label with the appropriate speed limit.

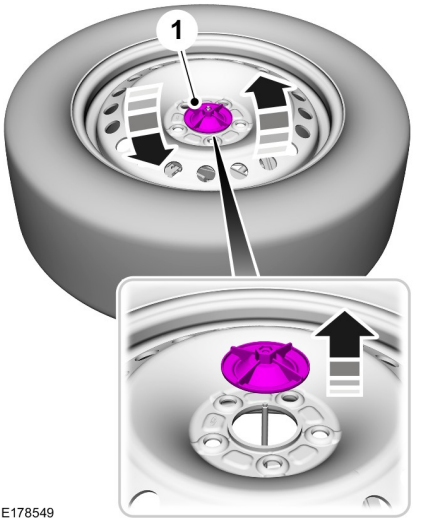
Note: *Your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.*

Refer to the following information before changing the road wheel.

Note: *The ground clearance of your vehicle may be reduced. Take care when parking next to a curb.*

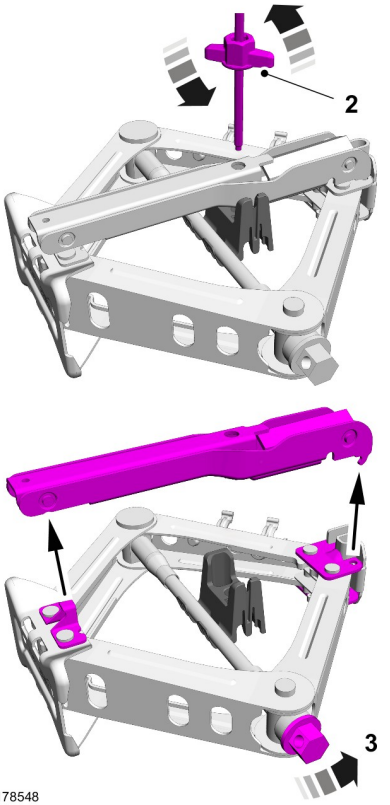
The spare wheel, vehicle jack, towing eye, lug nut tool and wheel trim remover are located in the luggage compartment underneath the floor covering.

Note: *The spare wheel, vehicle jack, towing eye, lug nut tool and wheel trim remover are located in the luggage compartment side panel on Wagon variants.*



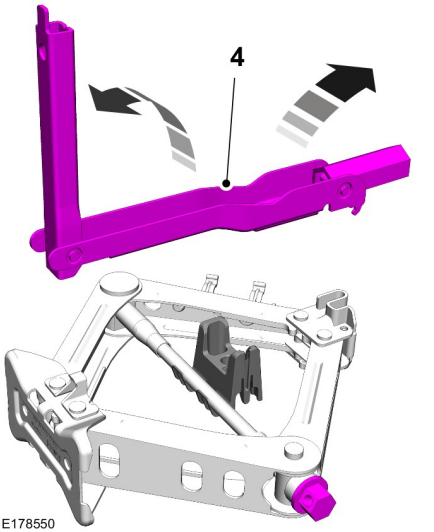
1. Turn the spare wheel securing nut counterclockwise and remove it. Remove the wheel from the spare wheel well.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



E178548

2. Turn the vehicle jack securing bolt counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Turn the vehicle jack screw counterclockwise to remove the vehicle jack handle and lug nut tool from the vehicle jack.



E178550

4. Unfold the vehicle jack handle and the hexagonal end into the correct position prior to use. Use the hexagonal end to operate the vehicle jack screw and to remove the lug nuts.

Note: *Use the hook at the hexagonal end to remove the wheel trim.*

Vehicles Without a Spare Wheel

Vehicles without a spare wheel are fitted with a temporary mobility kit. See **Temporary Mobility Kit** (page 253).

Vehicle Jack

WARNINGS

The vehicle jack supplied with your vehicle should only be used when changing a wheel in emergency situations.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

WARNINGS

Before using the vehicle jack, check that it is not damaged or deformed and that the thread is lubricated and free from foreign matter.

Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground, or between the vehicle jack and the vehicle.

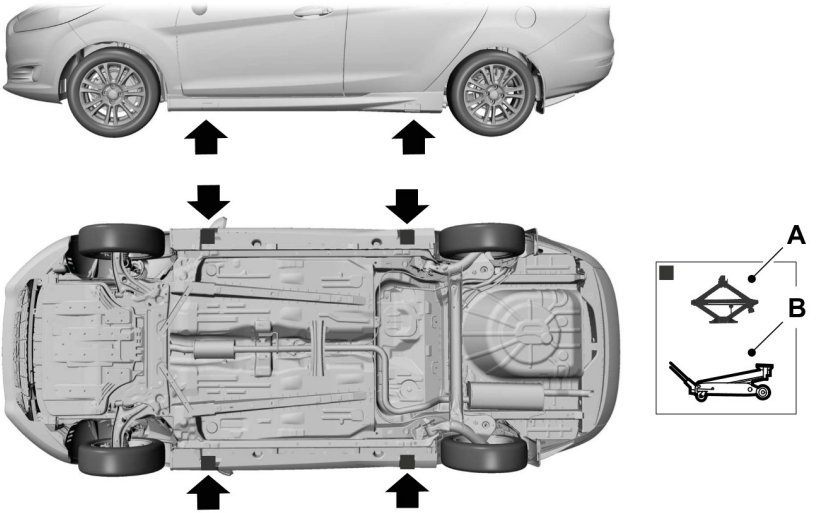
You must use a vehicle jack with a minimum lifting capacity of 1.5 tonnes and a lifting plate with a minimum diameter of 3 in (80 mm).

It is recommended to use a workshop type hydraulic jack for changing between summer and winter tires.

Jacking and Lifting Points

WARNING

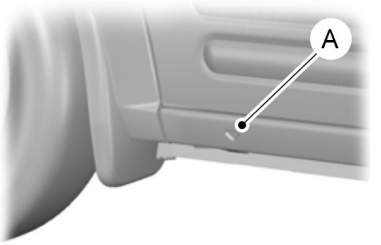
Use only the specified jacking points. If you use other positions, you may damage the body, steering, suspension, engine, braking system or the fuel lines.



E92658

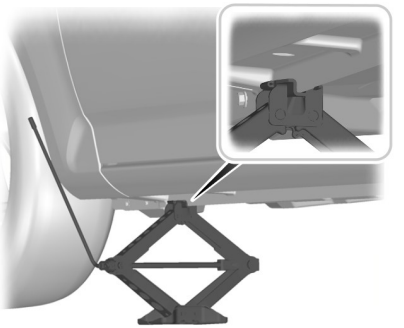
A Emergency use only
B Maintenance

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



E93302

Small arrow-shaped marks on the sills **A** show the location of the jacking points.



E92932

Place the hexagonal end of the vehicle jack handle and lug nut tool onto the vehicle jack. Turn the jack handle clockwise to raise your vehicle.



E93020

Refer to vehicle jack manufacturer's instructions.

Assembling the Wheel Brace

WARNING

The screw-in towing eye has a **left-hand thread**. Turn it counterclockwise to install it. Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened.

Type A



E122502

Insert the screw-in towing eye into the wheel brace.

Type B

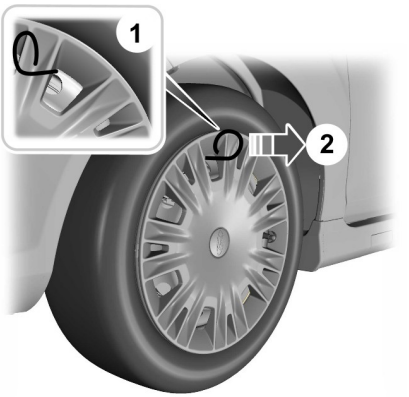
See **Vehicles With a Spare Wheel** earlier in this section.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Removing the Wheel Trim (If Equipped)

Note: *Make sure that you pull the wheel trim remover at right angles to the trim.*

Type A



E122314

1. Insert the wheel trim remover.
2. Remove the wheel trim.

Type B

1. Use the hook on the vehicle jack handle and lug nut tool to remove the wheel trim.

Removing a Road Wheel

WARNINGS

Park your vehicle in such a position that neither the traffic nor you are hindered or endangered.

Set up a warning triangle.

Make sure that the vehicle is on firm, level ground with the wheels pointing straight ahead.

WARNINGS

Switch off the ignition and apply the parking brake.

If your vehicle has a manual transmission, select first or reverse gear. If it has an automatic transmission, select park (P).

Have the passengers leave the vehicle.

Secure the diagonally opposite wheel with an appropriate block or wheel chock.

Make sure that the arrows on directional tires point in the direction of rotation when the vehicle is moving forward. If you have to fit a spare wheel with the arrows pointing in the opposite direction, have the tire refitted in the correct direction by a properly trained technician.

Do not work underneath the vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.

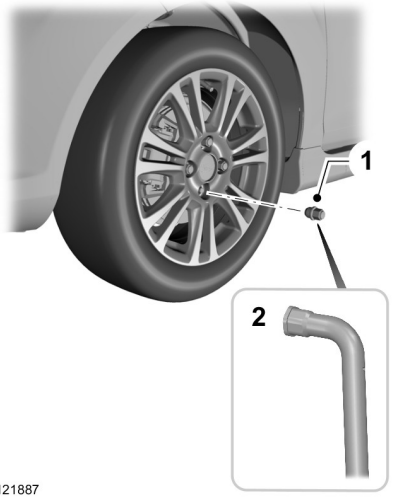
Make sure that the jack is vertical to the jacking point and the base is flat on the ground.

Note: *Do not lay alloy wheels face down on the ground, this will damage the paint.*

Note: *The spare wheel is located under the floor cover in the luggage compartment.*

1. Install the locking lug nut key.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



E121887

2. Slacken the lug nuts.
3. Jack up the vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
4. Remove the lug nuts and the wheel.

Installing a Road Wheel

WARNINGS

Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage the vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid. See **Using Snow Chains** (page 257).

Do not fit run flat tires on vehicles that were not originally fitted with them. Please contact an authorized dealer for more details regarding compatibility.

WARNING

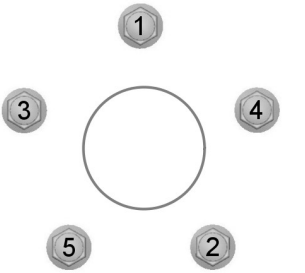
Do not install alloy wheels using lug nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

Note: *The lug nuts of alloy wheels and spoked steel wheels can also be used for the steel spare wheel for a short time (maximum two weeks).*

Note: *Make sure the wheel and hub contact surfaces are free from foreign matter.*

Note: *Make sure that the cones on the lug nuts are against the wheel.*

1. Install the wheel.
2. Install the lug nuts finger tight.
3. Install the locking lug nut key.



E75442

4. Partially tighten the lug nuts in the sequence shown.
5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack.
6. Fully tighten the lug nuts in the sequence shown. See **Using Snow Chains** (page 257).
7. Install the wheel trim using the ball of your hand.

WARNING

Have the lug nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Stowing the Flat Tire

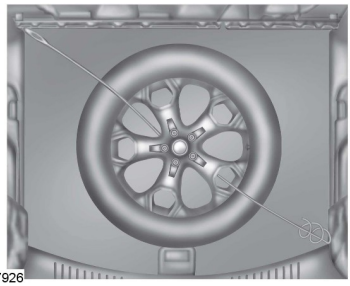
Vehicles without 3rd Row Seating

1. Put the jack and lug wrench away. Make sure the jack is fastened so it does not rattle when you drive.
2. Unblock the wheels.
3. Stow the flat tire on the floor in the cargo area. Secure with the flat tire retainer strap by following the next steps.



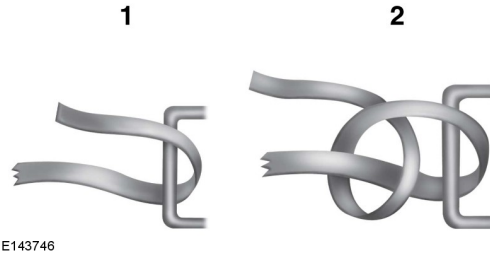
E142906

4. Locate the cargo tie-down near the seatback. Push the loop of the retainer strap through the tie-down. Thread the non-loop end through the loop
5. Weave the retainer strap through the wheel openings.



E157926

6. Locate the front cargo tie-down at the opposite corner of the cargo area to the tie-down used in Step 4. Thread the retainer strap through the tie-down and pull tight.
7. Secure by tying a 2-half hitch knot.



E143746

Vehicles with 3rd Row Seating

The below procedure is to be used when there are no passengers in the 3rd row seat. If there are passengers present in the 3rd row seat, the flat tire cannot be stored inside the vehicle.

1. Put the jack and lug wrench away. Make sure the jack is fastened so it does not rattle when you drive.
2. Unblock the wheels.
3. Secure the flat tire with a strap onto the 3rd row seats.

TIRE PRESSURES

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

CMAX COMPACT

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Continuous Speeds up to 100 mph (160 km/h) without towing

Tire size	Engine	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
205/55R16[1]	1.5L Petrol ECO 105PS	33 psi (230 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	36 psi (250 kPa)	41 psi (280 kPa)
	Diesel Engines	33 psi (230 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	36 psi (250 kPa)	41 psi (280 kPa)
	Petrol Engines	30 psi (210 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	36 psi (250 kPa)	41 psi (280 kPa)
215/55R16[2]	Diesel Engines	33 psi (230 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	36 psi (250 kPa)	41 psi (280 kPa)
	Petrol Engines	30 psi (210 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	36 psi (250 kPa)	41 psi (280 kPa)
215/50R17	Petrol Engines	30 psi (210 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	36 psi (250 kPa)	41 psi (280 kPa)
	1.5L Diesel	33 psi (230 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	36 psi (250 kPa)	41 psi (280 kPa)
	1.6L Diesel	33 psi (230 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	36 psi (250 kPa)	41 psi (280 kPa)
	2.0L Diesel	35 psi (240 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	36 psi (250 kPa)	41 psi (280 kPa)
235/40R18	Petrol Engines	30 psi (210 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	38 psi (260 kPa)	42 psi (290 kPa)
	1.5L Diesel	30 psi (210 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	38 psi (260 kPa)	42 psi (290 kPa)
	1.6L Diesel	30 psi (210 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	38 psi (260 kPa)	42 psi (290 kPa)
	2.0L Diesel	35 psi (240 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	38 psi (260 kPa)	42 psi (290 kPa)
T125/80R16	Any	60 psi (420 kPa)	60 psi (420 kPa)	60 psi (420 kPa)	60 psi (420 kPa)

[1]Up to 12mm snow chains with steel and alloy wheels.

[2]Up to 10mm snow chains with steel and alloy wheels.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Only fit snow chains to specified tires. See **Using Snow Chains** (page 257).

Continuous Speeds in excess of 100 mph (160 km/h) or under Trailer Tow conditions up to 62 mph (100 km/h)

Tire size	Engine	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
205/55R16	1.5L Petrol ECO 105PS	33 psi (230 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	36 psi (250 kPa)	41 psi (280 kPa)
	Diesel Engines	33 psi (230 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	36 psi (250 kPa)	41 psi (280 kPa)
	Petrol Engines	30 psi (210 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	36 psi (250 kPa)	41 psi (280 kPa)
215/55R16	Diesel Engines	33 psi (230 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	38 psi (260 kPa)	41 psi (280 kPa)
	Petrol Engines	32 psi (220 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	38 psi (260 kPa)	41 psi (280 kPa)
215/50R17	Petrol Engines	32 psi (220 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	39 psi (270 kPa)	41 psi (280 kPa)
	1.5L Diesel	33 psi (230 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	39 psi (270 kPa)	41 psi (280 kPa)
	1.6L Diesel	33 psi (230 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	39 psi (270 kPa)	41 psi (280 kPa)
	2.0L Diesel	36 psi (250 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	39 psi (270 kPa)	41 psi (280 kPa)
235/40R18	Petrol Engines	32 psi (220 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	39 psi (270 kPa)	42 psi (290 kPa)
	1.5L Diesel	30 psi (210 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	39 psi (270 kPa)	42 psi (290 kPa)
	1.6L Diesel	30 psi (210 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	39 psi (270 kPa)	42 psi (290 kPa)
	2.0L Diesel	36 psi (250 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	39 psi (270 kPa)	42 psi (290 kPa)
T125/80R16	Any	60 psi (420 kPa)	60 psi (420 kPa)	60 psi (420 kPa)	60 psi (420 kPa)

CMAX GRAND

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Continuous Speeds up to 100 mph (160 km/h) without towing

Tire size	Engine	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
205/55R16[1]	Petrol Engines	30 psi (210 kPa)	33 psi (230 kPa)	36 psi (250 kPa)	41 psi (280 kPa)
215/55R16[2]	Diesel Engines	33 psi (230 kPa)	33 psi (230 kPa)	38 psi (260 kPa)	42 psi (290 kPa)
	Petrol Engines	30 psi (210 kPa)	33 psi (230 kPa)	38 psi (260 kPa)	42 psi (290 kPa)
215/50R17	1.5L Diesel	33 psi (230 kPa)	33 psi (230 kPa)	38 psi (260 kPa)	42 psi (290 kPa)
	1.6L Diesel	33 psi (230 kPa)	33 psi (230 kPa)	38 psi (260 kPa)	42 psi (290 kPa)
	2.0L Diesel	35 psi (240 kPa)	33 psi (230 kPa)	38 psi (260 kPa)	42 psi (290 kPa)
	Petrol Engines	30 psi (210 kPa)	33 psi (230 kPa)	38 psi (260 kPa)	42 psi (290 kPa)
235/40R18	1.5L Diesel	32 psi (220 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	38 psi (260 kPa)	42 psi (290 kPa)
	1.6L Diesel	32 psi (220 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	38 psi (260 kPa)	42 psi (290 kPa)
	2.0L Diesel	35 psi (240 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	38 psi (260 kPa)	42 psi (290 kPa)
	Petrol Engines	30 psi (210 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	38 psi (260 kPa)	42 psi (290 kPa)
T125/80R16	Any	60 psi (420 kPa)	60 psi (420 kPa)	60 psi (420 kPa)	60 psi (420 kPa)

[1]Up to 12mm snow chains with steel and alloy wheels.

[2]Up to 10mm snow chains with steel and alloy wheels.

Only fit snow chains to specified tires. See **Using Snow Chains** (page 257).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Continuous Speeds in excess of 100 mph (160 km/h) or under Trailer Tow conditions up to 62 mph (100 km/h)

Tire size	Engine	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
205/55R16	Petrol Engines	32 psi (220 kPa)	33 psi (230 kPa)	38 psi (260 kPa)	44 psi (300 kPa)
215/55R16	Diesel Engines	35 psi (240 kPa)	33 psi (230 kPa)	39 psi (270 kPa)	46 psi (320 kPa)
	Petrol Engines	33 psi (230 kPa)	33 psi (230 kPa)	39 psi (270 kPa)	46 psi (320 kPa)
215/50R17	1.5L Diesel	33 psi (230 kPa)	33 psi (230 kPa)	39 psi (270 kPa)	46 psi (320 kPa)
	1.6L Diesel	33 psi (230 kPa)	33 psi (230 kPa)	39 psi (270 kPa)	46 psi (320 kPa)
	2.0L Diesel	36 psi (250 kPa)	33 psi (230 kPa)	39 psi (270 kPa)	46 psi (320 kPa)
	Petrol Engines	33 psi (230 kPa)	33 psi (230 kPa)	39 psi (270 kPa)	46 psi (320 kPa)
235/40R18	1.5L Diesel	32 psi (220 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	39 psi (270 kPa)	46 psi (320 kPa)
	1.6L Diesel	32 psi (220 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	39 psi (270 kPa)	46 psi (320 kPa)
	2.0L Diesel	36 psi (250 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	39 psi (270 kPa)	46 psi (320 kPa)
	Petrol Engines	33 psi (230 kPa)	30 psi (210 kPa)	39 psi (270 kPa)	46 psi (320 kPa)
T125/80R16	Any	60 psi (420 kPa)	60 psi (420 kPa)	60 psi (420 kPa)	60 psi (420 kPa)

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

LUG NUTS

WARNING

When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while the vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 100 mi (160 km) after any wheel disturbance (such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal).

Bolt size	Wheel lug nut torque*
M12 x 1.5	100 lb.ft (135 Nm)

*Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.



A Wheel pilot bore

Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

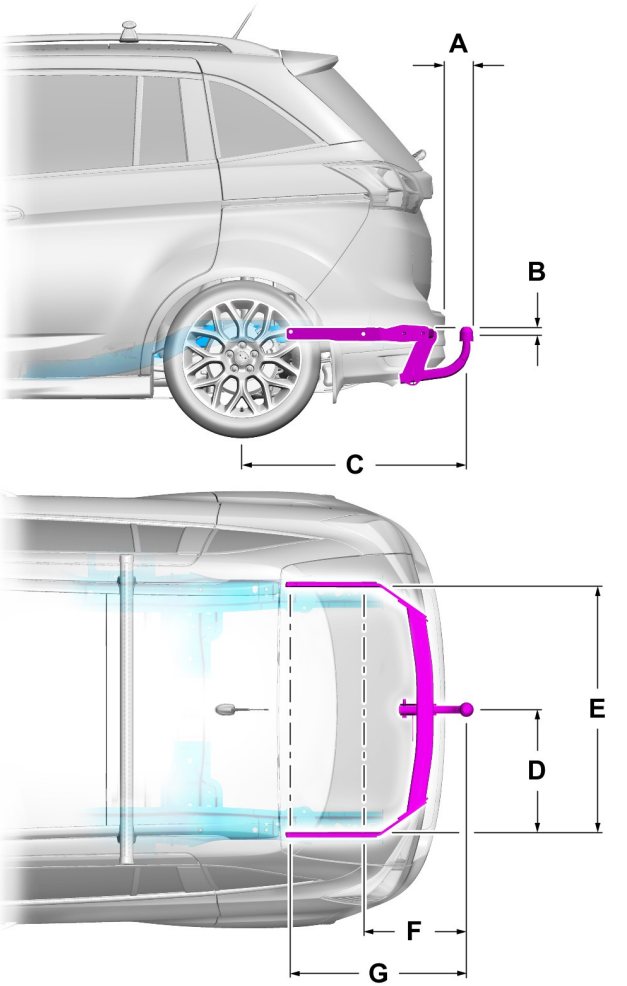
C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS

Description	in (mm)
Overall length MIN	172.4 (4,380)
Overall length MAX	173.1 (4,396)
Overall width including exterior mirrors MIN	81.4 (2,067)
Overall width including exterior mirrors MAX	82.1 (2,086)
Overall width with mirrors folded MIN	73.1 (1,858)
Overall width with mirrors folded MAX	75.6 (1,920)
Wheelbase	104.3 (2,648)
Front track MIN	60.8 (1,544)
Front track MAX	61.4 (1,559)
Rear track MIN	61.2 (1,554)
Rear track MAX	61.8 (1,569)

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

TOWBAR DIMENSIONS



E199545

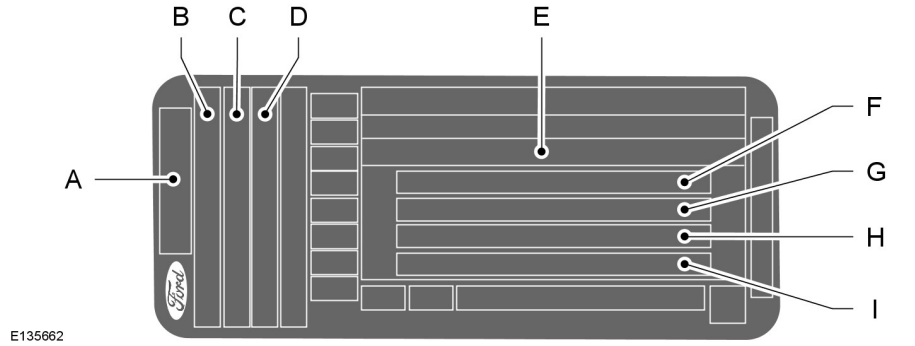
C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Item	Dimension Description	in (mm)
A	Bumper to center of tow ball.	3.3858 (86 mm)
B	Attachment point to center of tow ball.	0.1969 (5 mm)
C	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	36.4173 (925 mm)
D	Center of tow ball to side member.	20.3937 (518 mm)
E	Distance between side members.	40.7874 (1,036 mm)
F	Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.	16.7717 (426 mm)
G	Center of tow ball to center of second attachment point.	28.5827 (726 mm)

Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight

lb (kg)
198.4 (90)

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE



A Model.
B Variant.
C Engine designation.
D Engine power and emission level.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

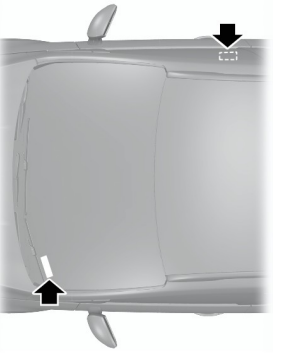
E Vehicle identification number.
F Gross vehicle weight.
G Gross train weight.
H Maximum front axle weight.
I Maximum rear axle weight.

The vehicle identification plate is within the right-hand door aperture.

Note: *The vehicle identification plate may vary to that shown.*

Note: *Information on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.*

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER



E87496

The vehicle identification number is stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, beside the front seat. It is also shown on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter	0.9 gal (4.1 L)
Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter	0.9 gal (4 L)
Engine cooling system	0.3 gal (1.3 L)
Fuel tank	12.1 gal (55 L)
Windshield and rear window washer system - including headlamp washer	1.0 gal (4.5 L)

Engine Oil Adding Capacities

Engine	Quantity
All	0.2 gal (1 L)

Specifications

Note: *Use fluids which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by your vehicle's warranty.*

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium 4U7J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2
Transmission Oil - 75W FE 7U7J-M2C200-BA/CA	WSS-M2C200-D2
Hydraulic Fluid DP-PS 5U7J-M2C204-AB	WSS-M2C204-A2
Screen Wash 2U7J-M8B16-AA/CA/DA, 5U7J-19C544-AA, 3U7J-19523-GA	WSS-M14P19-A

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

The engine has been designed to be used with Castrol and Ford Engine Oil, which gives a fuel economy benefit while maintaining the durability of the engine.

Adding oil: If you are unable to find an oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B, you must use SAE 5W-30 that meets the specification defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Note: *Do not use more than 0.2 gal (1 L) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.*

Using oils other than the one specified can result in longer engine cranking periods, reduced engine performance, reduced fuel economy and increased emission levels.

We recommend Castrol and Ford engine oils and lubricants.

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.5L ECOBOOST™

Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter	0.89 gal (4.05 L)
Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter	0.82 gal (3.75 L)
Engine cooling system	1.3 gal (5.8 L)
Fuel tank	12.1 gal (55 L)
Windshield and rear window washer system - including headlamp washer	1.0 gal (4.5 L)

Engine Oil Adding Capacities

Engine	Quantity
All	0.2 gal (0.75 L)

Specifications

Note: *Use fluids which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by your vehicle's warranty.*

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Name	Specification
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium 4U7J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2
Transmission Oil - 75W FE 7U7J-M2C200-BA/CA	WSS-M2C200-D2
Hydraulic Fluid DP-PS 5U7J-M2C204-AB	WSS-M2C204-A2
Screen Wash 2U7J-M8B16-AA/CA/DA, 5U7J-19C544-AA, 3U7J-19523-GA	WSS-M14P19-A

The engine has been designed to be used with Castrol and Ford Engine Oil, which gives a fuel economy benefit while maintaining the durability of the engine.

Adding oil: If you are unable to find an oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B, you must use SAE 5W-20 that meets the specification defined by ACEA C2.

Note: *Do not use more than 0.2 gal (1 L) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.*

Using oils other than the one specified can result in longer engine cranking periods, reduced engine performance, reduced fuel economy and increased emission levels.

We recommend Castrol and Ford engine oils and lubricants.

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.6L DURATEC-16V TI-VCT (SIGMA)/1.6L FLEX FUEL

Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter	0.9 gal (4.1 L)
Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter	0.8 gal (3.75 L)
Engine cooling system	1.3 gal (5.7 L)
Fuel tank	12.1 gal (55 L)
Windshield and rear window washer system - including headlamp washer	1.0 gal (4.5 L)

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Engine Oil Adding Capacities

Engine	Quantity
All	0.2 gal (0.8 L)

Specifications

Note: *Use fluids which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by your vehicle's warranty.*

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B
Engine Oil - 5W-30	WSS-M2C913-C
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium 4U7J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2
Transmission Oil - 75W FE 7U7J-M2C200-BA/CA	WSS-M2C200-D2
Hydraulic Fluid DP-PS 5U7J-M2C204-AB	WSS-M2C204-A2
Screen Wash 2U7J-M8B16-AA/CA/DA, 5U7J-19C544-AA, 3U7J-19523-GA	WSS-M14P19-A

The engine has been designed to be used with Castrol and Ford Engine Oil, which gives a fuel economy benefit while maintaining the durability of the engine.

Adding oil: If you are unable to find an oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B or WSS-M2C913-C, you must use SAE 5W-20 or SAE 5W-30 that meets the specification defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Note: *Do not use more than 0.2 gal (1 L) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.*

Using oils other than the one specified can result in longer engine cranking periods, reduced engine performance, reduced fuel economy and increased emission levels.

We recommend Castrol and Ford engine oils and lubricants.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL

Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter	0.85 gal (3.85 L)
Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter	0.76 gal (3.45 L)
Engine cooling system	1.6 gal (7.3 L)
Fuel tank	12.1 gal (55 L)
Windshield and rear window washer system - including headlamp washer	1.0 gal (4.5 L)

Engine Oil Adding Capacities

Engine	Quantity
All	0.4 gal (1.6 L)

Specifications

Note: *Use fluids which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by your vehicle's warranty.*

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - 0W-30	WSS-M2C950-A
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium 4U7J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2
Transmission Oil - 75W FE 7U7J-M2C200-BA/CA	WSS-M2C200-D2
Hydraulic Fluid DP-PS 5U7J-M2C204-AB	WSS-M2C204-A2
Screen Wash 2U7J-M8B16-AA/CA/DA, 5U7J-19C544-AA, 3U7J-19523-GA	WSS-M14P19-A

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

The engine has been designed to be used with Castrol and Ford Engine Oil, which gives a fuel economy benefit while maintaining the durability of the engine.

Adding oil: If you are unable to find an oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C950-A, you must use SAE 0W-30 that meets the specification defined by ACEA C2. Alternatively you can use SAE 5W-30 that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C913-D or ACEA A5/B5.

Note: *Do not use more than 0.2 gal (1 L) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.*

Using oils other than the specified WSS-M2C950-A SAE 0W-30 can result in longer engine cranking periods, reduced engine performance, reduced fuel economy and increased emission levels.

We recommend Castrol and Ford engine oils and lubricants.

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.6L DURATORQ-TDCI (DV) DIESEL

Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter	0.8 gal (3.85 L)
Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter	0.8 gal (3.45 L)
Engine cooling system	1.6 gal (7.3 L)
Fuel tank	12.1 gal (55 L)
Windshield and rear window washer system - including headlamp washer	1.0 gal (4.5 L)

Engine Oil Adding Capacities

Engine	Quantity
All	0.4 gal (1.6 L)

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Specifications

Note: *Use fluids which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by your vehicle's warranty.*

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - 5W-30	WSS-M2C913-C
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium 4U7J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2
Transmission Oil - 75W FE 7U7J-M2C200-BA/CA	WSS-M2C200-D2
Hydraulic Fluid DP-PS 5U7J-M2C204-AB	WSS-M2C204-A2
Screen Wash 2U7J-M8B16-AA/CA/DA, 5U7J-19C544-AA, 3U7J-19523-GA	WSS-M14P19-A

The engine has been designed to be used with Castrol and Ford Engine Oil, which gives a fuel economy benefit while maintaining the durability of the engine.

Adding oil: If you are unable to find an oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C913-C, you must use SAE 5W-30 that meets the specification defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Note: *Do not use more than 0.2 gal (1 L) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.*

Using oils other than the one specified can result in longer engine cranking periods, reduced engine performance, reduced fuel economy and increased emission levels.

We recommend Castrol and Ford engine oils and lubricants.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L DURATORQ-TDCI (DW) DIESEL

Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine lubrication system - including the oil filter	1.3 gal (6.1 L)
Engine lubrication system - excluding the oil filter	1.2 gal (5.65 L)
Engine cooling system	1.4 gal (6.5 L)
Fuel tank	12.1 gal (55 L)
Windshield and rear window washer system - including headlamp washer	1.0 gal (4.5 L)

Engine Oil Adding Capacities

Engine	Quantity
All	0.4 gal (1.6 L)

Specifications

Note: *Use fluids which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by your vehicle's warranty.*

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - 0W-30	WSS-M2C950-A
Antifreeze Super Plus Premium 4U7J-19544-xxxx	WSS-M97B44-D
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance BU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2
Transmission Oil - 75W FE 7U7J-M2C200-BA/CA	WSS-M2C200-D2
Hydraulic Fluid DP-PS 5U7J-M2C204-AB	WSS-M2C204-A2
Screen Wash 2U7J-M8B16-AA/CA/DA, 5U7J-19C544-AA, 3U7J-19523-GA	WSS-M14P19-A

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

The engine has been designed to be used with Castrol and Ford Engine Oil, which gives a fuel economy benefit while maintaining the durability of the engine.

Adding oil: If you are unable to find an oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C950-A, you must use SAE 0W-30 that meets the specification defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Note: *Do not use more than 0.2 gal (1 L) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.*

Using oils other than the one specified can result in longer engine cranking periods, reduced engine performance, reduced fuel economy and increased emission levels.



We recommend Castrol and Ford engine oils and lubricants.

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES

Please refer to the regional Ford website.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

Radio reception factors	
Distance and Strength	The further you travel away from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
Station overload	When you pass near a radio transmission tower, a stronger signal can override a weaker signal and can cause interference in the audio system.

CD and CD Player Information

Note: *CD units play commercially pressed 4.75-inch (12 centimeter) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.*

Note: *Do not insert CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. You should use a permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels on your homemade CDs. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact an authorized dealer for further information.*

Note: *Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.*

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only. Wipe it from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods.

MP3 and WMA Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 and WMA individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 and WMA disc playback: MP3 and WMA track mode (system default) and MP3 and WMA folder mode.
- MP3 and WMA track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 and WMA disc. The player numbers each MP3 and WMA track on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. The maximum number of playable MP3 and WMA files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

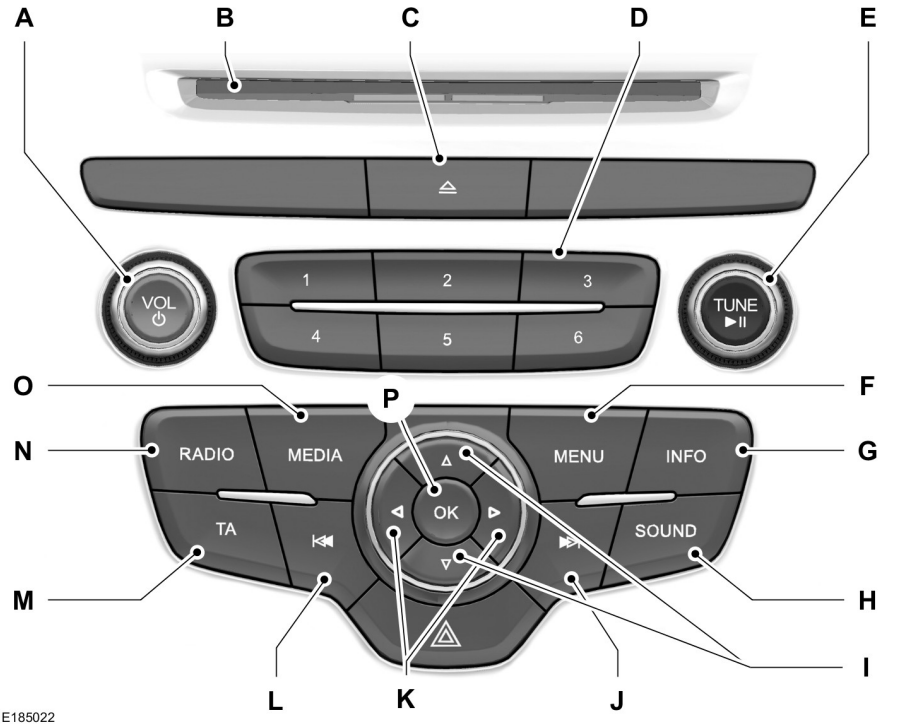
- MP3 and WMA folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 and WMA tracks on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) and all folders containing MP3 and WMA files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 and WMA discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than MP3 and WMA), only files with the MP3 and WMA extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 and WMA disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all MP3 and WMA files play, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the MP3 and WMA files in the current folder.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: AM/FM/CD



A **On, Off and Volume:** Press the button to switch the audio system on or off. Turn the dial to adjust the volume.

B **CD slot:** Where you insert a CD.

C **Eject:** Press the button to eject a CD.

D **Numeric keypad:** Press the button to recall a previously stored station. To store a favorite station press and hold until the sound returns.

E **TUNE and Play or Pause:** In radio mode, turn to search the frequency band in individual increments. Press to mute a station. In media mode, turn to select a new track. Press to either play or pause a track.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

F **MENU:** Press this button to access different audio system features. See **Menu Structure** later in this section.

G **INFO:** Press this button to access more information depending upon the source selected.

H **SOUND:** Press the button to adjust the sound settings for bass, treble, middle, balance and fade. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting. Use the left and right arrow buttons to make the necessary adjustment. Press **OK** to set or press **MENU** to exit. Sound settings can be set for each audio source independently.

I **Arrow up and down:** Press a button to scroll through on-screen choices.

J **Seek and Fast Forward:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station up the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly, then release to stop at the next available station. In CD mode, press this button to select the next track. Press and hold the button to move quickly forward through the current track.

K **Arrow left and right:** Press a button to scroll through on-screen choices.

L **Seek and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station down the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly, then release to stop at the previous available station. In CD mode, press this button to select the previous track. Press and hold the button to move quickly backward through the current track.

M **TA:** Press the button to turn traffic announcements on or off and cancels announcements during an active announcement.

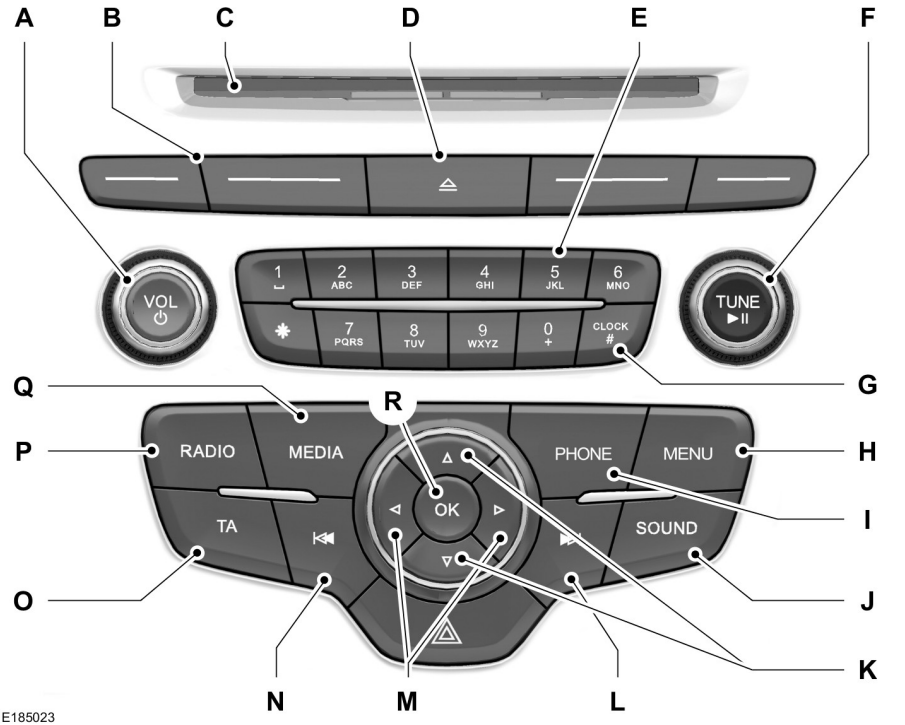
N **RADIO:** Press this button to listen to the radio or change radio bands, for example AM, FM or DAB.

O **MEDIA:** Press this button to listen to media or to switch between media sources, for example CD, USB or Line In.

P **OK:** Press the button to confirm on-screen selections.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC



A **On, off and VOL:** Press this button to turn the system off and on. Turn it to adjust the volume.

B **Function buttons 1 - 4:** Select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode you are in (for example Radio mode or CD mode).

C **CD slot:** Insert a CD.

D **Eject:** Press this button to eject a CD.

E **Number block:** In radio mode, store and recall your favorite radio stations. To store a radio station, tune to the station, then press and hold a preset button until sound returns. In CD mode, select a track. In phone mode, enter a phone number.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

F **TUNE and Play or Pause:** In radio mode, turn to search the frequency band in individual increments or jump to the next station of the station list. Press to mute a station. In media mode, turn to select a new track. Press to either play or pause a track.

G **CLOCK:** Press to display the clock.

H **MENU:** Press this button to access different audio system features. See **Menu Structure** later in this section.

I **PHONE:** Press this button to access the phone features of the SYNC system. See **SYNC™** (page 300).

J **SOUND:** Press this button to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade and Balance. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the various settings. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to change the settings. Press **OK** to set or press **MENU** to exit. Sound settings can be set for each audio source independently.

K **Arrow up and down:** Press to navigate within menus.

L **Seek and Fast Forward:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station up the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly, then release to stop at the next available station. In CD mode, press this button to select the next track. Press and hold the button to move quickly forward through the current track.

M **Arrow left and right:** Press to navigate within menus.

N **Seek and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station down the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly, then release to stop at the previous available station. In CD mode, press this button to select the previous track. Press and hold the button to move quickly backward through the current track.

O **TA:** Press this button to turn traffic announcements on and off.

P **RADIO:** Press this button multiple times to select a radio band. Press and hold to select the autostore function. Press to return to the main screen of the active radio band.

Q **MEDIA:** Press this button multiple times to switch between CD and a SYNC-Media device. Press this button to return to the main screen of the active device.

R **OK:** Press this button to confirm menu selections.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

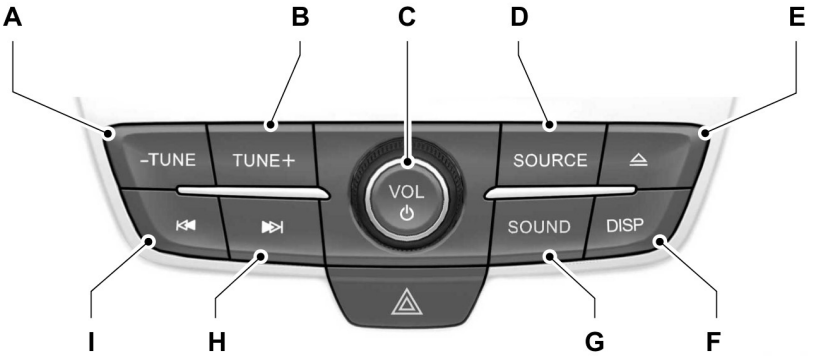
AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *The system controls most of the audio features. See* ***SYNC™ 2*** *(page 340).*

Note: *The CD slot is located above the touchscreen.*



E201770

A **-TUNE:** Press this button to manually search through the radio frequency band.

B **TUNE +:** Press this button to manually search through the radio frequency band.

C **On, off and VOL:** Press this button to switch the audio system off and on. Turn to adjust the volume.

D **SOURCE:** Press this button to access different audio modes, for example AM, FM and CD.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

E **Eject:** Press this button to eject a CD.

F **DISP:** Press this button to switch the display screen off.

G **SOUND:** Press this button to adjust the sound settings for Bass, Treble, Balance, Fade and Occupancy.

H **Seek and Fast Forward:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station up the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly, then release to stop at the next available station. In CD mode, press this button to select the next track. Press and hold the button to move quickly forward through the current track.

I **Seek and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station down the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly, then release to stop at the previous available station. In CD mode, press this button to select the previous track. Press and hold the button to move quickly backward through the current track.

DIGITAL RADIO

The system allows you to listen to DAB (Digital Audio Broadcast) radio stations.

Note: *Coverage differs from region to region and will influence the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally.*

The following formats are supported:

- DAB
- DAB+
- DMB-Audio (Digital Multimedia Broadcasting).

Ensembles

Ensembles contain a group of radio stations. Each ensemble can consist of several different radio stations.

The radio station name displays below the ensemble name.

Note: *When you tune from one ensemble to another, it can take a while until the system synchronizes to the next ensemble. The system mutes during synchronization.*

Selecting Radio Band

DAB1 and DAB2 operate in the same way. You can store up to 10 different presets on each band.

1. Press the **RADIO** button.
2. Press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands.
3. Select **DAB1** or **DAB2**.

Note: *When you reach the first or last radio station within an ensemble, further tuning will skip to the next ensemble. There may be a delay during this change and the audio will briefly mute.*

Radio Station Tuning Controls

Seek Tuning (Alternative 1)

Press a seek button. The system will stop at the first radio station it finds in the direction chosen.

Radio Station List (Alternative 2)

This feature displays all the available radio stations in a list.

1. Press function button 1.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

2. Press the left or right arrow buttons to change ensembles. Press the up or down arrow button to navigate to your required radio station.
3. Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

Note: *The display will only show radio stations in the current ensemble.*

Manual Tuning (Alternative 3)

1. Press function button 2.
2. Press the left or right arrow button to tune up or down the waveband in small increments. Press and hold to move through the waveband quickly.
3. Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

Note: *Seek tuning is also possible within this screen.*

Radio Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store up to 10 favorite radio stations from any ensemble in each preset bank.

1. Select a radio station.
2. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. A progress bar and message will appear. When the progress bar completes the radio station has been stored. The system will mute momentarily as confirmation.

Once stored press a preset button at any time to select a favourite radio station.

Note: *Radio stations stored on the preset buttons may not always be available if you have left the coverage area. The system will mute when this happens.*

Radio Text

You can display extra information. For example; artist name. To switch this option on, select a radio station and press function button 3.

Note: *Extra information may not always be available.*

Service Linking

If you leave the coverage area of a DAB radio station the system will automatically switch to the corresponding FM radio station.

You can switch this feature on and off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 80).

Note: *If a DAB radio station has no corresponding FM radio station, the audio will mute when attempting to switch.*

Note: *The system will display the FM symbol when DAB and FM radio stations link.*

DIGITAL RADIO - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 2

The system allows you to listen to DAB (Digital Audio Broadcast) radio stations.

Note: *Coverage differs from region to region and will influence the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally.*

The following formats are supported:

- DAB
- DAB+
- DMB-Audio (Digital Multimedia Broadcasting).

Ensembles

Ensembles contain a group of radio stations. Each ensemble can consist of several different radio stations.

The radio station name displays below the ensemble name.

Note: *When you tune from one ensemble to another, it can take a while until the system synchronizes to the next ensemble. The system mutes during synchronization.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Selecting Radio Band

DAB 1, DAB 2 and DAB 3 operate in the same way. You can store up to 10 different presets on each band.

1. Press the **RADIO** button.
2. Press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands.
3. Select **DAB 1**, **DAB 2** or **DAB 3**.

Note: *When you reach the first or last radio station within an ensemble, further tuning will skip to the next ensemble. There may be a delay during this change and the audio will briefly mute.*

Radio Station Tuning Controls

Seek Tuning (Alternative 1)

Press a seek button. The system will stop at the first radio station it finds in the direction chosen

Radio Station List (Alternative 2)

This feature displays all the available radio stations in a list.

1. Press the browse button.
2. Press the previous or next arrow buttons to change ensembles.
3. Navigate through the list and select the required station by pressing the touch screen button for the station.
4. Press **OK** to confirm your selection.

Note: *The display will only show radio stations in the current ensemble.*

Manual Tuning (Alternative 3)

Press the tune plus or tune minus buttons.

Radio Station Preset Buttons

This feature allows you to store up to 6 favorite radio stations from any ensemble in each preset bank.

1. Select a radio station.
2. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. A progress bar and message will appear. When the progress bar completes the radio station has been stored. The system will mute momentarily as confirmation.

Once stored press a preset button at any time to select a favorite radio station.

Note: *Radio stations stored on the preset buttons may not always be available if you have left the coverage area. The system will mute when this happens.*

Radio Text

You can display extra information. For example; artist name. To switch this option on, select the radio text on feature in the options menu.

Note: *Extra information may not always be available.*

Service Linking

If you leave the coverage area of a DAB radio station the system will automatically switch to the corresponding FM radio station.

You can switch this feature on and off.

Note: *If a DAB radio station has no corresponding FM radio station, the audio will mute when attempting to switch.*

Note: *The system will display the FM symbol when DAB and FM radio stations link.*

AUDIO INPUT JACK

WARNINGS

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

WARNINGS

operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Do not connect or adjust the settings on your portable music player when your vehicle is moving.

Do not place your portable music player on the instrument panel. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.



E149149

The audio input jack allows you to connect and play music from a portable music player through your vehicle speakers. You can use any portable music player designed for use with headphones.

Your audio extension cable must have male 1/8th-inch (3.5 millimeter) connectors at each end.

1. Switch off the radio and portable music player. Apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into park (**P**) for automatic transmission or first gear for manual transmission. Switch the ignition off.
2. Plug the extension cable from the portable music player into the audio input jack.
3. Switch the radio on. Select either a tuned FM station or a CD.
4. Adjust the volume as desired.
5. Switch your portable music player on and adjust its volume to half its maximum level.
6. Press **AUX** or **MEDIA** until **LINE** or **LINE IN** appears in the display. You should hear music from your device even if it is low.
7. Adjust the volume on your portable music player until it reaches the volume level of the FM station or CD. Do this by switching back and forth between the AUX and FM or CD controls.

USB PORT



E176344

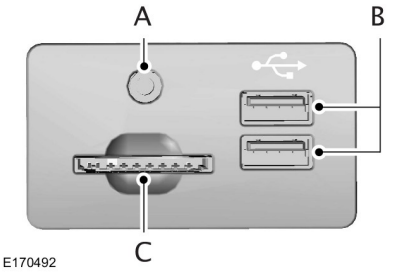
The USB port is located in the center console.

The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices (if supported). See **SYNC™** (page 300).

MEDIA HUB

The media hub is located in front of the gearshift.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



A Line in
B USB ports
C SD card slot

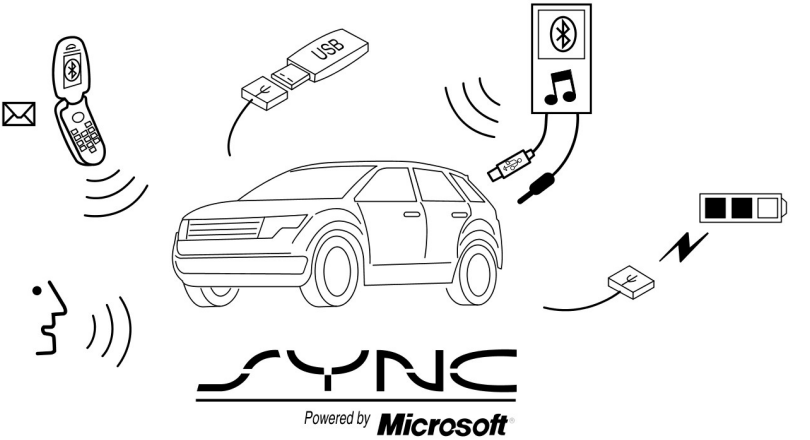
See **Entertainment** (page 361).

AUDIO TROUBLESHOOTING

Message	Description and Action
Please check CD	General error message for CD fault conditions. For example cannot read the CD, data-CD inserted, etc. Make sure the disc is loaded correctly. Clean and re-try, or replace disc with known music disc. If the error persists contact an authorized dealer.
CD Drive malfunction	General error message for a mechanism fault. The system has detected a fault that requires service.
CD drive too hot	General error message for the mechanism being too hot. The unit will not work until it has cooled down. If the error persists contact an authorized dealer.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION



E142598

SYNC is an in-vehicle communications system that works with your Bluetooth-enabled cell phone and portable media player.

This allows you to:

- Make and receive calls
- Access and play music from your media player
- Use Emergency Assistance and applications, via SYNC Applink *
- Access phonebook contacts and music using voice commands
- Stream music from your connected cell phone
- Select pre-defined text messages (if your device supports this)
- Use the advanced voice recognition system
- Charge your USB device (if your device supports this)

*These features are not available in all markets and may require activation. Available AppLink enabled apps vary by market.

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.

Support

For further support, see an authorized dealer. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Safety Information

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

When using SYNC:

- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Carefully place cords and cables where you cannot step on them or they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. Refer to your device's manual for further information.
- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. See an authorized dealer.

Privacy Information

When a cell phone is connected to SYNC, the system creates a profile that is linked to that cell phone. The system creates the profile to offer you more mobile features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your phonebook, text messages (read and unread) and call history. This will include the history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. If you connect a media player, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cell phone profile, media player index and development log will remain in the system unless deleted. They are generally accessible in your vehicle only when you connect your cell phone or media player. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you complete a master reset to erase all stored information. See **SYNC™** (page 300).

Special equipment is required to access system data. Access to your vehicle's SYNC module is also required. We will not access the system data for any purpose other than as described without consent. Examples where system data can be accessed are for a court order, where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of us. Further privacy information is available. See **SYNC™ Applications and Services** (page 315).

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the steering wheel and focus on what is in front of you.

Helpful Hints

Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Before giving a voice command, wait for the system announcement to finish followed by a single beep. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.

Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.

You can interrupt the system at any time while it is speaking by pressing the voice button. You can also cancel a voice session at any time by pressing and holding the voice button.

Initiating a Voice Session



Press the voice button located on the steering wheel. A list of available commands appears in the display.

Global voice commands	
(cancel | stop | exit)	This command ends the voice session. You can also cancel a session by holding the voice button for two or more seconds.
help	This command provides you with hints, examples and instructions.
main menu	This command restarts the voice session from the initial starting point.

System Interaction and Feedback

The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and your chosen level of interaction. You can customize the voice recognition system to provide more or less instruction and feedback.

The default setting is to a higher level of interaction in order to help you learn to use the system. You can change these settings at any time.

Adjusting the Interaction Level



Press the voice button. When prompted:

Command	Description
voice settings	Provides access to change the interaction level.

Then any of the following:

Command	Description
interaction mode advanced	Provides less audible interaction and more tone prompts.
interaction mode novice	Provides more detailed interaction and guidance.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Confirmation prompts are short questions the system asks when it is not sure of your request or when there is more than one possible response to your request. For example, the system may ask if the command phone is correct.

Press the voice button. When prompted:

Command	Description
voice settings	Provides access to change the confirmation prompt setting.

Then any of the following:

Command	Description
confirmation prompts off	Makes a best guess from the command. You may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings.
confirmation prompts on	Clarifies your voice command with a short question.

The system creates suggestion lists when it has the same confidence level of several options based on your voice commands. When switched on, the system may prompt you with as many as four possibilities for clarification.

Command	Description
media candidate lists off	Makes a best guess from the media suggestion list. The system may occasionally ask you questions.
media candidate lists on	Clarifies your voice command for media suggestions.
phone candidate lists off	Makes a best guess from the cell phone suggestion list. The system may occasionally ask you questions.
phone candidate lists on	Clarifies your voice command for cell phone suggestions.

Changing the Voice Settings

You can change the voice settings using the information and entertainment display.

Press the **MENU** button.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

You can then select the following:

Action	Message
SYNC-Settings	
Voice settings	Enters menu for voice options.

USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR PHONE

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cell phone's functionality.

At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Using privacy mode.
- Dialing a number.
- Redialing.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

Other features such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download are cell phone dependent features. To check your cell phone's compatibility, refer to your device's manual or visit the regional Ford website.

Pairing a Cell Phone For the First Time

Wirelessly pairing your cell phone with the system allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

Note: *You must switch the ignition and radio on.*

Note: *To scroll through the menus, press the up or down arrows on your audio system.*

1. Make sure the Bluetooth feature on your cell phone is switched on before starting the search. Refer to your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button. When the audio display indicates that no phones are paired, select the option to add.
3. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your cell phone to start the pairing process.
4. Select SYNC on your cell phone.
5. Wait until the PIN appears on the phone display. Compare the PIN on the phone with the PIN shown in the audio display and accept the request on the phone and the vehicle display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

Note: *In some cases the phone will request to enter a PIN. Enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.*

Depending on your cell phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions such as setting the current cell phone as the primary cell phone (the cell phone the system automatically tries to connect with first when you switch the ignition on) or downloading your phonebook.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing


The information display may show your cell phone's battery charge level and signal strength.

Using Voice Commands



Make sure to switch on your phone's Bluetooth feature before starting the search. See your device's manual if necessary.

Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
(pair ([Bluetooth] device | phone | Bluetooth [audio]) | add phone)	Follow the instructions on the audio display.

Words in square brackets [ ] are optional and do not have to be spoken for the system to understand the command.

Depending on your phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions, such as setting the current phone as the primary phone (the phone SYNC automatically tries to connect with first upon vehicle start-up) and downloading your phonebook.

Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones

Wirelessly pairing your cell phone with the system allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

Note: *You must switch the ignition and radio on.*

Note: *To scroll through the menus, press the up or down arrows on your audio system.*

1. Make sure the Bluetooth feature on your cell phone is switched on before starting the search. Refer to your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button.
3. Select the option for Bluetooth devices.
4. Press the **OK** button.
5. Select the option to add. This starts the pairing process.
6. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your device to start the pairing process.
7. Select SYNC on your cell phone.
8. Wait until the PIN appears on the phone display. Compare the PIN on the phone with the PIN shown in the audio display and accept the request on the phone and the vehicle display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

Note: *In some cases the phone will request to enter a PIN. Enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.*

The system may prompt you with questions such as setting the current cell phone as the primary cell phone or downloading your phonebook.

Cell Phone Voice Commands


Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command
(phone | Blackberry | iPhone | Mobile)
Then say any of the following:
call (___)
call ___ at home

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Voice Command	
call ___ ([at] work | [(in | at) [the]] office)	
call ___ on (mobile | cell)	
call ___ on other	
dial [[a] number]	1
([go to] privacy [on] | transfer to phone | handsfree off)	2
(hold call [on] | (put | place) call on hold)	2
join (call | calls)	2
mute [call] [on]	2
(mute [call] off | Unmute [call])	2
(turn ringer on | silent mode off)	
(turn ringer off | silent mode [on])	
[text] (messages | message)	3
Help	

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of anything, such as a group, artist or song. For example you could say "Play artist The Beetles".

[1] See **Dial** table below.

[2] These commands are only valid while in a phone call.

[3] See the text message table below.

Dial Commands

Press the voice button and when prompted say any of the following commands:

Voice Command	Action and Description
Pound	This will add a # symbol to the number or name.
Number	0 (zero) to 9 (nine)
Asterisk or Star	This will add a * symbol to the number or name.
clear	Deletes all entered digits
(delete | correct)	Deletes the last set of entered digits.
Plus	This will add a + symbol to the number or name.

Note: *To exit dial mode, press and hold the phone button or any button on the audio unit.*

Phonebook Hints

To hear how the SYNC system speaks a name browse phonebook, select a contact and press:

Menu Item
Hear it

Making a Call

Press the voice button and when prompted say either:

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Voice Command	Action and Description
call (someone | [[a] name])	
dial [[a] number]	SYNC prompts you to say the numbers that you wish to dial. After you say the numbers, the system confirms it.

When the system has stated the number, you say any of the following:

Voice Command	Action and Description
(dial | send)	This initiates the call.
(delete | correct)	To erase the last spoken digit.
clear	To erase all spoken digits.

To end the call, press the end call button on the steering wheel or select the end call option in the audio display and press **OK**.

Receiving a Call

When receiving a call, you can:

- Answer the call by pressing the accept call button on the steering wheel or by selecting the accept call option in the audio display and pressing the **OK** button.
- Reject the call by pressing the reject call button on the steering wheel or by selecting the reject call option in the audio display and pressing the **OK** button.
- Ignore the call by doing nothing.

Cell Phone Options During an Active Call

During an active call, you have extra menu features which become available, for example putting a call on hold.

To access this menu, choose one of the options available at the bottom of the audio display or select the option for more.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Mic. off	Turn your vehicle's microphone off. To turn the microphone on, select the option again.
Privacy	Switch a call from an active hands-free environment to your cell phone for a more private conversation. When selected, the audio display will indicate the call is private.
Hold	Put an active call on hold. When selected, the audio display will indicate the call is on hold.
Dial a number	Enter numbers using the audio system numeric keypad, for example numbers for passwords.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
Join calls	Join two separate calls. The system supports a maximum of three callers on a multi-party or conference call. 1. Select the option for more. 2. Access the desired contact through the system or use voice commands to place the second call. Once actively in the second call, select the option for more. 3. Scroll to the option to join calls and press the **OK** button.
Phonebook	Access your phonebook contacts. 1. Select the option for more. 2. Scroll to the option for phonebook and press the **OK** button. 3. Scroll through your phonebook contacts. 4. Press the **OK** button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display. 5. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.
Call history	Access your call history log. 1. Select the option for more. 2. Scroll to the option until call history appears. Press the **OK** button. 3. Scroll through your call history options (incoming, outgoing or missed). 4. Press the **OK** button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display. 5. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.

Accessing Features Through the Cell Phone Menu

You can access your call history, phonebook, sent text messages as well as access cell phone and system settings. You can also access advanced features such as emergency assistance.

The system attempts to automatically re-download your phonebook and call history each time your cell phone connects to the system. You must turn on the auto download feature if your cell phone supports it.

Note: *This is a cell phone dependent feature.*

1. Press the **PHONE** button to enter the cell phone menu.
2. Select one of the options available.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
Dial a number	Dial a number using the audio system numeric keypad.
Redial	Redial the last number called (if available). Press the **OK** button to select.
Phonebook	Access your downloaded phonebook. 1. Press the **OK** button to confirm and enter. You can use the options at the bottom of the screen to quickly access an alphabetical category. You can also use the letters on the keypad to jump in the list. 2. Scroll through your phonebook contacts. 3. Press the **OK** button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display. 4. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.
Call history	Access any previously dialed, received or missed calls. 1. Press the **OK** button to select. 2. Scroll to select either incoming calls, outgoing calls or missed calls. Press the **OK** button to make your selection. 3. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.
Speed Dial	Select one of 10 speed dial entries. To set a speed dial entry, go to the phonebook and press and hold one of the numbers on the audio system numeric keypad.
Text messaging	Send, download and delete text messages.
BT Devices	Access the following option for Bluetooth device menu listings:
	Add
	Delete
	Conn.
	Discon.
	Master
Phone settings	View various settings and features on your cell phone.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Text Messaging

The system allows you to receive, send, download and delete text messages. The system can also read incoming text messages to you so that you do not have to take your eyes off the road.

Note: *This is a cell phone dependent feature.*

Receiving a Text Message

Note: *This is a phone-dependent feature. Your phone must support downloading text messages using Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.*

Note: *This is a speed-dependent feature and is only available when your vehicle is traveling at 3.1 mph (5 km/h) or less.*

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the audio display indicates you have a new message.

To hear the message you can say:

Voice command	Action and Description
(listen to | read) ([text] message)	Select this option to have the system read the message to you.

Using the screen you also have the following options:

Menu Item	Action and Description		
Ignore	Select this option, or do nothing, and the message goes into your text message inbox.		
View	Select the view option to open the text message. Once selected, you have the ability to have the message read to you, to view other messages. For additional options select:		
	More...	If you select this option, use the arrow button to scroll through the following options:	
		Reply to sender	Press the **OK** button to access, and then scroll through a list of pre-defined messages to send.
		Call sender	Press the **OK** button to call the sender of the message.
		Forward msg.	Press the **OK** button to forward the message to anyone in your phonebook or call history. You can also choose to enter a number.

Sending, Downloading and Deleting Your Text Messages

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Select the text messaging option, then press the **OK** button.

Choose from the following:

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
New	When you select the option to send a text message, a list of pre-defined messages appear in the audio display. Allows you to send a new text message based on a pre-defined set of 15 messages.
View	Allows you to read the full message and in addition provides the option to have the message read out to you by the system. To go to the next message select the more option. This allows you to reply to the sender, call the sender or forward the message.
Delete	Allows you to delete current text messages from the system (not your cell phone). The audio display indicates when all your text messages have been deleted.
More...	Allows you to delete all messages or to manually trigger a download of all unread messages from your cell phone.

Sending a Text Message

1. Select the send option when the desired selection is highlighted in the audio display.
2. Select the confirmation option when the contact appears and press the **OK** button again to confirm when the system asks if you would like to send the message. Each text message is sent with a pre-defined signature.

Note: *You can send text messages two ways. You can chose a contact from your phonebook, call history or by entering a phone number and selecting the text option from the audio display. You can also reply to a received message in the inbox.*

Note: *Only one recipient is allowed per text message.*

Accessing Your Cell Phone Settings

These are cell phone dependent features. Your cell phone settings allow you to access and adjust features such as your ringtone, text message notification, modify your phonebook and set up automatic download.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until the phone settings option appears, then press the **OK** button.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
Set as master	If this option is checked, the system will use this cell phone as the master when there is more than one cell phone paired to the system. This option can be changed for all paired cell phones (not only for the active one) using the Bluetooth devices menu.
Phone status	See the cell phone name, provider name, cell phone number, signal level and battery level. When done, press the left arrow button to return to the cell phone status menu.
Set ringtone	Select which ringtone sounds during an incoming call (one of the system's or your cell phone's). If your cell phone supports in-band ringing, your cell phone's ringtone sounds when you choose the cell phone ringtone option. 1. Press the **OK** button to select and scroll to hear each ringtone. 2. Press the **OK** button to select.
Text msg notify	Have the option of hearing an audible tone to notify you when a text message arrives. Press the **OK** button to turn the audible tone on or off.
Phonebook pref.	Modify the contents of your phonebook, e.g. add, delete, download. Press the **OK** button to select and scroll between the options in the table below.

To modify the phone book preferences, choose from the following:

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
Add contacts	Push the desired contacts on your cell phone. Refer to your device's manual on how to push contacts. Press the **OK** button to add more contacts from your phonebook.
Delete	When a message asking you to delete appears, select the option to confirm. Press the **OK** button to delete the current phonebook and call history. The system takes you back to the menu for phone settings.
Download now	Press the **OK** button to select and download your phonebook to the system.
Auto-download	When automatic download is switched on, any changes, additions or deletions saved in the system since your last download are deleted. When automatic download is switched off, your phonebook will not be downloaded when your cell phone connects to the system. Your phonebook, call history and text messages can only be accessed when your paired cell phone is connected to the system. Check or uncheck this option to automatically download your phonebook each time your cell phone connects to the system. Downloading times are cell phone dependent and quantity dependent.

Bluetooth Devices

This menu provides access to your Bluetooth devices. Use the arrow buttons to scroll through the menu options. It allows you to add, connect and delete devices and set a cell phone as primary.

Bluetooth Devices Menu Options

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until the Bluetooth device option appears, then press the **OK** button.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Add	Pair additional cell phones to the system. 1. Select the option to add to start the pairing process. 2. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for **SYNC** on your cell phone. Refer to your device's manual if necessary. 3. Select SYNC on your cell phone.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
	4. Wait until the PIN appears on the phone display. Compare the PIN on the phone with the PIN shown in the audio display and accept the request on the phones and the vehicles display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.* 5. When the option to set the cell phone as the primary cell phone appears, select either yes or no. 6. Depending on the functionality of your cell phone, the system may ask you extra questions (for example, if you would like to download your phonebook). Select either yes or no to confirm your response.
Delete	After deleting a cell phone from the list, the cell phone can only be connected again by repeating the full pairing process. Select the delete option and confirm when the system asks to delete the selected device.
Master	The system attempts to connect with the primary cell phone every time you switch the ignition on. When a cell phone is selected as primary, it appears first in the list and is marked with an asterisk. Set a previously paired cell phone as your primary cell phone. Select the master option to confirm the primary cell phone.
Conn.	Connect a previously paired cell phone. You can only have one cell phone connected at a time to use the cell phone functionality. When another cell phone is connected, the previous cell phone will be disconnected from the telephone services. The system allows you to use different Bluetooth devices for the cell phone functionality and the Bluetooth audio music playback feature at the same time.
Discon.	Disconnects the selected cell phone. Select this option and confirm when asked to. After disconnecting a cell phone, it can be connected again without repeating the full pairing process.

*In some cases the phone will request to enter a PIN. Enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

System Settings

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select the SYNC settings option, then press the **OK** button.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
Bluetooth on	Check or uncheck this option to turn the Bluetooth interface of the system on or off. Select this option then press the **OK** button to change the option's status.
Set defaults	This selection does not erase your indexed information (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices). Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display. Return to the factory default settings.
Master reset	Completely erase all information stored on the system (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices) and return to the factory default settings. Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display. The display indicates when complete and the system takes you back to the previous menu.
Install on SYNC	Install applications or software updates you have downloaded. Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display. There must be a valid SYNC application or update available on the USB thumb drive in order to finish an installation successfully.
System info	Display the system's version numbers as well as its serial number. Press the **OK** button to select.
Voice settings	The voice settings submenu contains various options. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 301).
Browse USB	Browse the actual menu structure of the connected USB device. Press the **OK** button and use the up or down arrows to scroll through the folders and files. Use the left or right arrows to enter and leave a folder. Media content can be directly selected for playback from this menu.

SYNC™ APPLICATIONS AND SERVICES

A list of available applications appears. Each application may have its own specific settings.

Press the **MENU** button to enter the system menu.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Message	Description and Action
SYNC-Apps	Scroll to this option, and then press **OK**.

SYNC Emergency Assistance

WARNINGS

For this feature to work, your cell phone must have Bluetooth and be compatible with the system.

Always place your cell phone in a secure location inside your vehicle. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the cell phone which could prevent this feature from working correctly.

Unless the feature setting is switched on prior to a crash, the system will not attempt to place an emergency call which could delay the response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death. Do not wait for the system to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear Emergency Assistance within five seconds of the crash, the system or cell phone may be damaged or non-functional.

If a crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off, the system may contact emergency services through a paired and connected cell phone. For more information about the system and Emergency Assistance, visit the regional Ford website.

Note: *Before selecting this feature, you must read the Emergency Assistance privacy notice later in this section for important information.*

Note: *When you switch this feature on or off, that setting applies for all paired cell phones. If you have turned this feature off and a previously paired phone connects when you switch on the ignition, either a voice message plays, a display message or icon is shown, or both.*

Note: *Every cell phone operates differently. While this feature works with most cell phones, some cell phones may experience difficulties using this feature.*

Note: *Make sure you are familiar with the information about airbag deployment. See* ***Supplementary Restraints System*** *(page 27).*

Switching Emergency Assistance On and Off

Press the **MENU** button then select:

Message	Action
SYNC-Apps	Press **OK**.
Emerg. assist	Press **OK**. Select the option you require and press **OK**.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Display Options

If you switch on this feature, a confirmation message appears in the display.

If you switch off this feature, a dialog will appear in the display, which allows you to set a voice reminder.

Off with voice reminder provides a display and voice reminder when your cell phone connects and your vehicle starts.

Off without voice reminder provides a display reminder only without a voice reminder when your cell phone connects.

To make sure that Emergency Assistance works correctly:

- The system must have power and be working correctly at the time of the crash and during feature activation and use.
- You must switch on the feature before a crash.
- You must have a cell phone connected to the system.
- In certain countries, it may be necessary to have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in order to place and maintain an emergency call.
- A connected cell phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the crash.
- A connected cell phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- Your vehicle must have battery power.

Note: *This feature only works in countries or regions where SYNC Emergency Assistance can call the local emergency services. Visit the regional Ford website for details.*

In the Event of a Crash

Note: *Not every crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off (which may turn on Emergency Assistance). However, if Emergency Assistance is triggered the system tries to contact the emergency services. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses connection to the system, it searches for and tries to connect to any available previously paired cell phone. The system attempts to make an emergency call.*

Before making a call:

- If you do not cancel the call and SYNC makes a successful call, an introductory message plays for the emergency operator. After this message, there is hands-free communication between your vehicle's occupants and the operator.
- The system provides a short window of time (approximately 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you do not cancel the call, the system attempts to make an emergency call.
- The system plays a message letting you know when it attempts to make an emergency call. You can cancel the call by selecting the relevant function button or by pressing the end call button on the steering wheel.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

During a call:

- Emergency Assistance uses your vehicle GPS or cellular network information when available to determine the most appropriate language to use. It alerts the emergency operator of the crash and delivers the introductory message. This may include your vehicle GPS coordinates.
- The language the system uses to interact with the occupants of your vehicle may differ from the language used to deliver information to the emergency operator.
- After the delivery of the introductory message the voice line opens so that you can speak hands-free with the emergency operator.
- When the line is connected, you must be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location information immediately.

Note: *While the system provides information to the emergency operator, the system plays a message letting you know it is sending important information. It then lets you know when the line is open to start hands-free communication.*

Note: *During an Emergency Assistance call, an emergency priority screen appears which contains vehicle GPS coordinates when available.*

Note: *It is possible that GPS location information is not available at the time of the crash; in this case, Emergency Assistance will still attempt to place an emergency call.*

Note: *It is possible that the emergency services will not receive the GPS coordinates; in this case, hands-free communication with an emergency operator is available.*

Note: *The emergency operator may also receive information from the cellular network such as cell phone number, cell phone location and cell phone carrier name independent from SYNC Emergency Assistance.*

Emergency Assistance may not work if:

- Your cell phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in the crash.
- The vehicle battery or the system has no power.
- A crash ejects your cell phone from your vehicle.
- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in your cell phone.
- You are in a country or region where the SYNC Emergency Assistance cannot place the call. Visit the regional Ford website for details.

Important Information about the Emergency Assistance Feature

Emergency Assistance does not currently call emergency services in the following markets: Albania, Belarus, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Macedonia, Netherlands, Ukraine, Moldova and Russia.

Visit the regional Ford website for the latest details.

Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice

When you switch on Emergency Assistance, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut off. This feature has the capability to disclose your location information to the emergency operator or other details about your vehicle or crash to provide the most appropriate emergency services.

If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch on the feature.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

SYNC AppLink

The system enables voice and manual control of SYNC AppLink enabled smartphone apps. Once an app is running through AppLink, you can control main features of the app through voice commands and manual controls.

Note: *You must pair and connect your smartphone to SYNC to access AppLink.*

Note: *iPhone users need to connect the phone to the USB port.*

Note: *Android users need to connect the phone to SYNC using Bluetooth.*

Note: *For information on available apps, supported smartphone devices and troubleshooting tips please visit the Ford website.*

Note: *Make sure you have an active account for the app that you have downloaded. Some apps will work automatically with no setup. Other apps will want you to configure your personal settings and personalize your experience by creating stations or favorites. We recommend you do this at home or outside of your vehicle.*

To Access Using the SYNC Menu

Scroll through the list of available applications and press **OK** to select an app. Once an app is running through SYNC, press the right arrow button to access the app menu. You can access various app features from here, for example thumbs up and thumbs down. Press the left arrow button to exit the app menu.

Press the **MENU** button then select:

Message	Description and Action
SYNC-Apps	
Mobile Apps	Scroll to this option, and then press **OK**.
Find new Apps	Select this option if the app required is not listed.

Note: *If a SYNC AppLink compatible app cannot be found, make sure the required app is running on the mobile device.*

To Access Using Voice Commands

Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Command	Description and Action
mobile (apps | applications)	Say the name of the application after the tone. The application will start. While an app is running through SYNC, you can press the voice button and speak commands specific to the app.

The following voice commands are always available:

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Command	Description and Action
[main menu] help	Use this command to hear a list of available voice commands.
mobile (apps | applications)	The system will prompt you to say the name of the app to start it.
list [mobile] (apps | applications)	The system will list all of the currently available mobile apps.
find [new] [mobile] (apps | applications)	The system will search your connected mobile device for SYNC compatible apps.
(quit | exit | close)	Use this command followed by the name of the app.

You can also say the name of any SYNC compitable app to start it on SYNC. To see a list of the available voice commands for an app, say the name of an app followed by help. For example you could say "Spotify help".

Enabling and Disabling Push Notifications

Some apps can send push notifications. A push notification is an alert from an app running in the background and is delivered by voice, pop up or both. This may be particularly useful for news or location based apps.

Press the **MENU** button then select:

Message	Description and Action
SYNC-Apps	
Mobile Apps	
SYNC-Settings	
All Apps	If push notifications are supported, this setting will be listed. Select to enable or disable the feature as required.

Enabling SYNC Mobile Apps

To use the system you must consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates, using the data plan associated with the connected device.

Data is sent to Ford in the United States through the connected device. The information is encrypted and includes your VIN, SYNC module number, anonymous usage statistics and debugging information. Updates may take place automatically.

Note: *You must enable mobile apps for each connected device the first time you select a mobile app using the system.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Note: *Standard data rates will apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.*

App Status

You can view the current status of an app in the settings menu. There are three possible statuses:

Message	Description and Action
Update needed	The system has detected a new app requiring authorization or a general permissions update is required.
Up-to-date	No update is required.
Updating...	The system is trying to receive an update.

Options in the settings menu:

Message	Description and Action
Request Update	If an update is required and you want to manually request the update, for example when you are in a Wi-Fi hotspot.
Disable Updates	Select this option to disable automatic updates.

App Permissions

Permissions are divided by groups. You can grant these group permissions individually. You can change a permission group status any time when not driving, by using the settings menu.

When you launch an app using SYNC, the system may ask you to grant certain permissions, for example:

- To allow your vehicle to provide vehicle information to the app including, but not limited to: Fuel level, fuel consumption, engine speed, battery voltage, odometer, VIN, external temperature, gear position, tire pressure, ambient temperature, date and time.
- To allow your vehicle to provide driving characteristic information, including, but not limited to: MyKey, seat belt status, engine speeds, braking events, brake pedal switch, acceleration, accelerator pedal position, clutch pedal switch, trip length, trip time, trip cost, percent engine on time, and percent of time at speed.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

- To allow your vehicle to provide location information, including: GPS and speed.
- To allow the app to send push notifications using the vehicle display and voice capabilities while running in a background state.

Note: *You will only need to grant permissions the first time you use an app with SYNC.*

Note: *We are not responsible or liable for any damages or loss of privacy relating to usage of an app, or dissemination of any vehicle data that you approve us to provide to an app.*

USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR MEDIA PLAYER

You can access and play music from your media player through your vehicle's speaker system using the system's media menu or voice commands. You can also sort and play your music by specific categories, for example artist or albums.

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any media player including: iPod, Zune, Plays from device players, and most USB drives. SYNC also supports audio formats, for example MP3, WMA, WAV and ACC.

Confirm that the USB device has been formatted correctly and has the following specifications:

- USB 2.0.
- File format must be FAT16/32.

Note: *NTFS file format is not supported.*

The format of the audio files on the USB device must be:

- MP3.
- Non DRM protected WMA.
- WAV.
- AAC.

Connecting Your Media Player to the USB Port

Note: *If your media player has a power switch, make sure you switch on the device.*

To Connect Using Voice Commands

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.
2. Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
(USB [stick] | iPod | MP3 [player])	You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands. Refer to the media voice commands.

You do not need to say words that appear within square brackets. For example, for where (USB [stick] | iPOD | MP3 [player]) appears, you can say USB or USB stick.

To Connect Using the System Menu

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.
2. Press the **Media** button (next to the audio display) until an initializing message appears in the display.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
Browse USB	Depending on how many media files are on your connected device, an indexing message may appear in the display. When indexing is complete, the screen returns to the playback menu.

Choose from the following:

Menu Item
Play all
Playlists
Songs
Artists
Albums
Genres
Browse USB
Reset USB
Exit

What's Playing?

At any time during playback, you can press the voice button and ask the system what is playing. The system reads the metadata tags of the current track, if populated.

Media Voice Commands



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
(USB [stick] | iPod | MP3 [player])	You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands.

You can say any of the voice commands that appear within open and close brackets that are separated by |. For example, where; (what's | what is) appears you say; what's or what is.

You must say any of the voice commands that appear outside of open and close brackets. For example, where; who plays this (what's | what is) playing, you must say; who plays this (what's or what is) playing.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Voice Command	Description and Action
pause	Pauses device playback.
play	Resumes device playback.
play [album] ___	
play all	Play all media on the device from the first track to the last.
play [artist] ___	
play [genre] ___	
play [playlist] ___	
next [track | title | song | file | podcast | chapter | episode]	Plays the next track on the current media.
previous [track | title | song | file | podcast | chapter | episode]	Plays the previous track on current media.
[play] (similar music | more like this)	Creates a play list of similar genre to the one currently playing.
play [song | track | title | file] ___	
repeat off	
repeat one [on]	Repeats the current track.
shuffle [all] [on]	Plays the current play list in a random order. (Not all devices support this command.)
shuffle off	
((who's | who is) this | who plays this | (what's | what is) playing [now] | (what | which) (song | track | artist) is this | (who's | who is) playing | (what's | what is) this)	At any time during playback, you can press the voice button and ask the system what is playing. The system reads the metadata tags (if populated) of the current track.

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of anything, such as a group, artist or song. For example you could say "Play artist The Beatles".

Examples of USB Commands

SYNC provides the user with many intuitive ways to find and play a song using voice. For example, if we have a song called "Penny Lane" from the album "Magical Mystery Tour" we can say the following to play this song:

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

- Play song "Penny Lane".
- Play "Penny Lane".

If we wanted to play the entire album, we can say:

- Play album "Magical Mystery Tour".
- Play "Magical Mystery Tour".

Bluetooth Audio

The system is also capable of playing music from your cellular phone through Bluetooth.

To switch the Bluetooth audio on, use the **MEDIA** button (next to the audio display) or **Source** button, or press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command
Bluetooth audio

Then any of the following:

Voice Command
pause
play
next [track | title | song | file | podcast | chapter | episode]
previous [track | title | song | file | podcast | chapter | episode]

Media Menu Features

The media menu allows you to select how to play your music, for example by artist, genre, shuffle or repeat, and to find similar music or reset the index of your USB devices.

Press **AUX** to select USB playback.

Message	Description and Action
Options	This will enter the media menu.

Then any of the following:

Message	Description and Action
Shuffle	Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once you make your choice, it remains on until you switch it off.
Repeat track	Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once you make your choice, it remains on until you switch it off.
Similar music	You can play similar types of music to the current playlist from the USB port. The system uses the metadata information of each track to compile a playlist. The system then creates a new list of similar tracks and then begins playing. Each track must have the metadata tags populated for this feature. With certain playing devices, if your metadata tags

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Message	Description and Action
	are not populated, the tracks will not be available in voice recognition, the play menu or this option. However, if you place these tracks onto your playing device in mass storage device mode they are available in voice recognition, the play menu or this option. The system places unknowns into any unpopulated metadata tag.
Reset USB	Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete you can choose what to play from the USB song library.

Accessing Your USB Song Library

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.
2. Press **AUX** to select USB playback.

Message	Description and Action
Browse USB	This menu allows you to select and play your media files by artist, album, genre, playlist and track or even to browse what is on your USB device.

If there are no media files to access, the display indicates there is no media. If there are media files, you have the following options to scroll through and select:

Message	Description and Action
Play all	Play all indexed media files from your playing device one at a time in numerical order.* 1. Press **OK** to select. The first track title appears in the display.
Playlists	Access your playlists from formats, ASX, M3U, WPL or MTP.* 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired playlist, and then press **OK**.
Songs	Search for and play a specific indexed track. * 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired track, and then press **OK**.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Message	Description and Action
Artists	Sort all indexed media files by artist. Once selected, the system lists and then plays all artists and tracks alphabetically.* 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired artist, and then press **OK**.
Albums	Sort all indexed media files by albums.* 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired albums, and then press **OK**.
Genres	Sort indexed music by genre type.* 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired genre, and then press **OK**.
Browse USB	Browse all supported media files on your media player connected to the USB port. You can only view media files that are compatible with SYNC; other saved files are not visible. 1. Press **OK** to select. 2. Scroll to browse indexed media files on your flash drive, and then press **OK**.
Reset USB	Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete, you can choose what to play from the USB song library.

* You can use the buttons at the bottom of the audio display to jump to a certain alphabetical category quickly. You can also use the letters on the numeric keypad to jump in the list.

Using Voice Commands

You can access and view your USB songs using voice commands.

Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Press the voice button and when prompted, say any of the following commands:

Voice Command
(browse | search | show) all (album | albums)
(browse | search | show) all (artist | artists)
(browse | search | show) all (genre | genres)
(browse | search | show) all (playlist | playlists)
(browse | search | show) all (song | songs | title | titles | file | files | track | tracks)
(browse | search | show) album ___
(browse | search | show) artist ___
(browse | search | show) genre ___
(browse | search | show) playlist ___

Line In Audio

To access the Line in audio source say:

Voice Command
((line | AV | audio video) in | AUX | audio video)

USB 2 (If Equipped)

Your vehicle may come equipped with an additional USB port. If so, USB 1 is located at the front of the vehicle at the bottom of the instrument panel. USB 2 is located inside the storage compartment of the vehicle's center console.

You can plug in an additional USB device into the second USB port.

Note: *SYNC only supports one connected iOS (Apple) devices at a time (whichever one you plug in first). When you connect a second iOS device, the systems charges it, but does not support playback from it.*

Voice Commands for Audio Sources

Your voice system allows you to change audio sources with a simple voice command.



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command
(music | audio | entertainment) [system]
Below are a few examples of voice commands you can use.
[tune [to]] AM
[tune [to]] AM1
[tune [to]] (AM | medium wave) (autostore | AST | autoset)
[tune [to]] (AM | medium wave) 2
Bluetooth (audio | stereo)
(disc | CD [player]) play
[tune [to]] FM
[tune [to]] FM1
[tune [to]] FM (autostore | AST | autoset) preset ___
[tune [to]] FM 2
((line | AV | audio video) in | AUX | audio video)
Radio

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Voice Command
(USB [stick] | iPod | MP3 [player])
((who's | who is) this | who plays this | (what's | what is) playing [now] | (what | which) (song | track | artist) is this | (who's | who is) playing | (what's | what is) this)
Help

Radio Voice Commands



If you are listening to the radio, press the voice button, and then say any of the commands in the following table.

If you are not listening to the radio, press the voice button and, after the tone, say:

Voice Command
Radio
You can then say any of the following commands.
[tune [to]] AM
[tune [to]] AM1
[tune [to]] (AM | medium wave) (autostore | AST | autoset)
[tune [to]] (AM | medium wave) 2
[tune [to]] ((AM | medium wave) ___ | ___ [AM | medium wave])
[tune [to]] (AM | medium wave) preset ___
[tune [to]] (AM | medium wave) 1 preset ___
[tune [to]] FM
[tune [to]] FM1
[tune [to]] FM (autostore | AST | autoset)
[tune [to]] FM 2
[tune [to]] (FM ___ | ___ [FM])
[tune [to]] FM (autostore | AST | autoset) preset ___
[tune [to]] FM preset ___
[tune [to]] FM 2 preset ___
[tune [to]] preset ___
tune [radio]
Help

CD Voice Commands



If you are listening to a CD, press the voice button, and then say any of the commands in the following table.

If you are not listening to a CD, press the voice button and, after the tone, say:

Voice Command
(disc | CD [player]) play
You can then say any of the following commands.
pause
play
[play] next track
[play] previous track
[play | change to] track [number] ___
repeat (track | song) [on] *

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Voice Command
repeat folder [on]
repeat off
(shuffle | random | mix) [on | (tracks | songs) [on]] *
(shuffle | random | mix) (CD [player] | disc) [on]
(shuffle | random | mix) folder [on]
shuffle off

*You need to indicate to the system which track or folder to repeat or shuffle when using these commands.

Bluetooth Devices and System Settings

You can access these menus using the audio display. See **Using SYNC™ With Your Phone** (page 304).

SYNC™ TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, please refer to the tables below.

To check your cell phone's compatibility, visit the regional Ford website.

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
A lot of background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your cell phone may be affecting SYNC performance.	Refer to your device's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Make sure that the microphone for SYNC is not set to off.
SYNC is not able to download my phonebook.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
The system says "Phonebook downloaded" but my SYNC phonebook is empty or is missing contacts.	Limitations on your cell phone's capability.	Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add.
		If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, try moving them to your cell phone's memory.
		Remove any pictures or special ring tones associated with the missing contact.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC.
I am having trouble connecting my cell phone to SYNC.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Try deleting your device from SYNC and deleting SYNC from your device, then trying again.
		Always check the security and auto accept prompt settings relative to the SYNC Bluetooth connection on your cell phone.
		Update your cell phone's firmware.
		Switch off the auto download setting.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
	iPhone	• Go to your cell phone's Settings. • Go to the Bluetooth Menu. • Make sure the connection status shows Not Connected. • Press the blue circle to enter the next menu. • Turn on Show Notifications. • Turn on Sync Contacts.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
		Your iPhone is now set up to forward incoming text messages to SYNC. Repeat these steps for every other Sync vehicle you are connected to. Your iPhone will only forward incoming text messages to SYNC if it is unlocked. Replying to text messages using SYNC is not supported by iPhone. Text messages from WhatsApp and Facebook Messenger are not supported.
Audible text messages do not work on my cell phone.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Your cell phone must support downloading text messages through Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.
		Access the text messaging menu of SYNC to see if your cell phone supports the feature. Press the **PHONE** button and then scroll and select the option for text messaging, then press **OK**.
	This is a cell phone limitation.	Because each cell phone is different, refer to your device's manual for the specific cell phone you are pairing. In fact, there can be differences between cell phones due to brand, model, service provider and software version.

USB and media issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
I am having trouble connecting my device.	Possible device malfunction.	Try switching off the device, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable.
		Make sure correctly insert the USB cable to the device and your vehicle's USB port.
		Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

USB and media issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
SYNC does not recognize my device when I start my vehicle.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a device-dependent feature.	Make sure you connect the device to SYNC and press play on your device.
	The device is not connected.	
SYNC does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information.	Make sure that all song details are populated.
	The file may be corrupted.	Try replacing the corrupt file with a new version.
	The song may have copyright protection that does not allow it to play.	Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to media transfer protocol class.
When I connect my iPhone or iPod Touch through the USB and Bluetooth Audio at the same time, I sometimes do not hear any sound.	This is a device limitation.	From the iPhone or iPod Touch music now playing screen, select the audio device airplay icon at the very bottom of your iPhone or iPod Touch screen.
		To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through Bluetooth Audio, select SYNC.
		To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through USB, select Dock Connector.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
SYNC does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.
		Refer to the audio display during an active voice session to find a list of voice commands there.
	You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	The microphone for the system is either in your rear view mirror or in the headliner just above the windshield.
SYNC does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.
	You may not be saying the name exactly as the system saved it.	Say the song or artist exactly as the system saved it. If you say, "Play Artist Prince", the system does not play music by Prince and the Revolution or Prince and the New Power Generation.
		Make sure you are saying the complete title such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".
		If the song titles are in capital letters, you have to spell them. LOLA requires you to say "L-O-L-A".
	The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it.	Do not use special characters in the title, as the system does not recognize them.
SYNC does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands at the beginning of the cell phone section.
		You can also use the cell phone and media suggestion lists to get a list of possible suggestions when the system cannot fully understand you. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 301).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
	You may not be saying the name exactly as the system saved it.	Make sure you are saying the name exactly as the system saved it. For example, if the contact name is Joe Wilson, say "Call Joe Wilson".
		The system works better if you list full names such as "Joe Wilson" rather than "Joe".
	Contacts in your phonebook may be very short and similar or they may contain special characters.	Do not use special characters such as 123 or ICE as the system does not recognize them.
	Your phonebook contacts may be in capital letters.	If the contacts are in capital letters, you have to spell them. JAKE requires you to say "Call J-A-K-E".
The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign names stored on my cell phone.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC.	SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the contact names stored on your cell phone.
		Helpful Hint: You can select your contact manually. Press **PHONE**. Select the option for phonebook and then contact name. Press the soft-key option to hear it. SYNC will read the contact name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation it is expecting.
The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign tracks, artists, albums, genres and playlist names from my media player or USB flash drive.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC.	SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names stored on your media player or USB flash drive. It is able to make some exceptions for very popular artist names (for example, U2) such that you can always use the English pronunciation for these artists.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
The system generates voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words may not be accurate for my language.	SYNC uses text-to-speech voice prompt technology.	SYNC uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.
		SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example," play artist Madonna).
My previous Bluetooth voice control system allowed me to control the radio, CD, and climate control systems. Why can I not control these systems with SYNC?	The focus of SYNC is to control your mobile devices and the content stored on them.	SYNC offers significant capability beyond the previous system such as dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, " play artist Madonna).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

General		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
The language selected for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display does not match the SYNC language (phone, USB, Bluetooth audio, voice control and voice prompts).	SYNC does not support the currently selected language for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display.	SYNC only supports four languages in a single module for text display, voice control and voice prompts. The country where you bought your vehicle dictates the four languages based on the most popular languages spoken. If the selected language is not available, SYNC remains in the current active language.
		SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, play artist Madonna).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
AppLink Mobile Applications: When I select "Find New Apps," SYNC does not find any applications.	An AppLink capable phone is not connected to SYNC.	Ensure you have a compatible smartphone; an Android with OS 2.3 or higher or an iPhone 3GS or newer with iOS 5.0 or higher. Additionally, ensure your phone is paired and connected to SYNC in order to find AppLink-capable apps on your device. iPhone users must also connect to SYNC's USB port with an Apple USB cable.
My phone is connected, but I still cannot find any apps.	AppLink-enabled apps are not installed and running on your mobile device.	Ensure you have downloaded and installed the latest version of the app from your phone's app store. Ensure the app is running on your phone. Some apps require you to register or login on the app on the phone before using them with AppLink. Also, some may have a "Ford SYNC" setting, so check the app's settings menu on the phone.
My phone is connected, my app(s) are running, but I still cannot find any apps.	Sometime apps do not properly close and re-open their connection to SYNC, over ignition cycles, for example.	Closing and restarting apps may help SYNC find the application if you cannot discover it inside the vehicle. On an Android device, if apps have an "Exit' or 'Quit' option, select that then restart the app. If the app does not have that option, you can also manually "Force Close" the app by going to the phone's settings menu, selecting 'Apps.' then finding the particular app and choosing 'Force stop.' Don't forget to restart the app afterwards, then select "Find New Apps" on SYNC.
		On an iPhone with iOS7+, to force close an app, double tab the home button then swipe up on the app to close it. Tab the home button again, then select the app again to restart it. After a few seconds, the app should then appear in SYNC's Mobile App's Menu.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

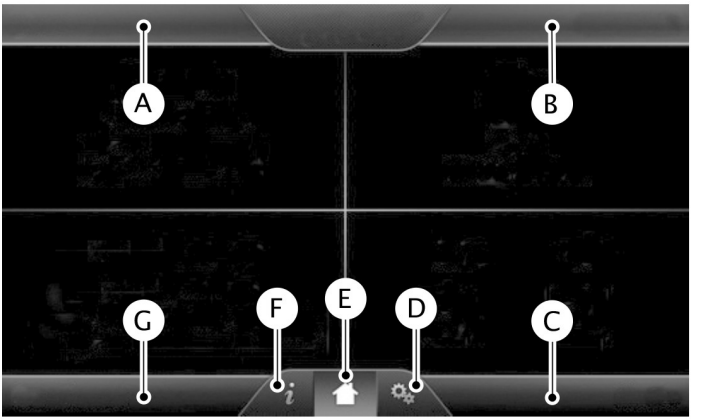
AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
My Android phone is connected, my app(s) are running, I restarted them, but I still cannot find any apps.	There is a bluetooth bug on some order versions of the Android OS that may cause apps that were found on your previous vehicle drive to not be found again if you have not turned off bluetooth.	Reset the Bluetooth on your phone by turning it off and then turning Bluetooth back on. If you are in your vehicle, SYNC should be able to automatically re-connect to your phone if you press the "Phone" button.
My iPhone phone is connected, my app is running, I restarted the app but I still cannot find it on SYNC.	The USB connection to SYNC may need to be reset.	Unplug the USB cable from the phone, wait a moment, and plug the USB cable back in to the phone. After a few seconds, the app should appear in SYNC's Mobile Apps Menu. If not, "Force Close" the application and restart it.
I have an Android phone. I found and started my media app on SYNC, but there is no sound or the sound is very low.	The bluetooth volume on the phone may be low.	Try increasing the Bluetooth volume of the device by using the device's volume control buttons which are most often found on the side of the device.
I can only see some of the AppLink apps running on my phone listed in SYNC's Mobile Apps Menu.	Some Android devices have a limited number of bluetooth ports apps can use to connect. If you have more AppLink apps on your phone than the number of availble Bluetooth ports, you will not see all of your apps listed in SYNC's mobile apps menu.	Force close or uninstall the apps you do not want SYNC to find. If the app has a "Ford SYNC" setting, disable that setting in the app's settings menu on the phone.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



E161891

Item	Message
A	Phone
B	Navigation
C	Climate
D	Settings

Item	Message
E	Home
F	Information
G	Entertainment

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

This system uses a four-corner strategy to provide quick access to several vehicle features and settings. The touchscreen provides easy interaction with your cellular phone, multimedia, climate control and navigation system. The corners display any active modes within those menus, such as phone status or the climate temperature.

Note: *Some features are not available while your vehicle is moving.*

Note: *Your system is equipped with a feature that allows you to access and control audio features for 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off (and no doors open).*

PHONE

Press to select any of the following:

Message
Phone
Speed dial
Phonebook
Call history
Messaging
Settings

NAVIGATION

Press to select any of the following:

Message
My Home
Favourites
Previous Destinations
Place of interest
Emergency
Address
Junction
Town centre
Latitude/Longitude
Edit Route
Cancel Route

CLIMATE

Press the corresponding icons to control the following options:

- Driver Settings
- Recirculated Air
- Auto
- Dual
- Passenger Settings
- A/C
- Defrost

SETTINGS



Press to select any of the following:

Message
Clock
Display
Sound
Vehicle
Settings
Help

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

HOME



Press to access the home screen.

Note: *Depending on your vehicle's option package and software, the screens may vary in appearance from the descriptions in this section. The features may also be limited depending on the market. Check with an authorized dealer for availability.*

INFORMATION



Press to select any of the following:

Message
Traffic
Notific.
Calendar
Apps
Where Am I?

ENTERTAINMENT

Press to select any of the following:

Message
AM
FM
DAB *
CD
USB
BT Stereo
SD Card
Line In

* If equipped.

Using the Audio Controls

Depending on your vehicle, it may also have the following controls:

Controls	Action and Description
Power	Switch the media features on or off.
Volume	Adjust the volume of playing media.
Seek	Use as you normally would in media modes.
Tune	Use as you normally would in media modes.
Eject	Eject a CD from the entertainment system.
Display	Press this button to switch the display screen off. Press again, or touch the screen to switch the display screen on.
Source	Touch the control repeatedly to switch between media modes.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Controls	Action and Description
Sound	Adjust the settings for:
	Bass
	Treble
	Midrange
	Set Balance and Fade
	DSP
	EQ Mode
	Adaptive volume

Using the Steering Wheel Controls

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you can use your steering wheel controls to interact with the touchscreen system.

- **VOL:** Control the volume of audio output.
- **Mute:** Mute the audio output.
- **Voice:** Press to start a voice session. Press again and hold to end a voice session.
- **SEEK** and **PHONE ACCEPT:**
  - While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets or press and hold to seek between stations.
  - While in USB or CD mode, press to seek between stations or press and hold to fast seek.
  - While in phone mode, press to answer a call, or to switch between calls.
- **SEEK** and **PHONE REJECT:**
  - While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets or press and hold to seek between stations.
  - While in USB or CD mode, press to seek between stations or press and hold to fast seek.
  - While in phone mode, press to end a call, or to reject an incoming call.
- Source: Touch the control repeatedly to switch between media modes.
- Sound: Touch the control to adjust the sound settings. See **Settings** (page 347).

See **Steering Wheel** (page 53).

Cleaning the Touchscreen Display

Use a dry, clean, soft cloth. If dirt or fingerprints are still visible, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth. Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the display. Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the display.

Support

For further support, contact an authorized dealer. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Safety Information

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. Have an authorized dealer check your vehicle.
- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's user guide for further information.
- For your safety, some SYNC functions are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle is traveling at speeds under 5 mph (8 km/h).

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.

Speed-restricted Features

Some features of this system may be too difficult to use while your vehicle is moving so they are restricted from use unless your vehicle is stationary.

See the following chart for more specific examples.

Restricted features	
System Functionality	Editing settings while the rear view camera or active park assist are active.
Videos, Photos and Graphics	Playing video.
Text Messages	Composing text messages.
	Editing preset text messages.
Navigation	Demo navigation route.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Privacy Information

When a cell phone connects to SYNC, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The system creates the profile to offer you more mobile features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your phonebook, text messages (read and unread) and call history. This includes the history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. If you connect a media player, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. Use the log profile and other system data to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cell phone profile, media player index and development log remain in the system unless deleted. They are generally accessible in your vehicle only when you connect your cell phone or media player. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you complete a master reset to erase all stored information. See **Information Displays** (page 80).

Special equipment is required to access system data. Access to your vehicle's SYNC module is also required. We will not access the system data for any purpose other than as described without consent. Examples where we can access system data are for a court order, where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of us. Further privacy information is available.

Using Voice Recognition

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is in front of you. The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings).

The system also asks short questions (confirmation prompts) when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request.

When using voice commands, words and icons may appear in the lower left status bar indicating the status of the voice command session.

How to Use Voice Commands



The following are some of the voice commands that you can say at any time during a voice command session.

Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice command
Main Menu
What Can I Say
Previous Page
Go Back
Help

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Helpful Hints

- Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken voice commands.
- After pressing the voice command icon, wait until after the tone sounds and a message appears before saying a voice command. Any voice command spoken prior to this does not register with the system.
- Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.
- At any time, you can interrupt the system while it is speaking by pressing the voice command icon.

Accessing a List of Available Voice Commands

To access a list of available voice commands you can do either of the following.

Using the touchscreen, press:

Menu Item
Settings
Help
Voice Command List

Using the steering wheel control, press the voice button and when prompted say one of the following:

Voice Commands
List of Commands
Radio List of Commands
Phone List of Commands
Voice Instructions List of Commands

Voice Command Settings

These allow you to customize the level of system interaction, help and feedback. The system defaults to standard interaction that uses candidate lists and confirmation prompts as these provide the highest level of guidance and feedback.

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Interaction Mode	Novice	In this mode the system provides detailed interaction and guidance.
	Advanced	This mode has less audible interaction and more tone prompts.
Confirmation Prompts	The system uses these short questions to confirm your voice command. If turned off, the system simply makes a best guess as to what you requested. The system may still occasionally ask you to confirm a voice command.	
Phone Candidate Lists	Candidate lists are lists of possible results from your voice commands. The system creates these lists when it has the same confidence level of several options based on your voice command.	
Media Candidate Lists		

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

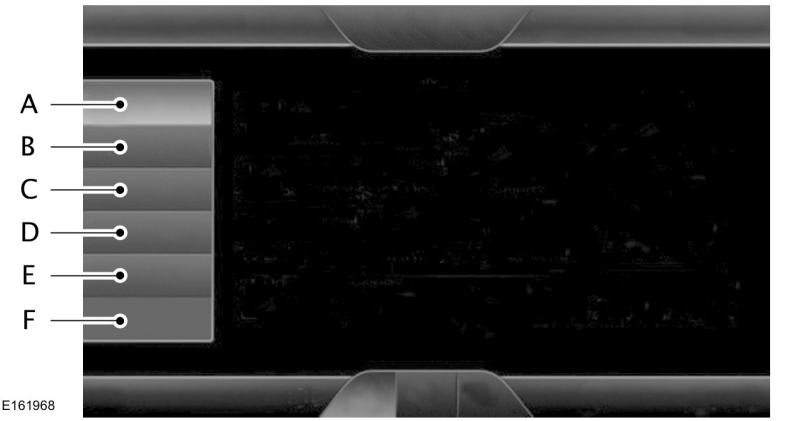
Using the touchscreen, press the settings icon, then press:

Menu Item
Voice Settings
Voice Control
Select from the following:
Interaction Mode
Confirmation Prompts
Media Candidate Lists
Phone Candidate Lists
Voice Control Volume

Using Voice Commands with the Touchscreen Options

The voice command system has a dual mode feature which allows you to switch between using voice commands and making on-screen selections. This is available only when the system displays a list of candidates generated during a voice command session. For example, this can be used when entering a street address or trying to call a contact from a cell phone paired to the system.

SETTINGS



C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Item	Menu Item
A	Clock
B	Display
C	Sound
D	Vehicle
E	Settings
F	Help

Clock



Under this menu, you can set the clock, access and adjust the display, sound and vehicle settings as well as access settings for specific modes or the help feature.

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Clock	Press the + or - to adjust the time. From this screen, you can also make other adjustments such as 12-hour or 24-hour mode, activate GPS time synchronization and have the system automatically update new time zones. You can also switch the outside air temperature display off and on. It appears at the top center of the touchscreen, next to the time and date.

Note: *You cannot manually set the date. Your vehicle's GPS does this for you.*

Note: *If the battery has been disconnected, your vehicle needs to acquire a GPS signal to update the clock. Once your vehicle acquires the signal, it may take a few minutes for the update to display the correct time.*

Display



You can adjust the display using the touchscreen or the voice button on the steering wheel controls.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Settings	Press the settings icon.	
Display		
Then select from the following:		
Mode	Allows you to switch the display off. It also allows you to set the screen to a certain brightness or have the system automatically change based on the outside light level. If you also select:	
	Auto	These features will allow you to adjust the dimming of your screen.
	Night	
Edit Wallpaper	Allows you to display the default photo or upload your own.	
Auto Dim	When set to **On**, lets you use the automatic dimming feature. When set to **Off** you are able to adjust the brightness of the screen.	
	Brightness	Make the screen display brighter or dimmer.
Auto Dim Manual Offset	Allows you to adjust screen dimming as the outside lighting conditions change from day to night.	



To make adjustments using the voice button, press the button and when prompted, say:

Voice command
Display Settings

Uploading Photos for Your Home Screen Wallpaper

Note: *You cannot load photos directly from your camera. You must access the photos either from your USB mass storage device or from an SD card.*

Note: *Photographs with extremely large dimensions (such as 2048 x 1536) may not be compatible and appear as a blank (black) image on the display.*

The system allows you to upload and view up to 32 photos.



To access, press:

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

To upload your photos, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Display	
Edit Wallpaper	Follow the system prompts to upload your photographs.

Only the photograph(s), which meets the following conditions display:

- Compatible file formats are as follows: JPG, GIF, PNG, BMP.
- Each file must be 1.5 MB or less.
- Recommended dimensions: 800 x 384.

Sound



To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item
Settings
Sound
Then select from the following:
Bass
Midrange
Treble
Set Balance and Fade
DSP occupancy
EQ Mode
Adaptive volume

Note: *Your vehicle may not have all of these sound settings.*

Vehicle



C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item
Settings
Vehicle
Then select from the following:
Ambient light
Camera Settings
Enable Valet Mode

Ambient Lighting (If Equipped)

When you switch this feature on, ambient lighting illuminates footwells and cupholders with a choice of colors.

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Vehicle	
Ambient light	

- You can then touch the desired color.
- Use the scroll bar to increase or decrease the intensity.
- To switch the feature on or off, press the power button.

Camera Settings



This menu allows you to access settings for your rear view camera.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Vehicle	
Camera Settings	
Then select from the following:	
Enhanced Park Pilot	
Rear Camera Delay	

You can find more information on the rear view camera system in another chapter. See **Parking Aids** (page 144).

Note: *If the system locks, and you need to reset the PIN, contact an authorized dealer.*

Enable Valet Mode



Valet mode allows you to lock the system. No information is accessible until the system is unlocked with the correct PIN.

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Vehicle	
Enable Valet Mode	Then enter a four digit PIN twice, as prompted.
Continue	After you press Continue the system locks until you enter the PIN again.

Settings

System



Access and adjust system settings, voice features, as well as phone, navigation and wireless settings.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
System	
Then select from the following:	
Language	Select to have the touchscreen display in any of the selectable language options*.
Distance	Select to display units in kilometers or miles.
Temperature	Select to display units in Celsius or Fahrenheit.
System Prompt Volume	Adjust the volume of voice prompts from the system.
Touch Screen Button Beep	Select to have the system beep to confirm choices made through the touchscreen.
Keyboard Layout	Have the touchscreen keyboard display in QWERTY or ABC format.
Install Applications	Install any downloaded applications or view the current software licenses.
Master Reset	Select to restore factory defaults. This erases all personal settings and personal data.

* The options include: English, Spanish, French, Portuguese, German, Italian, Dutch, Swedish, Polish, Turkish and Russian. Only four of these languages are available for voice input and output, depending on your location.

Voice Control



To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	
Voice Control	
Then select from the following:	

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
Interaction Mode	Standard interaction mode provides more detailed interaction and guidance. Advanced mode has less audible interaction and more tone prompts.
Confirmation Prompts	Have the system ask you short questions if it has not clearly heard or understood your request. **Note:** Even with confirmation prompts turned off, the system may occasionally ask you to confirm settings.
Media Candidate Lists	Candidate lists are possible results from your voice commands. The system simply makes a best guess at your request with these turned off.
Phone Candidate Lists	Candidate lists are possible results from your voice commands. The system simply makes a best guess at your request with these turned off.
Voice Control Volume	This allows you to adjust the system's voice volume level.

Media Player



To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Media Player	
Then select from the following:	
Autoplay	When this feature is on, the system automatically switches to the media source upon initial connection. This allows you to listen to music during the indexing process. When this feature is off, the system does not automatically switch to the inserted media source.
Bluetooth Devices	Select to connect, disconnect, add or delete a device. You can also set a device as your favorite so that the system automatically attempts to connect to that device at every ignition cycle.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
Gracenote® Database Info	This allows you to view the version level of the Gracenote Database.
Gracenote® Management	With this feature on, the Gracenote Database supplies metadata information for your music files. This overrides information from your device. This feature defaults to off.
Cover Art Priority	With this feature on, the Gracenote Database supplies cover art for your music files. This overrides any art from your device. This feature defaults to Media Player.

Navigation



To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Navigation	
Then select from the following:	
Map Preferences	Switch breadcrumbs on and off.
	Have the system display your turn list top to bottom or bottom to top.
	Switch the Parking POI notification on and off.
Route Preferences	Select shortest route, fastest route or ecological route as your preferred route. This route displays first.
	Always use preferred route. If set to yes, the system only calculates a single route. This speeds up your destination entry process.
	Select a low, medium or high cost for the calculated ecological route. This may incur a time penalty.
	Have the system avoid freeways.
	Have the system avoid toll roads.
	Have the system avoid ferries or car trains.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
	Have the system avoid tunnels.
Navigation Preferences	Have the system use guidance prompts.
	Have the system automatically fill in Country information.
	Hazard Spot Warning Have the system activate hazard spot warning in countries where legally allowed.
Traffic Preferences	Have the system avoid traffic problems automatically.
	Switch traffic alert notifications on or off.
	Have the system display accident icons.
	Have the system display traffic jam icons.
	Have the system display closed roads.
	Have the system display road work icons.
	Have the system display incident icons.
	Have the system display icons for areas where difficult driving conditions may occur.
	Have the system display icons for areas where snow and ice on the road may occur.
	Have the system display any smog icons.
	Have the system display weather warning icons.
	Have the system display where there may be reduced visibility.
	Have the system display icons to recommend switching on your radio for traffic announcements.
Avoid Areas	Enter specific areas that you would like to avoid on planned navigation routes.

Phone



C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Phone	
Then select from the following:	
Bluetooth Devices	Connect, disconnect, add or delete a device, as well as save it as a favorite.
Bluetooth	Switch Bluetooth on and off.
Do Not Disturb	Have all calls go directly to your voice mail and not ring inside your vehicle. With this feature turned on, text message notifications are also suppressed and do not ring inside your vehicle.
Emergency Assistance	Switch on or turn off the Emergency Assistance feature. See **Information** (page 378).
Phone Ringer	Select the type of notification for phone calls - ring tone, beep, text to speech or silent.
Text Message Notification	Select the type of notification for text messages - alert tone, beep, text to speech, or have it be silent.
Internet Data Connection	If compatible with your phone, you can adjust your internet data connection. Select to make your connection profile with the personal area network or to switch off your connection. You can also choose to adjust your settings or have the system always connect, never connect when roaming, or query on connect. Press **?** for more information.
Manage Phonebook	Access features, such as automatic phonebook download, re-download your phonebook, add contacts from your phone as well as delete or upload your phonebook.
Roaming Warning	Have the system alert you when in Roaming mode.

Wireless and Internet



Your system has a Wi-Fi feature that creates a wireless network within your vehicle, thereby allowing other devices (such as personal computers or phones) in your vehicle to speak to each other, share files or play games. Using this Wi-Fi feature, everyone in your vehicle can also access the internet if you have a USB mobile broadband connection inside your vehicle, your phone supports personal area networking or if you park outside a wireless hotspot.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Wireless & Internet	
Then select from the following:	
Wi-Fi Settings	Wi-Fi Network (Client) Mode Turns the Wi-Fi feature on and off in your vehicle. Make sure you switch it on for connectivity purposes.
	Choose a Wireless Network Allows you to use a previously stored wireless network. You can categorize by alphabetical listing, priority and signal strength. You can also choose to search for a network, connect to a network, disconnect from a network, receive more information, prioritize a network or delete a network.
	Gateway (Access Point) Mode Makes SYNC an access point for a phone or a computer when turned on. This forms the local area network within your vehicle for things, such as game playing, file transfer and internet browsing. Press **?** for more information.
	Gateway (Access Point) Settings Allows you to view and change settings for using SYNC as the internet gateway.
	Gateway (Access Point) Devices List Allows you to view recent connections to your Wi-Fi system.
USB Mobile Broadband	Instead of using Wi-Fi, your system can also use a USB mobile broadband connection to access the internet. (You must switch on your mobile broadband device on your personal computer before connecting it to the system.) This screen allows you to set up what is your typical area for your USB mobile broadband connection. (USB mobile broadband settings may not display if the device is already on.) You can select the following:
	Country
	Carrier

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
	Phone Number
	User Name
	Password
Bluetooth Settings	Shows you the currently paired devices as well as giving you your typical Bluetooth options to connect, disconnect, set as favorite, delete and add device. Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG.
Prioritize Connection Methods	Choose your connection methods and change them as needed. You can select to change order and have the system either always attempt to connect using a USB mobile broadband or using Wi-Fi.



E142626

The Wi-Fi CERTIFIED Logo is a certification mark of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

Help



To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Settings	Press the settings icon.
Help	
Then select from the following:	
System Information	Touchscreen system serial number
	Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
	Touchscreen system software version
	Navigation system version
	Map database version
	Gracenote® Database Information and Library version
View Software Licenses	View the licenses for any software and applications installed on your system.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Driving Restrictions	Certain features are not accessible when your vehicle is moving.	
Emergency Assistance	Switch on and off the Emergency Assistance feature. See **Information** (page 378).	
	In Case of Emergency (ICE) speed dial	Allows you to save up to two numbers as ICE contacts for quick access if there is an emergency. The ICE contacts you select appear at the end of the Emergency Assistance call process.
	Edit	Select to access your phonebook and then select the desired contacts. The numbers then appear as options on this screen for the ICE 1 and ICE 2 buttons.
Voice Command List	View categorized lists of voice commands.	



You can also access Help using the voice commands. The system provides allowable voice commands for the current mode.

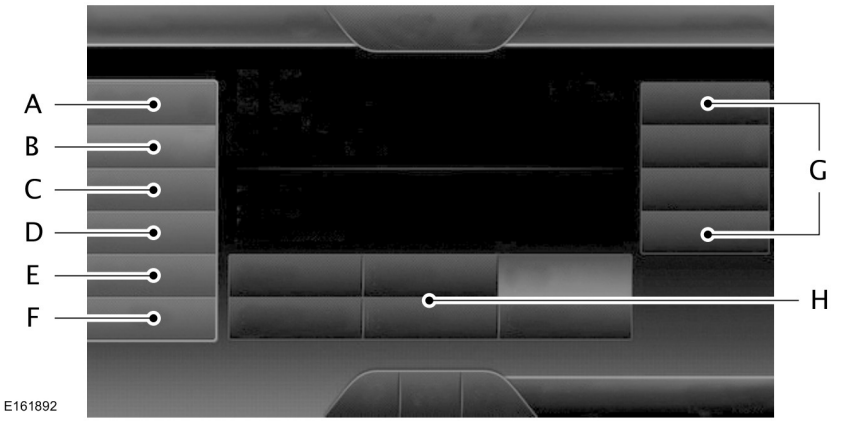
Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice command
Help

You can say help at any time to get assistance with commands, menus or other information.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

ENTERTAINMENT



Message	Message and Description
A	AM
B	FM
C	DAB
D	CD
E	USB
F	Touch this button to scroll down for more options, such as SD Card, BT Stereo and Line In.

Message	Message and Description
G	These buttons provide additional controls for the radio or media source. See the AM/FM radio controls table for more information.
H	Radio memory presets and CD controls.

Note: *Some features may not be available in your area. Contact an authorized dealer for more information.*

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

AM/FM/DAB Radio

The following controls are available for AM/FM/DAB radio

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Controls

Item	Action and Description	
AM FM DAB	Touch either tab to listen to the radio. To change between AM, FM and DAB presets, just touch the **AM**, **FM** or **DAB** tab.	
Presets	Save a station by pressing and holding one of the memory preset areas. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the station. Sound returns when finished.	
Scan	Touch this button to go to the next strong AM, FM or DAB radio station. The light on the button illuminates when the feature is on.	
Information	(DAB only)	When the info button is pressed, the system shows the corresponding block number for the active DAB radio station. If you press the info button a second time the radio station name is displayed again.
Tune	For AM and FM only, touch this button to manually enter the desired station number. Touch **Enter** when you are done.	
TA	Turn on to receive traffic announcements.	
Browse	See a list of all currently available radio stations.	

Options

Menu Item	Action and Description
Sound Settings	Touch this button to adjust settings for:
	Bass
	Midrange
	Treble
	Set Balance and Fade
	DSP occupancy
	EQ Mode
	Adaptive volume
Radio Text	This allows you to view the information broadcast by FM stations.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
AST	AST (Autostore) allows you to have the system automatically store the six strongest stations in your current location.
News announcement	With news announcement option active, the system interrupts active audio source to provide incoming news announcements, if currently tuned station (or last tuned station in case of other media active) supports news.
Regional	With Regional option active, the system stays on the regional subprogram instead of switching to a different frequency with better reception.
Alternate Frequency	With alternative frequency option active, the system re-tunes to a different frequency with better reception for the same station.
Service Linking	With Service Linking active, the system automatically switches from DAB to FM, in case DAB becomes unavailable.

Note: *Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.*

Radio Voice Commands



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice command	
Radio	
Then you can say a command similar to the following:	
FM	Say a frequency or preset.
DAB	Say a preset.
Off	
Help	

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

CD



To access, press the lower left corner on the touchscreen, then select:

Menu Item
CD

Insert your CD then select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Repeat	Touch this button to repeat the currently playing track, all tracks on the disc or switch the feature off if already on.
Shuffle	Touch this button to play the tracks or entire albums in random order, or switch the feature off if already on.
Scan	Touch this button to hear a brief sampling of all available tracks.
More Info	Touch this button to see disc information.
Browse	Touch this button to look through all available CD tracks.

To adjust the Sound Settings, select:

Menu Item
Options
Sound Settings
Then any of the following:
Bass
Midrange
Treble
Set Balance and Fade
DSP occupancy
EQ Mode
Adaptive volume

Note: *Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.*

CD Voice Commands



If you are listening to a CD, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following commands.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

If you are not listening to a CD, press the voice button and, after the tone, say:

Voice command
CD Player

When listening to a CD you can say many commands. Following are a few examples of what you can say.

Voice command
Play
Pause
Next Track
Previous Track
Help

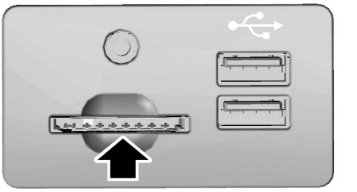
SD Card Slot and USB Port

The SD card slot and USB port are located in the Media Hub. See **Media Hub** (page 298).

SD Card

Note: *Your SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, press the card in and the system ejects it. Do not attempt to pull the card to remove it as this could cause damage.*

Note: *The navigation system also uses this card slot. See **Navigation** (page 384).*



E175710

To access and play music from your device, press the lower left corner of the touchscreen.



E142620

SD logo is a trademark of SD-3C, LLC.

USB Port



E175711

To access and play music from your device, press the lower left corner of the touchscreen.

This feature allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks, flash drives or thumb drives, and charge devices if they support this feature.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Playing Music from Your Device



Note: *The system is capable of indexing up to 30,000 songs.*

Insert your device and select:

Message	Action and Description
USB SD Card	Once the system recognizes your USB or SD card you can then select from the following options:
Repeat	This feature replays the currently playing song or album.
Shuffle	Touch this button to play music on the selected album or folder in random order.
Similar Music	This feature allows you to choose music similar to what is currently playing.
More Info	Touch this button to see disc information, for example current track, artist name, album and genre.
Options	Touch this button to view and adjust various media settings.

Sound

Sound settings allows you to adjust settings for:

Message	Action and Description
Bass	
Midrange	
Treble	
Set Balance and Fade	
DSP	
EQ Mode	
Adaptive volume	
Media Player Settings	Allows you to select more settings, which is under Media Player. See **Settings** (page 347).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Message	Action and Description
Device Information	Displays software and firmware information about the currently connected media device.
Update Media Index	Indexes your device when you connect it for the first time and each time the content changes (for example adding or removing tracks) to make sure you have the latest voice commands available for all media on the device.

Note: *Your vehicle may not have all these sound settings.*

Browse

This feature allows you to view the contents of the device. It also allows you to search by categories, for example genre, artist or album.

If you want to view song information, for example Title, Artist, File, Folder, Album, and Genre, touch the on-screen album art.

You can also select:

Message	Action and Description
What's Playing?	To hear how the system pronounces the current band and song. This can be helpful when using voice commands to make sure the system correctly plays your request.

USB and SD Card Voice Commands



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice command	
SD Card	
USB	
Then commands such as the following:	
Browse	
Next Track	
Pause	
Play	Say the name of what you would like to listen to such as a band, song, album or playlist.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Voice command	
Play Artist ___	*
Play Song ___	*
Similar Music	
Help	

* ___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of anything, such as a group, artist or song. For example you could say "Play artist The Beatles" or "Play song Penny Lane".

Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player, including iPod, Zune™, plays from device players, and most USB drives. Supported audio formats include MP3, WMA, WAV and AAC.

It is also able to organize your indexed media from your playing device by metadata tags. Metadata tags, which are descriptive software identifiers embedded in the media files, provide information about the file.

If your indexed media files contain no information embedded in these metadata tags, SYNC may classify the empty metadata tags as unknown.

Bluetooth Audio

The system allows you to stream audio over your vehicle's speakers from your connected, Bluetooth-enabled cell phone.



To access, press the lower left corner on the touchscreen, then select:

Message
BT audio

Bluetooth Audio Voice Commands



The voice system allows you to control your media with a simple voice command. For example to change songs, press the voice button and follow the system prompts.

Line In

WARNINGS

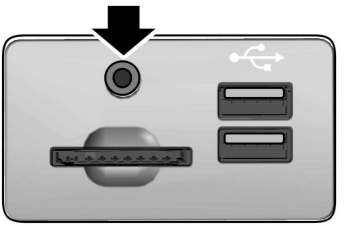
Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

WARNINGS

For safety reasons, do not connect or adjust the settings on your portable music player while your vehicle is moving.

Store the portable music player in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when your vehicle is moving. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while your vehicle is moving.



E191800

Your auxiliary input jack allows you to play music from your portable music player over your vehicle's speakers. The jack is located in your center console.

Press the lower left corner of the touchscreen, and then select **Line In**.

To use the auxiliary input jack feature, make sure that your portable music player is designed for use with headphones and that it is fully charged. You also need an audio extension cable with stereo male 1/8-inch (3.5 millimeter) connectors at both ends.

1. Switch off the engine, radio and portable music player. Set the parking brake and put the transmission in position **P**.
2. Attach one end of the audio extension cable to the headphone output of your player and the other end into the adapter in one of the jack inside the center console.
3. Press the lower left corner on the touchscreen. Select either a tuned FM station or a CD (if there is a CD already loaded into the system).
4. Adjust the volume as desired.
5. Turn the portable music player on and adjust the volume to ½ the maximum.
6. Press the lower left corner on the touchscreen. Then select:

Menu Item	
Line In	You should hear audio from your portable music player although it may be low. Adjust the sound on your portable music player until it reaches the level of the FM station by switching back and forth between the controls.

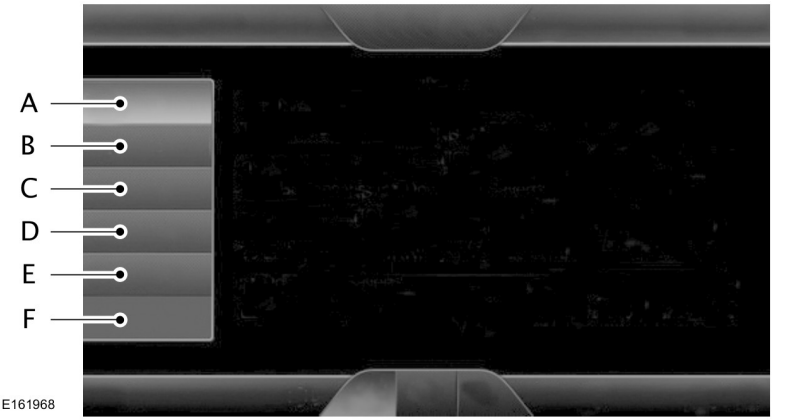
Troubleshooting

- Do not connect the audio input jack to a line level output. The jack only works correctly with devices that have a headphone output with a volume control.
- Do not set the portable music player's volume level higher than is necessary to match the volume of the CD or FM radio as this causes distortion and reduces sound quality.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

- If the music sounds distorted at lower listening levels, turn the portable music player volume down. If the problem persists, replace or recharge the batteries in the portable media player.
- Control the portable media player in the same manner when used with headphones, as the auxiliary input jack does not provide control (such as Play or Pause) over the attached portable media player.

PHONE



Item	Menu Item
A	Phone
B	Speed dial
C	Phonebook
D	History
E	Messaging
F	Settings

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. Once you pair your cell phone, you can access many options using the touchscreen or voice commands. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cell phone's functionality.

At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Dialing a number.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's user manual or the local Ford website.

Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

The first thing you must do to use the phone features of SYNC is to pair your Bluetooth-enabled cell phone with SYNC. This allows you to use your cell phone in a hands-free manner.

Touch the upper left corner of the touchscreen:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Pair phone	
Find SYNC	Follow the on-screen instructions. Make sure that Bluetooth is set to **On** and that your cell phone is in the correct mode. See your cell phone's manual if necessary. Select **SYNC** and a six-digit PIN appears on your device. If you are prompted to enter a PIN on your device, it does not support Secure Simple Pairing. To pair, enter the PIN displayed on the touchscreen. Skip the next step. When prompted on your cell phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cell phone. The display indicates when the pairing is successful. SYNC may prompt you with more cell phone options. For more information on your cell phone's capability, see your cell phone's manual and visit the website.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones

Make sure that Bluetooth is set to **On** and that your cell phone is in the correct mode. See your device's manual if necessary.

To pair a subsequent cell phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone	
Settings	
Bluetooth Devices	
Add Device	
Find SYNC	Follow the on-screen instructions. Make sure that Bluetooth is set to **On** and that your cell phone is in the correct mode. See your cell phone's manual if necessary. Select **SYNC** and a six-digit PIN appears on your device. If you are prompted to enter a PIN on your device, it does not support Secure Simple Pairing. To pair, enter the PIN displayed on the touchscreen. Skip the next step. When prompted on your cell phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cell phone. The display indicates when the pairing is successful. SYNC may prompt you with more cell phone options. For more information on your cell phone's capability, see your cell phone's manual and visit the website.

Making Calls



Press the voice button and say a command similar to the following:

Voice command
Call
Dial

You can say the name of a person from your phone book to call or a say a number to dial. For example "Call Jenny" or "Dial 867-5309".



To end the call or exit phone mode, press and hold the phone button.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Call information appears in the display if it is available.



To accept the call, select:

Menu Item
Accept

Note: *You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.*



To reject the call, select:

Menu Item
Reject

Note: *You can also reject the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.*

Ignore the call by doing nothing. SYNC logs it as a missed call.

Phone Menu Options

Press the top left corner on the touchscreen to select from the following options:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone	Touch this button to access the on-screen numerical pad to enter a number and place a call. During an active call, you can also choose any of these options:
	Mute Call
	Hold Call
	Hands-free off
	Join Calls
	End
Speed dial	Select to call stored contacts.
Phonebook	Touch this button to access and call any contacts in your previously downloaded phonebook. The system places the entries in alphabetical categories summarized at the top of the screen
	To turn on contact picture settings, if your device supports this feature, select:
	Phone
	Settings

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description	
	Manage Phonebook	
	Display Photos from Phonebook	
	Certain smartphones may support transferring street addresses when listed with phonebook contact information. If your cell phone supports this feature, you can select and use these addresses as destinations and save them as favorites.	
Call History	**Note:** This is a cell phone-dependent feature. If your cell phone does not support downloading call history using Bluetooth, SYNC keeps track of calls made with the SYNC system. After you connect your Bluetooth-enabled cell phone to SYNC, you can access any previously dialed, received or missed calls. You can also choose to save these to:	
	Favorites	Quick Dial
Messaging	Send text messages using the touchscreen. See **Text Messaging** later in this section.	
Settings	Touch this button to access various phone settings, for example turning Bluetooth on and off, managing your phonebook and more. See **Phone Settings** later in this section	

Text Messaging

Note: *Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are cell phone-dependent features.*

Note: *Certain features in text messaging are speed-dependent and not available when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 5.0 mph (8 km/h).*

Note: *SYNC does not download read text messages from your cell phone.*

You can send and receive text messages using Bluetooth, read them aloud and translate text messaging acronyms, for example LOL.

Touch the top left corner of the display, then select:

Menu Item
Phone
Messaging
Then any of the following:
Listen (speaker icon)
Dial
Send Text
View
Delete
Delete All

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Composing a Text Message

Note: *This is a speed-dependent feature. It is unavailable when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 5 mph (8 km/h).*

Note: *Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are cell phone-dependent features.*

To compose and send a text message, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone	
Messaging	
Send Text	Enter a cell phone number or choose from your phonebook.
Edit Text	Allows you to customize the pre-defined message or create a message on your own.
Send	Sends the message as it is.

You can then preview the message, verify the recipient as well as update the message list, and send it to a connected device, for example a USB drive.

Text Message Options

Messages
I'll call you back in a few minutes.
I just left, I'll be there soon.
Can you give me a call?
I'm on my way.
I'm running a few minutes late.
I'm ahead of schedule, so I'll be there early.

Messages
I'm outside.
I'll call you when I get there.
OK
Yes
No
Thanks
Stuck in traffic.
Call me later.
LOL

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Receiving a Text Message

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the screen displays a pop-up with the caller name and ID, if supported by your cell phone. You can select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
View	To view the text message.
Listen	For SYNC to read the message to you.
Dial	To call the contact.
Ignore	To exit the screen.

Phone Settings

To enter the phone settings menu select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone	
Settings	
Then any of the following:	
Bluetooth Devices	Connect, disconnect, add or delete a device, as well as save it as a favorite.
Bluetooth	To turn Bluetooth off or on.
Do Not Disturb	If you want all calls to go directly to your voicemail and not ring in the vehicle. When this feature is on, text message notifications do not ring inside the cabin either.
Emergency Assistance	Switch the Emergency Assistance feature on or off. See **Information** (page 378).
Phone Ringer	Select the ring tone you want to hear when you receive a call. Choose from possible system ring tones, your currently paired cell phone's ring tone, a beep, text-to-speech or a silent notification.
Text Message Notification	Select a text message notification, if supported by your cell phone. Choose from possible system alert tones, text-to-speech or silent.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description
Internet Data Connection	If your cell phone is compatible, use this screen to adjust your internet data connection. Select to make your connection profile with the personal area network or to turn off your connection. You can also choose to adjust your settings or have the system always connect, never connect when roaming or query on connect. Press **?** for more information.
Manage Phonebook	To access features such as automatic phonebook download, re-download your phonebook, add contacts from your cell phone as well as delete or upload your phonebook.
Roaming Warning	To have the system alert you when your cell phone is in roaming mode.

Phone Voice Commands

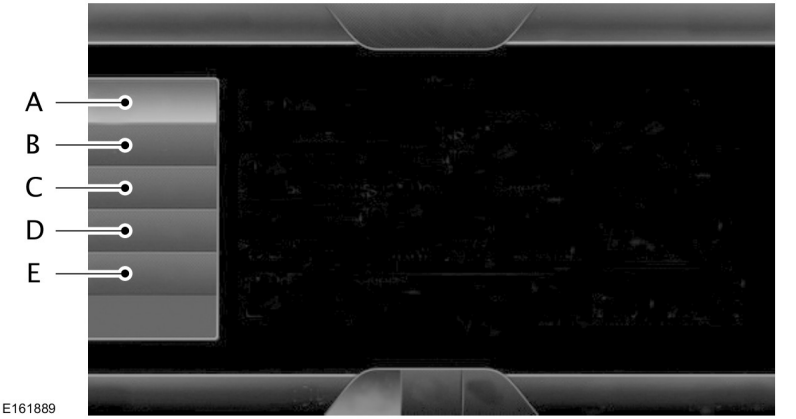


Press the voice button and when prompted say any of the following or a similar command:

Voice command
Call Voicemail
Listen to Message
Reply to Message
Pair Phone
help

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

INFORMATION



Item	Menu Item
A	Traffic
B	Notifications
C	Calendar
D	SYNC-Apps
E	Where Am I?

If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, press the **Information** button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, press the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

Notifications

If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the i (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Press Notifications, and then choose from any of the following services:

Menu Item	Action and Description
View	The complete message
Delete	The message
Delete All	Messages

This screen displays any system messages (such as an SD card fault).

Note: *The system alerts you to any messages by turning the information icon yellow. After you read or delete the messages, the icon returns to white.*

Calendar



If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the I (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab.

Press **Calendar**. You can view the current calendar by day, week or month.

Emergency Assistance (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

For this feature to work, your mobile phone must be Bluetooth capable and compatible with the system.

Always place your mobile phone in a secure location inside your vehicle. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent Emergency Assistance from working correctly.

Unless the Emergency Assistance setting is set to on prior to a collision, the system will not attempt to place an emergency call which could delay the response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death. Do not wait for Emergency Assistance to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear Emergency Assistance within five seconds of the crash, the system or cell phone may be damaged or non-functional.

Note: *Before setting the feature on, please read the important notice about the Emergency Assistance feature and the Emergency Assistance privacy notice later in this section for important information.*

Note: *When you switch Emergency Assistance on or off, the setting apply to all paired mobile phones. If you switch Emergency Assistance off and a previously paired phone connects when you switch the ignition on, either a voice message plays, a display message or icon is shown, or both.*

Note: *Every mobile phone operates differently. While Emergency Assistance works with most mobile phones, some mobile phones may experience difficulties using this feature.*

If a crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off, the system may contact emergency services by dialing 112 (the wireless emergency number that works in most European countries) through a paired and connected cell phone. For more information about the system and Emergency Assistance, visit the regional Ford website.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Note: *In case of an emergency, Emergency Assistance, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public security. Emergency Assistance does not implement the rescue operations. The local public security department deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.*

See **Supplementary Restraints System** (page 27). Important information regarding airbag deployment is in this chapter.

See **Roadside Emergencies** (page 203). Important information regarding the fuel pump shut-off is in this chapter.

Setting Emergency Assistance On



If your vehicle is equipped with Navigation, touch the i (Information) button to access these features. If your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation, touch the corner of the touchscreen with the green tab. Then select:

Menu Item
Apps
Emergency Assistance
On



Display Options

If you switch on this feature, a confirmation message appears in the display when your cell phone connects and your vehicle starts.

If you switch off this feature, the dialog allows you to set a reminder.

Off with reminder provides a display and voice reminder when your cell phone connects and your vehicle starts.

Off without reminder provides a display reminder only without a voice reminder when your cell phone connects.

To make sure that Emergency Assistance works correctly:

- The system must have power and be working correctly at the time of the crash and during feature activation and use.
- You must switch on the feature before a crash.
- You must have a cell phone connected to the system.
- In certain countries, it may be necessary to have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in order to place and maintain an emergency call.
- A connected cell phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the crash.
- A connected cell phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- Your vehicle must have battery power.

Note: *This feature only works in a European country or region where SYNC Emergency Assistance can call the local emergency services. Visit the regional Ford website for details.*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

In the Event of a Crash

Note: *Not every crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off (which may turn on Emergency Assistance). However, if Emergency Assistance is triggered the system tries to contact the emergency services. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses connection to the system, it searches for and tries to connect to any available previously paired cell phone. The system attempts to dial 112.*

Before making a call:

- If you do not cancel the call and SYNC makes a successful call, an introductory message plays for the emergency operator. After this message, there is hands-free communication between your vehicle's occupants and the operator.
- The system provides a short window of time (approximately 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you do not cancel the call, the system attempts to dial 112.
- The system plays a message letting you know when it attempts to make an emergency call. You can cancel the call by selecting the relevant button or by pressing the end call button on the steering wheel.

During a call:

- Emergency Assistance uses your vehicle GPS or cellular network information when available to determine the most appropriate language to use. It alerts the emergency operator of the crash and delivers the introductory message. This may include your vehicle GPS coordinates.
- The language the system uses to interact with the occupants of your vehicle may differ from the language used to deliver information to the emergency operator.
- After the delivery of the introductory message the voice line opens so that you can speak hands-free with the emergency operator.
- When the line is connected, you must be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location information immediately.

Note: *While the system provides information to the emergency operator, the system plays a message letting you know it is sending important information. It then lets you know when the line is open to start hands-free communication.*

Note: *During an Emergency Assistance call, an emergency priority screen appears which contains vehicle GPS coordinates when available.*

Note: *It is possible that GPS location information is not available at the time of the crash; in this case, Emergency Assistance will still attempt to place an emergency call.*

Note: *It is possible that the emergency services will not receive the GPS coordinates; in this case, hands-free communication with an emergency operator is available.*

Note: *The emergency operator may also receive information from the cellular network such as cell phone number, cell phone location and cell phone carrier name independent from SYNC Emergency Assistance.*

Emergency Assistance may not work if:

- Your cell phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in the crash.
- The vehicle battery or the system has no power.
- A crash ejects your cell phone from your vehicle.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in your cell phone.
- You are in a European country or region where the SYNC Emergency Assistance cannot place the call. Visit the regional Ford website for details.

Important Information about the Emergency Assistance Feature

Emergency Assistance does not currently call emergency services in the following markets: Albania, Belarus, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Macedonia, Netherlands, Ukraine, Moldova and Russia.

Visit the regional Ford website for latest details.

Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice

When you switch on Emergency Assistance, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut off. This feature has the capability to disclose your location information to the emergency operator or other details about your vehicle or crash to provide the most appropriate emergency services.

If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch on the feature.

Where Am I?

For vehicle location and information select:

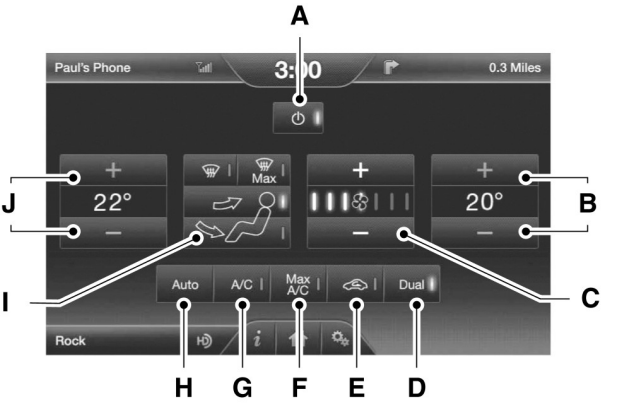
Menu Item	Action and Description
Information	
Help	
Then select:	
Where Am I?	View your vehicle's current location, if your vehicle is equipped with navigation. If your vehicle is not equipped with navigation, you do not see this button.

CLIMATE

Press the lower right corner on the touchscreen to access your climate control features. Depending on your vehicle line and option package, your climate screen may look different from the screen shown here.

Note: *You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. See* ***Settings*** *(page 347).*

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing



E193150

A **Power:** Touch to switch the system off and on. Outside air cannot enter your vehicle when you switch off the system.

B **Passenger settings:** Touch + or – to adjust the temperature.

C **Fan speed:** Touch + or - to adjust fan speed.

D **DUAL:** Touch to switch on the passenger temperature control.

E **Recirculated air:** Touch to switch the recirculated air on or off which may reduce the amount of time needed to cool down the interior and help reduce odors from reaching the interior. Recirculated air also engages automatically when MAX A/C or MAX defrost is selected and may be engaged manually in any airflow mode except defrost. It may also turn off in all airflow modes except MAX A/C and MAX defrost to reduce fog potential.

F **MAX A/C:** Touch to cool your vehicle with recirculated air. Touch again for normal A/C operation. MAX A/C distributes air through instrument panel vents and may help reduce odors from entering your vehicle. MAX A/C is more economical and efficient than normal A/C mode.

G **A/C:** Touch to switch the air conditioning on or off. Use A/C with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. A/C engages automatically in MAX A/C, defrost and footwell/defrost.

H **AUTO:** Touch to engage automatic operation, then set the temperature using the temperature control. The system automatically controls fan speed, airflow distribution, A/C on or off and the use of fresh or recirculated air.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

I **Manual airflow distribution controls: Footwell and Defrost:** Distributes air through the windshield defroster vents, demister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents, and provides outside air to reduce window fogging. **Panel:** Distributes air through the instrument panel vents. **Panel and Floor:** Distributes air through the instrument panel vents, demister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents. **Floor:** Distributes air through the demister vents, floor vents and rear seat floor vents. **Defrost:** Touch to clear the windshield of fog and thin ice. Touch again to return to the previous airflow selection. When on, defrost provides outside air to reduce window fogging and distributes air through the windshield defroster vents and demister vents. **MAX Defrost:** Distributes outside air through the windshield air vents and automatically turns the air conditioning on. The fan is set to the highest speed and the temperature to HI. When the air distribution is set in this position, you are unable to select recirculated air or manually adjust the fan speed and temperature control.

J **Driver settings:** Touch + or – to adjust the temperature.

Climate Control Voice Commands



Press the voice button on the steering wheel controls. When prompted, say any of the following or a similar command:

Voice commands	
Climate On	
Climate Off	
Set temperature	Adjust the temperature to between 15.0 - 30.0ºC or 59 - 86ºF.

NAVIGATION

Note: *The navigation SD card must be in the SD card slot to operate the navigation system. If you need a replacement SD card, contact an authorized dealer.*

Note: *The SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, just push the card in and release it. Do not attempt to pull the card out to remove it; this could cause damage.*

Your navigation system is comprised of two main features, destination mode and map mode.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Destination Mode

To set a destination press the green corner of your touchscreen, then press:

Menu Item
Dest.
Choose any of the following:
My Home
Favourites
Previous Destinations
Place of interest
Emergency
Address
Junction
Town centre
Latitude/Longitude
Edit Route
Cancel Route

To set your destination, enter the necessary information into the highlighted text fields (in any order).

For an address destination entry, press:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Go	Pressing this button makes the address location appear on the map.

To choose a previous destination, press:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Previous Destinations	The last 20 destinations you have selected appear.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Once you have chosen you destination press:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Set as Dest	To make this your destination. You can also choose to set this as a waypoint (have the system route to this point on the way to your current destination) or save it as a favorite. You can then choose your route from three different options.	
	Fastest Route	Uses the fastest moving roads possible.
	Shortest Route	Uses the shortest distance possible.
	Eco Route	Uses the most fuel-efficient route.
Avoid Areas	Your pre-set selections are considered when your route is calculated. For more information on these selections, see **Setting Your Navigation Preferences** later in this chapter.	

To begin navigation press:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Start Route	You can cancel the route or have the system demo the route for you. During route guidance, you can press the talking bubble icon that appears in the upper right navigation corner (green bar) if you want the system to repeat route guidance information. When the system repeats the last guidance instruction, it updates the distance to the next guidance instruction, since it detects when the vehicle is moving.

To set route preferences press:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Route Prefs	In route preferences you can set preferences like avoiding motorways, tollroads, ferries and car trains or tunnels.

Note: *If your vehicle is on a recognized road and you do not press the* ***Start Route*** *button, the system defaults to the Fastest Route option and begins guidance.*

Michelin Travel Guide (If Equipped)

The Michelin travel guide is a service which provides additional information about certain places of interests (POI) such as restaurants, hotels and touristic sites (if available).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

If you have paired your phone with the system, you can press the phone button to directly establish a call with the selected POI.

Note: *Not all features are available in all languages and countries.*

Places of Interest (POI) Categories

Main categories
Fuel Station
Parking
Food, Drink and Dining
Automotive
Travel and Transportation
Shopping
Financial
Entertainment & Arts
Emergency
Recreation & Sports
Community
Government
Health & Medicine
Domestic Services

To expand these listings, press the + in front of the listing.

The system also allows you to sort alphabetically or by distance.

Setting Your Navigation Preferences



Select settings for the system to take into account when planning your route.

To access the settings options, press:

Menu Item
Settings
Navigation
Then select any of the following:

Map Preferences

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions	
Map Preferences		
Then select any of the following:		
Breadcrumbs	Display your vehicle's previously traveled route with white dots. You can switch this feature:	
	On	Off

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions	
Turn List Format	Have the system display your turn list:	
	Top to Bottom	Bottom to Top
Parking POI Notification	When parking point of interest notification is on, the icons display on the map when you get close to your destination. This may not be very useful in dense areas, and may clutter the map when other points of interest display. Set the automatic parking point of interest notification. You can switch this feature:	
	On	Off

Route Preferences

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions		
Route Preferences			
Then select any of the following:			
Preferred Route	Choose to have the system display your chosen route type.		
	Shortest Route	Fastest Route	Ecological
Always use Preferred Route	Bypass route selection in destination programming. The system only calculates one route based on preferred route setting. When activated, the system uses your selected route type to calculate only one route to the desired destination.		
Eco Time Penalty	Select a level of cost for the calculated Eco Route. The higher the setting, the longer the time allotment is for the route.		
Avoid	When activated, you can to choose to have the system avoid motorways, toll roads, ferries, car trains and tunnels when planning your route.		

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Navigation Preferences

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions	
Navigation Preferences		
Then select any of the following:		
Hazard Spot Warning	Have the system activate hazard spot warning in countries where legally allowed.	
Guidance Prompts	Select the type of prompts the system uses.	
Auto-fill country	Have the system automatically fill in the country based on the information already entered into the system. You can switch this feature:	
	On	Off

Traffic Preferences

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions	
Traffic Preferences		
Then select any of the following:		
Avoid Traffic Problems	You can choose how you want the system to handle traffic problems along your route.	
	Automatic	Have the system reroute you to avoid traffic incidents that develop and impact the current route. The system does not provide a traffic alert notification
	Manual	Have the system always provide a traffic alert notification for traffic incidents along the planned route. You have a choice to accept or ignore the notification before making the route deviation.
Traffic alert notification	Activate traffic alert notifications on or off.	
Traffic Icon Settings	You can choose to activate any of the following Traffic Icon Settings.	
	Have the system avoid traffic problems automatically.	

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions
	Switch traffic alert notifications on or off.
	Have the system display accident icons.
	Have the system display traffic jam icons.
	Have the system display closed roads.
	Have the system display road work icons.
	Have the system display incident icons.
	Have the system display icons for areas where difficult driving conditions may occur.
	Have the system display icons for areas where snow and ice on the road may occur.
	Have the system display any smog icons.
	Have the system display weather warning icons.
	Have the system display where there may be reduced visibility.
	Have the system display icons to recommend switching on your radio for traffic announcements.

Avoid Area

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions
Avoid Areas	Choose areas which you want the system to avoid when calculating a route for you.
Then select any of the following:	
Add	Once you make a selection, the system tries to avoid the area(s) if possible for all routes. To program an entry, press:
Delete	To delete a section choose the listing on the screen. The screen will change, then press:

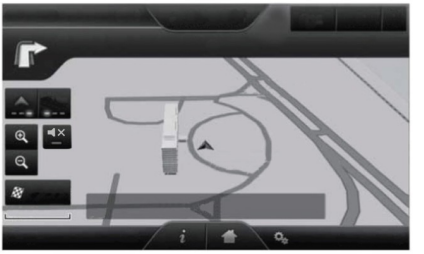
C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Map Mode

Press the green bar in the upper right area of the touchscreen to view map mode. Map mode shows advanced viewing comprised of both 2D city maps as well as 3D landmarks (when available).

2D city maps show detailed outlines of buildings, visible land use and land elements and detailed railway infrastructure for the most essential cities around the globe. These maps also contain features, such as town blocks, building footprints and railways.

3D landmarks appear as clear, visible objects that are typically recognizable and have a certain tourist value. The 3D landmarks appear in 3D map mode only. Coverage varies and improves with updated map releases.



E174016

Change the appearance of the map display by repeatedly pressing the arrow button in the upper left corner of the screen. It toggles between three different map modes:



Heading up (2D map) This always shows the direction of forward travel to be upward on the screen. This view is available for map scales up to 3 mph (5 km/h).



North up (2D map) always shows the northern direction to be upward on the screen.



3D map mode provides an elevated perspective of the map. This viewing angle can be adjusted and the map can be rotated 180 degrees by touching the map twice, and then dragging your finger along the shaded bar with arrows at the bottom of the map.

You can also select the following options:

Menu Items	
View	Switches between full map, street list and exit view in route guidance.
Menu	Displays a pop-up box that allows direct access to navigation settings.



Press the speaker button on the map to mute route guidance. When the light on the button illuminates, the feature is on. The speaker button appears on the map only when route guidance is active.



Re-center the map by pressing this icon whenever you scroll the map away from your vehicle's current location.

Auto Zoom

Press the green bar to access map mode, then select the **+** or **-** zoom button to bring up the zoom level and Auto buttons on the touchscreen. When you press **Auto**, Auto Zoom turns on and **Auto** displays in the bottom left corner of the screen in the map scale. The map zoom level then

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

synchronizes with vehicle speed. The slower your vehicle is traveling, the farther in the map zooms in; the faster your vehicle is traveling, the farther the map zooms out. To switch the feature off, just press the + or - button again.

In 3D mode, rotate the map view by swiping your finger across the shaded bar with the arrows.

The ETA box under the zoom buttons appears when a route is active and displays the distance and time to your destination. If the button is pressed, a pop up appears with the destination listed (and waypoint if applicable) along with mileage and time to destination. You may also select to have either the estimated time to reach your destination or your estimated arrival time.

Map Icons



Vehicle mark shows the current location of your vehicle. It stays in the center of the map display, except when in scroll mode.



Scroll cursor allows you to scroll the map; the fixed icon is in the center of the screen. The map position closest to the cursor is in a window on the top center part of the screen.



Address book entry default icon(s) indicates the location on the map of an address book entry. This is the default symbol shown after the entry has been stored to the Address Book by any method other than the map. You can select from any of the 22 icons available. You can use each icon more than once.



Home indicates the location on the map currently stored as the home position. You can only save one address from the Address Book as your Home entry. You cannot change this icon.



POI (Point Of Interest) icons indicate locations of any point of interest categories you choose to display on the map. You can choose to display three point of interest categories on the map at one time.



Starting point indicates the starting point of a planned route.



Waypoint indicates the location of a waypoint on the map. The number inside the circle is different for each waypoint and represents the position of the waypoint in the route list.



Destination symbol indicates the ending point of a planned route.



Next maneuver point indicates the location of the next turn on the planned route.



No GPS symbol indicates that insufficient GPS satellite signals are available for accurate map positioning. This icon may display under normal operation in an area with poor GPS access.

Quick-touch Buttons

When in map mode, touch anywhere on the map display to access the following options:

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Set as Dest	Touch this button to select a scrolled location on the map as your destination. You may scroll the map by pressing your index finger on the map display. When you reach the desired location, simply let go and then touch this button.	
Set as Waypoint	Touch this button to set the current location as a waypoint.	
Save to Favorites	Touch this button to save the current location to your favorites.	
POI Icons	Touch this button to select icons to display on the map. You can select up to three icons to display on the map at the same time. You can switch these features:	
	On	Off
Cancel Route	Touch this button to cancel the active route.	

View/Edit Route

Access these features when a route is active:

Menu Item
View Route
Edit Destination/Waypoints
Edit Turn List
Detour
Edit Route Preferences
Edit Traffic Preferences
Cancel Route

HERE is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you may report them directly to HERE by going to www.here.com. HERE evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

Navigation Map Updates

Annual navigation map updates are available for purchase through your dealership.

Navigation Voice Commands



When in navigation mode, press the voice button on the steering wheel controls.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

After the tone, say any of the following or a similar command:

Voice command
Destination
Zoom Out
Zoom In
Where Am I
help

The following commands can only be used when a navigation route is active:

Voice command
Reroute
Cancel Route
Show whole route
Repeat last instruction
Show route summary

One-shot Destination Street Address

To set a destination with voice commands, you can say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
Destination address	The system asks you to say the full address. The system displays an example on-screen.

You can then speak the address naturally, such as "One two three four Main Street, Anytown".

SYNC™ TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, please refer to the tables below.

To check your cell phone's compatibility, visit the regional Ford website.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
A lot of background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your cell phone may be affecting SYNC performance.	Refer to your device's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Make sure that the microphone for SYNC is not set to off.
SYNC is not able to download my phonebook.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC.
The system says "Phonebook downloaded" but my SYNC phonebook is empty or is missing contacts.	Limitations on your cell phone's capability.	Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add.
		If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, try moving them to your cell phone's memory.
		Remove any pictures or special ring tones associated with the missing contact.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC.
I am having trouble connecting my cell phone to SYNC.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Try deleting your device from SYNC and deleting SYNC from your device, then trying again.
		Always check the security and auto accept prompt settings relative to the SYNC Bluetooth connection on your cell phone.
		Update your cell phone's firmware.
		Switch off the auto download setting.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
	iPhone	• Go to your cell phone's Settings. • Go to the Bluetooth Menu. • Make sure the connection status shows Not Connected. • Press the blue circle to enter the next menu. • Turn on Show Notifications. • Turn on Sync Contacts. Your iPhone is now set up to forward incoming text messages to SYNC. Repeat these steps for every other Sync vehicle you are connected to. Your iPhone will only forward incoming text messages to SYNC if it is unlocked. Replying to text messages using SYNC is not supported by iPhone.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Cell phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
		Text messages from WhatsApp and Facebook Messenger are not supported.
Audible text messages do not work on my cell phone.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Your cell phone must support downloading text messages through Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.
		Access the text messaging menu of SYNC to see if your cell phone supports the feature. Press the **PHONE** button and then scroll and select the option for text messaging, then press **OK**.
	This is a cell phone limitation.	Because each cell phone is different, refer to your device's manual for the specific cell phone you are pairing. In fact, there can be differences between cell phones due to brand, model, service provider and software version.

USB and media issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
I am having trouble connecting my device.	Possible device malfunction.	Try switching off the device, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable.
		Make sure correctly insert the USB cable to the device and your vehicle's USB port.
		Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

USB and media issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
SYNC does not recognize my device when I start my vehicle.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a device-dependent feature.	Make sure you connect the device to SYNC and press play on your device.
	The device is not connected.	
SYNC does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information.	Make sure that all song details are populated.
	The file may be corrupted.	Try replacing the corrupt file with a new version.
	The song may have copyright protection that does not allow it to play.	Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to media transfer protocol class.
When I connect my iPhone or iPod Touch through the USB and Bluetooth Audio at the same time, I sometimes do not hear any sound.	This is a device limitation.	From the iPhone or iPod Touch music now playing screen, select the audio device airplay icon at the very bottom of your iPhone or iPod Touch screen.
		To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through Bluetooth Audio, select SYNC.
		To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through USB, select Dock Connector.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
SYNC does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.
		Refer to the audio display during an active voice session to find a list of voice commands there.
	You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	The microphone for the system is either in your rear view mirror or in the headliner just above the windshield.
SYNC does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.
	You may not be saying the name exactly as the system saved it.	Say the song or artist exactly as the system saved it. If you say, "Play Artist Prince", the system does not play music by Prince and the Revolution or Prince and the New Power Generation.
		Make sure you are saying the complete title such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".
		If the song titles are in capital letters, you have to spell them. LOLA requires you to say "L-O-L-A".
	The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it.	Do not use special characters in the title, as the system does not recognize them.
SYNC does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands at the beginning of the cell phone section.
		You can also use the cell phone and media suggestion lists to get a list of possible suggestions when the system cannot fully understand you. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 301).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
	You may not be saying the name exactly as the system saved it.	Make sure you are saying the name exactly as the system saved it. For example, if the contact name is Joe Wilson, say "Call Joe Wilson".
		The system works better if you list full names such as "Joe Wilson" rather than "Joe".
	Contacts in your phonebook may be very short and similar or they may contain special characters.	Do not use special characters such as 123 or ICE as the system does not recognize them.
	Your phonebook contacts may be in capital letters.	If the contacts are in capital letters, you have to spell them. JAKE requires you to say "Call J-A-K-E".
The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign names stored on my cell phone.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC.	SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the contact names stored on your cell phone.
		Helpful Hint: You can select your contact manually. Press **PHONE**. Select the option for phonebook and then contact name. Press the soft-key option to hear it. SYNC will read the contact name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation it is expecting.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign tracks, artists, albums, genres and playlist names from my media player or USB flash drive.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC.	SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names stored on your media player or USB flash drive. It is able to make some exceptions for very popular artist names (for example, U2) such that you can always use the English pronunciation for these artists.
The system generates voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words may not be accurate for my language.	SYNC uses text-to-speech voice prompt technology.	SYNC uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.
		SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example," play artist Madonna).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

General		
Issue	**Possible cause**	**Possible solution**
The language selected for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display does not match the SYNC language (phone, USB, Bluetooth audio, voice control and voice prompts).	SYNC does not support the currently selected language for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display.	SYNC only supports four languages in a single module for text display, voice control and voice prompts. The country where you bought your vehicle dictates the four languages based on the most popular languages spoken. If the selected language is not available, SYNC remains in the current active language.
		SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, “call John Smith”) or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, play artist Madonna).

SYNC with Touchscreen System Reset
The system has a System Reset feature that can be performed if the function of a SYNC feature is lost. This reset is intended to restore functionality and will not erase any information previously stored in the system (such as paired devices, phonebook, call history, text messages, or user settings). To perform a System Reset, press and hold the Seek Up (>>) button while pressing and holding the Radio Power button. After approximately 5 seconds the screen will go black. Allow 1-2 minutes for the system reset to complete. You may then resume using the SYNC system.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY

WARNINGS

Your vehicle has been tested and certified to legislations relating to electromagnetic compatibility (72/245/EEC, UN ECE Regulation 10 or other applicable local requirements). It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment you have fitted complies with applicable local legislations. Have any equipment fitted by an authorized dealer.

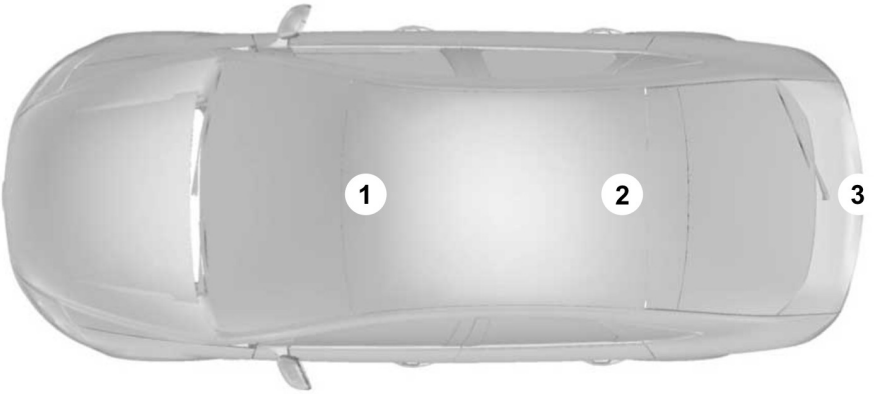
WARNINGS

The radio frequency transmitter equipment, for example cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters, may only be fitted to your vehicle if they keep to the parameters shown in the table below. There are no special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

Do not mount any transceiver, microphones, speakers, or any other item in the deployment path of the airbag system.

Do not fasten antenna cables to original vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

Keep antenna and power cables at least 3.9 in (10 cm) from any electronic modules and airbags.



E170906

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	50 W	3
30-54	50 W	1, 2
68-87.5	50 W	1, 2
142-176	50 W	1, 2
380-512	50 W	1, 2
806-940	10 W	1, 2
1200-1400	10 W	1, 2
1710-1885	10 W	1, 2
1885-2025	10 W	1, 2

Note: *After the installation of radio frequency transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in your vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.*

Check all electrical equipment:

- With the ignition on.
- With the engine running.
- During a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside your vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

SYNC End User License Agreement (EULA)

- You have acquired a device ("DEVICE") that includes software licensed by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY") from an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation ("MS") . Those installed software products of MS origin, as well as associated media, printed materials,

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

and "online" or electronic documentation ("MS SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The MS SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.

- The MS SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY. The additional software and systems of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("FORD SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The FORD SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE and/or FORD SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by third party software and service suppliers. The additional software and services of third party origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE, FORD SOFTWARE and THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE hereinafter collectively and individually will be referred to as "SOFTWARE".

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICE OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICE, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICE and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICE and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY or MS may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Security Updates/Digital Rights Management:** Content owners use the WMDRM technology included in your DEVICE to protect their intellectual property, included copyrighted content. Portions of the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE use WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the SOFTWARE's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. This action does not affect unprotected content. When your DEVICE downloads licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a revocation list with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.
- **Consent to Use of Data:** You agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may collect and use technical information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and services suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may use this information solely to improve their products or to provide customized services or technologies to you. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICE.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components").

If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply.

If MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent make available Supplemental Components, and no other EULA terms are provided, then the terms of this EULA shall apply, except that the MS, Microsoft Corporation or affiliate entity providing the Supplemental Component(s) shall be the licensor of the Supplemental Component(s).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The MS SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites through the use of the SOFTWARE. The third party sites are not under the control of MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent. Neither MS nor Microsoft Corporation nor their affiliates nor their designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICE operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and assumes any risk associated with the use of the DEVICE.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA: If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICE on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

SOFTWARE onto the DEVICE as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS: All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or their affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service providers, their affiliates and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments. For additional information, see http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/.

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, third party software or service providers, their affiliates or suppliers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Product support for the SOFTWARE is not provided by MS, its parent corporation Microsoft Corporation, or their affiliates or subsidiaries. For product support, please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICE. Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICE.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND/OR THEIR AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR ANY AMOUNT IN EXCESS OF U.S. TWO HUNDRED FIFTY DOLLARS (U.S. $250.00).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

- THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY EXPRESSLY BE PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

Adobe

Contains Adobe® [Flash® Player] or [AIR®] technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated. This [Licensee Product] contains [Adobe® Flash® Player] [Adobe® AIR®] software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated, Copyright ©1995-2009 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved. Adobe, Flash and AIR are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

End User Notice

Microsoft® Windows® Mobile for Automotive Important Safety Information

This system Ford SYNC contains software that is licensed to Manufacturer FORD MOTOR COMPANY by an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation pursuant to a license agreement. Any removal, reproduction, reverse engineering or other unauthorized use of the software from this system in violation of the license agreement is strictly prohibited and may subject you to legal action.

Read and follow instructions: Before using your Windows Automotive- based system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("User's Guide"). Not following precautions found in this User's Guide can lead to an accident or other serious consequences.

Keep User's Guide in vehicle: When kept in the vehicle, the User's Guide will be a ready reference for you and other users unfamiliar with the Windows Automotive-based system. Please make certain that before using the system for the first time, all persons have access to the User's Guide and read its instructions and safety information carefully.

WARNING

Operating certain parts of this system while driving can distract your attention away from the road, and possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions you might be required to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

General Operation

Voice Command Control: Functions within the Windows Automotive-based system may be accomplished using only voice commands. Using voice commands while driving allows you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel.

Prolonged Views of Screen: Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Even occasional short scans to the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving task at a critical time.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Volume Setting: Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.

Use of Speech Recognition Functions: Speech recognition software is inherently a statistical process which is subject to errors. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors.

Navigation Features: Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

Distraction Hazard: Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious consequences. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.

Let Your Judgment Prevail: Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

Route Safety: Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.

Potential Map Inaccuracy: Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.

Emergency Services: Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the Telenav Software. Your use of the Telenav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the Telenav Software.

These terms and conditions represent the agreement (“Agreement”) between you and Telenav, Inc. (“Telenav”) with respect to the Telenav Software (including upgrades, modifications, or additions thereto) (collectively “Telenav Software”). All references herein to “you” and “your” means you, your employees, agents, and contractors, and any other entity on whose behalf you accept these terms and

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

conditions, all of whom shall also be bound by this Agreement. Additionally, all of your account information, as well as other payment and personal information provided by you to Telenav (directly or through the use of the Telenav Software, is subject to Telenav's privacy policy located at http://www.telenav.com.

Telenav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit http://www.telenav.com from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the Telenav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the Telenav Software: (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely; (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the Telenav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions; (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the Telenav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked; (d) do not use the Telenav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement; (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the Telenav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold Telenav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the Telenav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the Telenav Software, to provide Telenav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform Telenav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, Telenav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the Telenav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the Telenav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the Telenav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

You agree not to do any of the following: (a) reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the Telenav Software or any part thereof; (b) attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the Telenav Software without the prior express written consent of Telenav; (c) remove from the Telenav Software, or alter, any of Telenav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

copyright notices, or other notices or markings; (d) distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the Telenav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software; or (e) use the Telenav Software in any manner that (i) infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party, (ii) violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or (iii) is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the Telenav Software without advanced written permission of Telenav.

4. Disclaimers

To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will Telenav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the Telenav Software. Telenav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the Telenav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the Telenav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the Telenav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the Telenav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the Telenav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial.

This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of laws provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both Telenav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the Telenav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the Telenav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to Telenav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the Telenav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Telenav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between Telenav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, Telenav retains all right, title and interest in and to the Telenav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and Telenav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the Telenav Software, you consent to receive from Telenav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the Telenav Software (collectively, “Notices”) electronically. Telenav may provide such

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Notices by posting them on Telenav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the Telenav Software.

8.4

Telenav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including," and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation."

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors:

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 20xx. All rights reserved.

Permitted Use.

You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions.

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning.

The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty.

This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty:

TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Disclaimer of Liability:

TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control.

You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement.

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert “Netherlands” where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert “The Netherlands” where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users.

If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a “commercial item” as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. (“FAR”) 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following “Notice of Use,” and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided.

© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."

"©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors ("Third Party Data"), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada ("NRCan"):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.
End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía ("INEGI"):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: "Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Ecuador	"INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION Nº IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011" "source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®"
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
Jordan	"© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre". The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client's license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE's database for the country of Jordan ("Jordan Data") for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, "Enterprise Applications" shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministèrie de l'Equipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Austria	"© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"
Germany	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"
Great Britain	"Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"
Greece	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."
Hungary	"Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."
Italy	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."
Norway	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"
Portugal	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"
Spain	"Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"
Sweden	"Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."
Switzerland	"Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.psma.com.au).

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2 , and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

rigCustomer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFROMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2's OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2(and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright© 2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents #5,987,525, #6,061,680, #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6.240,459, #6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device.

This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content") , Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER.

© Gracenote 2007.

Vehicle with SYNC only

United States and Mexico

FCC ID: KMHSG1G1

IC: 1422A-SG1G1

Mexico

Model: KMHSG1P1

NOM-121-SCT1-2009

The operation of this equipment is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This equipment or device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this equipment or device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Vehicle with SYNC with Touchscreen/My Touch

FCC ID: KMHSYNCG2

IC: 1422A-SYNCG2

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

TYPE APPROVALS

RF Certification Logos for Tire Pressure Monitoring Sensor(s)

Schrader AG2SZ4 Numero de Registro CNC: H-13498

E207816

Argentina

TRA
REGISTERED NO:ER0I30238/14
DEALER NO:DA0047074/10

E207817

Abu Dhabi, Dubai



E197509



E202555

Brazil

Herby, Schrader Electronics UK Ltd., declares that this TPMS is in compliance with the essential requirements and other provisions of directive 1999/5/EC. The declaration of conformity may be consulted at emcteam@schrader.co.uk

E207818

European Union EU

Kingdom of Jordon Type approval for tyre pressure sensor.
Model: AG2SZ4
Manufacturer: Schrader Electronics
Type Approval Number: TRC/LPD/2014/56

E207819

Jordan

RAQP/33A/0514/S/(14-0847)

E207820

Malaysia



E197811

Moldova



E207821

Morocco



TA-2014/064

Approved

E198002

South Africa



NTC

Type Approved

No:ESD-1408639C

E198001

Philippines



E203899



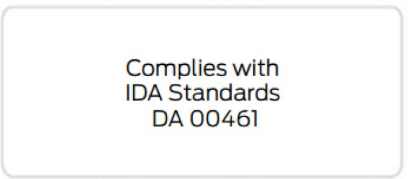
E197844

Serbia



E203679

Taiwan



E207822

Singapore



Schrader Electronics цім стверджує, що обладнання Радіопередавач моделі AG2SZ4 системи контролю тиску в шині автомобіла відповідає вимогам Технічного регламенту радіообладнання і телекомунікаційного кінцевого (термінального) обладнання (Постанова КМУ № 679 від 24 червня 2009 р.) Декларація відповідності знаходиться на сайті Schrader Electronics та надається за запитом на електрону адресу doc.request@schrader.co.uk

E198009

Ukraine

A

A/C
See: Climate Control....92
About This Manual....7
ABS
See: Brakes....139
ABS driving hints
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....139
Accessories
See: Replacement Parts Recommendation....10
ACC
See: Using Adaptive Cruise Control....159
Active City Stop....178
Principle of Operation....178
Switching the System Off and On....179
Active Park Assist....149
Deactivating the Active Park Assist Feature....153
Parallel Parking, Perpendicular Parking, Park Out Assist....149
Troubleshooting the System....153
Adjusting the Steering Wheel....53
Air Conditioning
See: Climate Control....92
Air Vents....92
Center Air Vents....92
Side Air Vents....93
Alarm
See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery....48
See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor....50
See: Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Perimeter Alarm....52
Ambient Lighting....66
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Integral Battery....48
Alarm System....48
Arming the Alarm....50
Disarming the Alarm....50
Full and Reduced Guard....49
Triggering the Alarm....49
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Interior Sensor....50
Alarm System....50
Arming the Alarm....52
Disarming the Alarm....52
Full and Reduced Guard....51
Triggering the Alarm....51
Anti-Theft Alarm - Vehicles With: Perimeter Alarm....52
Arming the Alarm....52
Disarming the Alarm....52
Appendices....403
At a Glance....11
Audible Warnings and Indicators....78
Automatic Transmission....78
Fuel Gauge....78
Headlamps On....78
Key Outside Car....78
Low Fuel Reminder....78
Safety Belt Minder....78
Audio Control....53
Type One....53
Type Two....54
Audio Input Jack....297
Audio System....288
General Information....288
Audio Troubleshooting....299
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: AM/FM/CD....290
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC 2....294
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC....292
Autolamps....61
Automatic Climate Control....94
Mono Mode....96
Switching Mono Mode Back On....96
Switching Mono Mode Off....96
Temperature Control....96
Automatic High Beam Control....62
Activating the System....63
Manually Overriding the System....63

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Automatic Transmission.....136
Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning.....138
Emergency Park Position Release Lever.....137
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow.....138
Selector Lever Positions.....136
Auto-Start-Stop.....127
Limitations of Use.....127
Switching the System On and Off.....128
Using Auto-Start-Stop Automatic Transmission.....127
Using Auto-Start-Stop Manual Transmission.....127
Autowipers.....56
Auxiliary Heater.....99
Fuel Operated Heater.....102
Fuel Operated Parking Heater.....99
Auxiliary Power Points.....116
12 Volt DC Power Point.....116
Location.....116

B

Blind Spot Information System.....173
Blind Spot Information System (BLIS™) with Cross Traffic Alert.....173
Bonnet Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....228
Brake Fluid Check.....238
Brakes.....139
General Information.....139
Breaking-In.....200
Brakes and Clutch.....200
Engine.....200
Tires.....200
Bulb Specification Chart.....250

C

Cabin Air Filter.....103
Capacities and Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....279
Capacities.....279
Specifications.....279
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel.....283
Capacities.....283
Specifications.....283
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....280
Capacities.....280
Specifications.....280
Capacities and Specifications - 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT (Sigma)/1.6L Flex Fuel.....281
Capacities.....281
Specifications.....282
Capacities and Specifications - 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel.....284
Capacities.....284
Specifications.....285
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....286
Capacities.....286
Specifications.....286
Capacities and Specifications.....275
Car Wash
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....251
Catalytic Converter.....132
Driving with a Catalytic Converter.....132
Center Console.....117
Changing a Bulb.....243
Central High Mounted Brake Lamp.....248
Front Fog Lamp.....246
Headlamp.....243
Interior Lamps.....249
Rear lamps.....246
Changing a Fuse.....226
Fuses.....226
Changing a Road Wheel.....262
Assembling the Wheel Brace.....266
Installing a Road Wheel.....268
Jacking and Lifting Points.....265
Locking Lug Nuts.....262
Removing a Road Wheel.....267
Removing the Wheel Trim.....267
Stowing the Flat Tire.....269
Vehicle Jack.....264
Vehicles With a Spare Wheel.....262
Changing the 12V Battery.....239
Remove and Reinstall the Battery.....240

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Changing the Wiper Blades.....241
Changing the Front Wiper Blades.....242
Changing the Rear Window Wiper Blade.....242
Setting the Front Wipers in the Service Position.....241
Checking MyKey System Status.....36
MyKey Distance.....36
Number of Admin Keys.....36
Number of MyKeys.....36
Checking the Wiper Blades.....241
Child Safety.....17
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Mechanical Child Proof Locks.....24
Left-Hand Side.....24
Right-Hand Side.....24
Child Safety Locks - Vehicles With: Remote Child Proof Locks.....24
Child Seat Positioning.....20
Cigar Lighter.....116
Cleaning the Alloy Wheels.....252
Cleaning the Exterior.....251
Body Paintwork Preservation.....251
Cleaning the Chrome Trim.....251
Cleaning the Headlamps.....251
Cleaning the Rear Window.....251
Cleaning the Interior.....251
Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens.....251
Rear Windows.....252
Safety Belts.....251
Clearing All MyKeys.....34
Climate.....382
Climate Control Voice Commands.....384
Climate Control.....92
Principle of Operation.....92
Clutch Fluid Check.....239
Cold Weather Precautions.....201
Collision Warning System.....180
PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION.....180
Coolant Check
See: Engine Coolant Check.....237
Cornering Lamps.....65
Creating a MyKey.....34
Vehicles with Keyless Starting.....34
Vehicles without Keyless Starting.....34
Cruise Control.....54
Principle of Operation.....158
Type 1.....54
Type 2.....55
Cruise control
See: Using Cruise Control.....158
Cup Holders.....117

D

Data Recording.....9
Daytime Running Lamps.....62
Diesel Particulate Filter.....124
Regeneration.....124
Digital Radio.....295
Digital Radio - Vehicles With: SYNC 2.....296
Direction Indicators.....65
Dog Guard.....185
Installing behind the front seats.....186
Installing behind the rear seats.....186
DPF
See: Diesel Particulate Filter.....124
Driver Airbag.....27
Driver Alert.....167
PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION.....167
USING DRIVER ALERT.....168
Driving Aids.....166
Driving Hints.....200
Driving Through Water.....201
DRL
See: Daytime Running Lamps.....62

E

Eco Mode.....179
Resetting Eco Mode.....180
Type 1.....180
Type 2 and 3.....180
Economical Driving.....200
Accessories.....201
Anticipation.....201
Efficient Speed.....201
Electrical Systems.....201
Gear Shifting.....200
Tire Pressures.....200
Electromagnetic Compatibility.....403

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

End User License Agreement.....404
SYNC End User License Agreement (EULA).....404
Engine Block Heater.....125
Using the Engine Block Heater.....126
Engine Coolant Check.....237
Adding Engine Coolant.....238
Engine Immobilizer
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....48
Engine Oil Check.....237
Adding Engine Oil.....237
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....236
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel/1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel.....236
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L EcoBoost™.....236
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT (Sigma)/1.6L Flex Fuel.....236
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel.....237
Entertainment.....361
AM/FM/DAB Radio.....361
Bluetooth Audio.....368
CD.....364
Line In.....368
SD Card Slot and USB Port.....365
Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information.....368
Event Data Recording
See: Data Recording.....9
Exterior Mirrors.....70
Blind Spot Monitor.....71
Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors.....71
Heated Exterior Mirrors.....71
Power Exterior Mirrors.....70
Power-Folding Mirrors.....71

F

Fastening the Safety Belts.....25
Using Safety Belts During Pregnancy.....25
First Aid Kit.....203
Flat Tire Inflation
See: Temporary Mobility Kit.....253
Floor Mats.....201
Fog Lamps - Front
See: Front Fog Lamps.....63
Fog Lamps - Rear
See: Rear Fog Lamps.....63
Front Exterior Overview.....11
Front Fog Lamps.....63
Front Parking Aid.....145
Front Sensing System.....146
Obstacle Distance Indicator.....147
Fuel and Refueling.....129
Fuel Burning Heater
See: Auxiliary Heater.....99
Fuel Consumption Figures.....287
Fuel Consumption.....134
Calculating Fuel Economy.....135
Filling the Fuel Tank.....135
Fuel Filler Funnel Location.....131
Fuel Quality - Diesel.....131
Long-Term Storage.....131
Fuel Quality - E85.....130
Choosing the Right Fuel.....130
Fuel Quality - Gasoline.....130
Long-Term Storage.....130
Fuel Shutoff.....203
Fuse Box Locations.....206
Engine Compartment Fuse Box.....206
Luggage Compartment Fuse Box.....206
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box.....206
Fuses.....206
Fuse Specification Chart - Vehicles Built From: 23-06-2015.....217
Engine Compartment Fuse Box.....217
Luggage Compartment Fuse Box.....223
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box.....221
Fuse Specification Chart - Vehicles Built Up To: 22-06-2015.....207
Engine Compartment Fuse Box.....207
Luggage Compartment Fuse Box.....213
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box.....211

G

Gauges.....74
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....75
Fuel Gauge.....75
Information Display.....74
General Information on Radio Frequencies.....29

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Global Opening and Closing.....69
Global Closing.....70
Global Opening.....69

H

Handbrake
See: Parking Brake.....140
Hands-Free Power Liftgate.....44
.....44
Opening and Closing the Liftgate.....45
Setting the Liftgate Open Height.....45
Hazard Warning Flashers.....203
Headlamp Exit Delay.....61
Headlamp Leveling.....64
Recommended Headlamp Leveling Switch Positions.....64
Headlamp Washers.....59
Head Restraints.....104
Adjusting the Head Restraints.....104
Removing the Head Restraints.....105
Heated Seats.....115
Heated Steering Wheel.....55
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....99
Heated Exterior Mirrors.....99
Heated Rear Window.....99
Heated Windshield.....99
Heating
See: Climate Control.....92
Hill Start Assist.....140
Switching the System On and Off.....141
Using Hill Start Assist.....141
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate.....96
Cooling the Interior Quickly.....98
General Hints.....96
Heating the Interior Quickly.....97
Recommended Settings for Cooling 98
Recommended Settings for Heating.....97
Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather.....98
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....139
Hood Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....228

I

Ignition Switch.....118
Information Display Control.....55
Information Displays.....80
General Information.....80
Information.....378
Calendar.....379
Emergency Assistance.....379
Notifications.....378
Information Messages.....83
Active City Stop.....84
Airbag.....84
Alarm.....84
Battery and Charging System.....85
Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert System.....85
Child Safety Locks.....86
Engine.....86
Hill Start Assist.....86
Keyless Vehicle.....86
Lane Keeping Aid.....87
Lighting.....87
Maintenance.....88
Message Indicator.....84
MyKey.....88
Occupant Protection.....88
Park Aid.....89
Park Brake.....89
Power Steering.....89
Starting System 89
Start-Stop.....90
Transmission.....90
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.....91
Installing Child Seats.....17
Attaching a Child Seat With a Support Leg.....20
Attaching a Child Seat With Top Tethers.....19
Booster Seats.....18
Child Seats for Different Mass Groups.....17
ISOFIX Anchor Points.....19
Top Tether Anchor Points 19
Instrument Cluster.....74
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....61
Instrument Panel Overview - LHD.....14
Instrument Panel Overview - RHD.....15

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Interior Lamps....65
Front Interior Lamps (If Equipped)....66
Interior Mirror....71
Auto-Dimming Mirror....71
Introduction....7

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle....204
To Connect the Booster Cables....204
To Start the Engine....204

K

Keyless Entry....45
Disabled Keys....47
General Information....45
Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade....47
Locking Your Vehicle....46
Passive Key....46
Unlocking Your Vehicle....47
Keys and Remote Controls....29

L

Lane Keeping System....169
Switching the System On and Off....169
Lighting Control....60
Headlamp Flasher....61
High Beams....60
Lighting....60
General Information....60
Load Carriers
See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers....185
Load Carrying....184
General Information....184
Locking and Unlocking....38
Locking and Unlocking the Doors from Inside....38
Locking and Unlocking the Doors Individually with the Key....39
Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key....38
Opening the Liftgate....39
Power Door Locks....38
Remote Control....38
Locks....38
Luggage Anchor Points....184
Luggage Retention Nets....184
Luggage Covers....185
Removing the Cover....185
Lug Nuts
See: Changing a Road Wheel....262
Lug Nuts....274

M

Maintenance....228
General Information....228
Manual Climate Control....93
Manual Liftgate - Compact MAV (5-seater)....40
Closing the Liftgate....41
Opening the Liftgate....40
Manual Liftgate - Grand MAV (5+2 seater)....41
Closing the Liftgate....42
Opening the Liftgate....41
Manual Seats....105
Adjusting the Angle of the Seatback....106
Adjusting the Height of the Driver Seat....106
Adjusting the Lumbar Support....106
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward....105
Manual Transmission....136
Selecting Reverse Gear....136
Media Hub....298
Message Center
See: Information Displays....80
Mirrors
See: Heated Windows and Mirrors....99
See: Windows and Mirrors....68
Mobile Communications Equipment....10
MyKey Troubleshooting....36
MyKey™....33
Principle of Operation....33

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

N

Navigation....384
Destination Mode....385
Map Mode....391
Michelin Travel Guide....386
Navigation Map Updates....393
Navigation Voice Commands....393
Places of Interest (POI) Categories....387
Quick-touch Buttons....392
Setting Your Navigation Preferences....387

O

Oil Check
See: Engine Oil Check....237
Opening and Closing the Hood....228
Closing the Hood....229
Opening the Hood....228
Overhead Console....117

P

Parking Aids....144
Principle of Operation....144
Parking Brake....140
All Vehicles....140
Vehicles With Automatic Transmission....140
Vehicles With Manual Transmission....140
Passenger Airbag....27
....27
Passive Anti-Theft System....48
Arming the Engine Immobilizer....48
Coded Keys....48
Disarming the Engine Immobilizer....48
Principle of Operation....48
PATS
See: Passive Anti-Theft System....48
Phone....370
Making Calls....372
Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones....372
Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time....371
Phone Menu Options....373
Phone Settings....376
Phone Voice Commands....377
Receiving Calls....373
Text Messaging....374
Post-Crash Alert System....205
Power Door Locks
See: Locking and Unlocking....38
Power Liftgate....42
Obstacle Detection....44
Opening and Closing the Liftgate....42
Setting the Liftgate Open Height....43
Stopping the Liftgate Movement....43
Power Seats....106
Power Windows....68
Accessory Delay....69
Bounce-Back....68
One-Touch Down....68
One-Touch Up....68
Window Lock....68
Push Button Ignition Switch....118
Failure to Start....119
Fast Restart....121
Starting Your Vehicle....119
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving....120
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary....120
Switching the Ignition On to Accessory Mode....119

R

Rear Exterior Overview....12
Rear Fog Lamps....63
Rear Parking Aid....144
Rear Sensing System....144
Rear Seats....107
Second row seats - C-MAX....107
Second row seats - Grand C-MAX....112
Third row seats - Grand C-MAX....114

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Rear Under Floor Storage.....184
Adjustable Load Floor.....184
Cargo Management System.....184
Rear View Camera.....155
Using the Rear View Camera System.....155
Rear View Camera
See: Rear View Camera.....155
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....58
Rear Window Washer.....59
Rear Window Wiper.....58
Reduced Engine Performance.....200
Refueling.....133
Remote Control - Vehicles With: Keyless Entry.....29
Changing the Remote Control Battery.....30
Intelligent Access Key.....29
Locating Your Vehicle.....31
Programming a New Remote Control.....30
Remote Control - Vehicles With: Remote Flip Key.....31
Changing the Remote Control Battery.....31
Locating Your Vehicle.....32
Programming a New Remote Control.....31
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function.....31
Removing a Headlamp.....243
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....252
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....10
Collision Repairs.....10
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs.....10
Warranty on Replacement Parts.....10
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....32
Roadside Emergencies.....203
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....185
Running-In
See: Breaking-In.....200
Running Out of Fuel.....131
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container.....132
Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....131

S

Safety Belt Height Adjustment.....25
Safety Belt Minder.....26
Turning the Safety Belt Minder Off.....26
Safety Belts.....25
Safety Precautions.....129
Seats.....104
Security.....48
Settings.....347
Clock.....348
Display.....348
Settings.....352
Sound.....350
Vehicle.....350
Side Airbags.....28
Side Curtain Airbags.....28
Side Sensing System.....147
Distance Indication.....148
Sitting in the Correct Position.....104
Sliding Door.....40
Snow Chains
See: Using Snow Chains.....257
Speed Control
See: Cruise Control.....158
Speed Limiter - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....167
Principle of Operation.....167
Using the System.....167
Speed Limiter - Vehicles With: Cruise Control.....166
Principle of Operation.....166
Using the System.....166
Stability Control.....143
Principle of Operation.....143
Starter Switch
See: Ignition Switch.....118
Starting a Diesel Engine.....124
Cold or Hot Engine.....124
Failure to Start.....124
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....121
Automatic Shutdown.....122
Failure to Start.....122
Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes.....123
Important Ventilating Information.....124
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving.....123
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....123
Vehicles with an Ignition Key.....122
Vehicles with Keyless Start.....122

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Starting and Stopping the Engine.....118
General Information.....118
Steering Wheel Lock - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....121
Unlocking the Steering Wheel.....121
Steering Wheel Lock - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start.....121
Steering Wheel.....53
Storage Compartments.....117
Sun Shades.....72
Bounce-Back.....72
Opening and Closing the Sun Shade.....72
Sun Shade Relearning.....73
Sun Visors.....72
Illuminated Vanity Mirror.....72
Supplementary Restraints System.....27
Principle of Operation.....27
Switching Off the Engine.....125
Vehicles With a Turbocharger.....125
Symbols Glossary.....7
SYNC™ 2.....340
General Information.....340
SYNC™ Applications and Services.....315
In the Event of a Crash.....317
Switching Emergency Assistance On and Off.....316
SYNC AppLink.....319
SYNC Emergency Assistance.....316
SYNC™.....300
General Information.....300
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....330

T

Tailgate
See: Manual Liftgate - Compact MAV (5-seater).....40
See: Manual Liftgate - Grand MAV (5+2 seater).....41
See: Power Liftgate.....42
Technical Specifications
See: Capacities and Specifications.....275
Temporary Mobility Kit.....253
Checking the Tire Pressure.....256
General Information.....253
Inflating the Tire.....254
Using the Kit.....253
Tire Care.....257
Tire Inflation When Punctured
See: Temporary Mobility Kit.....253
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....258
Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....259
How Temperature Affects the Tire Pressures.....259
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure.....261
Understanding the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....260
Tire Pressures.....269
Tire Repair Kit
See: Temporary Mobility Kit.....253
Tires
See: Wheels and Tires.....253
Tow Ball.....189
Detachable Tow Ball.....194
Retractable Tow Ball - Electrically Operated.....192
Retractable Tow Ball - Manually Operated.....189
Towbar Dimensions.....276
Towing a Trailer.....188
Towing Points.....196
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Automatic Transmission.....198
Emergency Towing.....198
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Manual Transmission.....197
Towing.....188
Traction Control.....142
Principle of Operation.....142
Traffic Sign Recognition.....177
Principle of Operation.....177
Using the System.....177
Trailer Sway Control.....189
Transmission.....136
Transmission
See: Transmission.....136
Trip Computer.....83
All Values.....83
Average Fuel Consumption.....83
Distance to Empty.....83
Outside Air Temperature.....83
Resetting the Trip Computer.....83
Trip Odometer.....83
Trip Timer.....83

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Type Approvals....426
RF Certification Logos for Tire Pressure Monitoring Sensor(s)....426

U

Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™....230
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel....233
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L EcoBoost™....231
Under Hood Overview - 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT (Sigma)/1.6L Flex Fuel....232
Under Hood Overview - 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi (DV) Diesel....234
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L Duratorq-TDCi (DW) Diesel....235
Unique Driving Characteristics....127
USB Port....298
Using Adaptive Cruise Control....159
Automatic Cancellation....162
Blocked Sensor....164
Canceling the Set Speed....160
Changing the Set Speed....160
Detection Issues....163
Following a Vehicle....161
Hilly Condition Usage....163
Overriding the Set Speed....162
Resuming the Set Speed....160
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed....160
Setting the Gap Distance....161
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off....160
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On....160
Switching to Normal Cruise Control....165
System Not Available....164
Using Cruise Control....158
Switching Cruise Control Off....158
Switching Cruise Control On....158
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems....36
Using Snow Chains....257
Vehicles with Stability Control....258
Using Stability Control....143
Switching the System Off and On Using the Information Display Controls....143
Switching the System Off Using a Switch....143
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player....322
Accessing Your USB Song Library....326
Bluetooth Devices and System Settings....330
Connecting Your Media Player to the USB Port....322
Line In Audio....328
Media Menu Features....325
Media Voice Commands....323
USB 2....328
Using Voice Commands....327
Voice Commands for Audio Sources....328
What's Playing?....323
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone....304
Accessing Features Through the Cell Phone Menu....308
Accessing Your Cell Phone Settings....311
Bluetooth Devices....313
Cell Phone Options During an Active Call....307
Cell Phone Voice Commands....305
Making a Call....306
Pairing a Cell Phone For the First Time....304
Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones....305
Receiving a Call....307
Text Messaging....310
Using Traction Control....142
Switching the System Off and On Using the Information Display Controls....142
Switching the System Off Using a Switch....142
Using Voice Recognition....301
Helpful Hints....301
Initiating a Voice Session....302
System Interaction and Feedback....302
Using Winter Tires....257

V

Vehicle Care....251
Vehicle Dimensions....275

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

Vehicle Identification Number.....278
Vehicle Identification Plate.....277
Vehicle Interior Overview.....13
Ventilation
See: Climate Control.....92
Vents
See: Air Vents.....92
VIN
See: Vehicle Identification Number.....278
Voice Control.....54

W

Warning Lamps and Indicators.....75
Anti-Lock Braking System Warning Lamp.....75
Automatic High Beam Lamp.....75
Battery Warning Lamp.....75
Blind Spot Monitor Indicator.....75
Brake System Warning Lamp.....75
Cruise Control Indicator.....76
Direction Indicator.....76
Door Ajar.....76
Engine Oil Warning Lamp.....76
Engine Warning Lamps.....76
Fasten Safety Belt Warning Lamp.....76
Front Airbag Warning Lamp.....76
Front Fog Lamps Indicator.....77
Frost Warning Lamp.....77
Glow Plug Indicator.....77
Headlamp and Parking Lamp Indicator.....77
High Beam Indicator.....77
Information Indicator.....77
Liftgate Ajar.....77
Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp.....77
Low Washer Fluid.....77
Rear Fog Lamps Indicator.....77
Shift Indicator.....77
Stability Control Off Indicator.....77
Stability Control Warning Lamp.....78
Start-Stop Active Indicator.....78
Start-Stop Unavailable Indicator.....78
Warning Triangle.....203
Washer Fluid Check.....239
Washers
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....251
See: Wipers and Washers.....56
Wheel Nuts
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....262
Wheels and Tires.....253
Windows and Mirrors.....68
Windshield Washers.....58
Windshield Wipers.....56
Intermittent Wipe.....56
Speed Dependent Wipers.....56
Winter Tires
See: Using Winter Tires.....257
Wipers and Washers.....56

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing

C-MAX (CEU) Vehicles Built From: 16-03-2015 Vehicles Built Up To: 19-07-2015, CG3642en enGBR, Edition date: 02/2015, First Printing